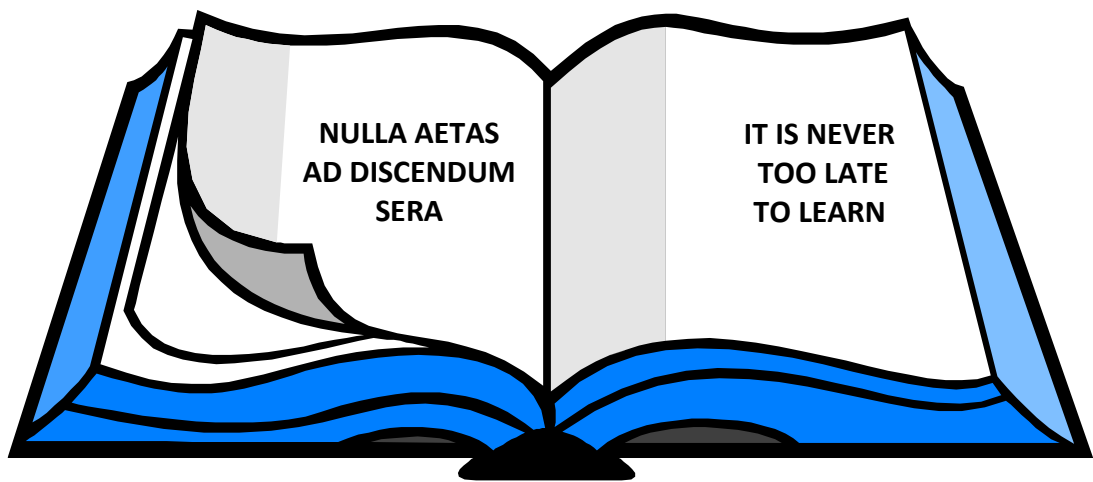


**A. Z. TSISYK**

# **THE PHARMACEUTICAL LATIN**



Minsk BSMU 2016

## **PREFACE**

This manual is meant for English-speaking students of medical universities of the Republic of Belarus studying the subject «The pharmaceutical Latin». Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject «The pharmaceutical Latin» taught in the medical universities. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into two parts. First part unites phonetic rules, morphology with the grammar rules, fundamentals of the chemical, biochemical and botanical terminology which are necessary for understanding, building and translating pharmaceutical terms and simple sentences of professional content. After these theoretical materials rules of writing out the Latin part of prescription are given. The second part of this manual includes fundamentals of Latin clinical terminology.

Every real lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of a new topic, students' work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work on exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 35–40 new words at every lesson, and these word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to a strenuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

In mastering the subject «The pharmaceutical Latin» both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value. Students' skills of using proper grammar rules and fundamentals of Latin pharmaceutical terminology for reading and understanding medicinal prescriptions and other pharmaceutical information in Latin are controlled at every lesson. As these skills in the future practice work will be used chiefly in written form so control tests at every lesson as well as summing up tests are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

## **INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJECT**

The subject you are going to study is «The pharmaceutical Latin». To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. To more understand the situation, let's recall the Europe history. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12-th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine and pharmacy, Latin became the international professional language of physicians and pharmacists. Medical and pharmaceutical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists — anatomical, histological, microbiological, pharmacists etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. There exists the International Pharmacopeia — a book consisting of different types of recommendations and general principles of creating and distributing of different medicinal formulation and drugs. The World Health Organization is responsible for the International Pharmacopeia. And every country has its public pharmacopeia based on international one describing drugs, chemical and medical preparations, issued by an officially recognized authority and serving as a standard. That's why future doctors and pharmacists must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and Latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this one may compare some medical terms in Latin and English presented in the table below:

<b>Latin anatomical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
abdomen	abdomen
canalis	canal
cavitas	cavity
ligamentum	ligament
renalis	renal
tonsilla	tonsil
tractus	tract
<b>Latin pharmaceutical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
aether	ether
Calcium	calcium
dilutus	diluted

herba	herb
Mentha	mint
tinctura	tincture

Latin clinical terms	English equivalents	Meaning
adenitis	adenitis	inflammation of gland
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	results of gallbladder X-ray examination
haematuria	hematuria	blood in the urine
otogenus	otogenic	developing from the ear
tachycardia	tachycardia	abnormally fast heart rate
trichalgia	trichalgia	feeling of pain in the hair

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical and pharmaceutical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek is an inexhaustible source for a new term building, and this process keeps on going.

The course of the Pharmaceutical Latin at the Medical University you are going to be divided into 2 academic terms (semesters); each lesson is once a week. The first term is devoted to learning phonetic and main grammar rules for building and translating Latin pharmaceutical terminology and simple sentences of pharmaceutical sense. During the second term the students continue getting acquainted with the fundamentals of the Latin pharmaceutical terminology and study clinical part of the program. Each new lesson includes teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for students their home task. A specific feature of studying during both semesters is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 6 written tests (for 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of these tests is to control the students knowledge of the course material. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and the students will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, they will first work orally, checking the home task with their teacher, and then their knowledge will be controlled in written form (**while books and notebooks are closed!**). The principal way to this knowledge is students own persistent work with textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning «The pharmaceutical Latin», if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

## Part I

### PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

# LESSON 1

## THE LATIN ALPHABET.

### PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS

#### § 1. The Latin alphabet

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Letters	Names	Latin pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [Λ]	[a]	Valeriana [vΛleriánΛ]	valerian
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bone
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrΛ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	forma [fó:rmΛ]	form
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hΛ]	[h] like English heart, here	hepar [hé:pAr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	iris[íris]	iris
J j	yot [yot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [yuguláris]	jugular
K k	ka [kΛ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	l [as in English life, love]	cellula [tsé:llulΛ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:dus]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [coronárius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pálpebrΛ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel <b>u</b> and vowels a, e, i, o, u after u	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth

R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	succus [súkkus] usus [úzus]	juice use
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tinctura [tínktura] solution [solú:tsio]	tincture solution
U u	u [u]	[u]	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	[v]	vitrum [vítrum]	phial, glass
X x	iks [iks]	[ks]	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right-hand
Y y	Ipsilon [ípsilon]	[i]	oxydum [óksidum]	oxide
Z z	zeta [zétΛ]	[z]	Sulfadimezinum [sulfadimezinum]	sulfadimezine

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

## § 2. Division of Latin sounds

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

## § 3. Pronunciation of vowels

Vowels in Latin, except «y», sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter «a» sounds [a], the letter «e» — sounds [e] and so on. One may add that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitAs] — cavity

tincture [tinktú:rΛ] — tincture

spirituosus [spirituó:zus] — spiritous

tabuletta [tΛbulé:ttΛ] — tablet

The letter «y» (ípsilon) sounds as the Latin letter «i» (that's why the Frenchmen call it «i greque» [igrek], i. e. «the Greek «i»):

Terrilytinum [terrilití:num] — terrilytin (Latin names of drugs are to be written with capital letter)

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don't practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel «i» placed before the vowels «a», «e», «o», «u», when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel «y» in the *yard*, *yours*, *yourself*, *youthful*, let's compare:

maialis [mΛjá:lis] — referring to May

maior [má:jor] — greater

As in such cases the letter «i» sounds different compared to the vowel «i», the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter «j» into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the

vowel «i»: majalis, major and so on. It is common to use the letter «j» in medical, pharmaceutical and biological terms. Let's, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel «i» never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels «a», «e», «o», «u» and therefore the letter «j» cannot be used:

iatēr [iá:ter] — physician, commonly geriater, paediatēr, psychiatēr, phthisiatēr and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun iodum [ió:dum] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

#### § 4. Pronunciation of two vowels combination

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words *down, sound, south, compound* and so on:

auris [áuris] — ear      trauma [tráuma] — injury, wound.

**Eu** [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing:

Eucalyptus [eukalí:ptus] — eucalyptus (Latin names of medical plants are to be written with capital letter)

pneumonia [pneumoní:Λ] — pneumonia

However, you should pay attention to the letter combination «**eu**» at the end of words, where it doesn't make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] — sigmoid

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body)

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel «**e**»:

ae — [e] — tabulettae [tabulé:tte] — tablets

oe — [e] — oedema [edé:mΛ] — swelling

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter **e**:

aër [á:er] — air, Aloë (names of medical plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [á:loe] — aloe.

#### § 5. Pronunciation of consonants

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels «e», «i», «y» and digraphs **ae**, **oe** is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels «a», «o», «u» and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

acetylsalicylicus [atsetilsalitsí:likus] — acetylsalicylic

coeruleus [tserú:leus] — blue

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English *get*, *glass*, *disguise*:

gaster [gá:ster] — stomach

Progesteronum [progesteró:num] — progesteron

vaginalis [vʌginá:lis] — vaginal

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as [h] in English:

homo [hó:mo] — man

Hydrargyrum [hidrá:rgirum] — mercury

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in some way softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] — white

cellula [tsé:llulʌ] — cell

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]:

dexter [dé:xter] — right

posterior [posté:rior] — back

renalis [rená:lis] — renal

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] — base

succus [sú:kkus] — juice

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: *tinctura* [tinktú:rʌ] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where **i** follows **t** plus some other vowel, **t** is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint

scientia [stsié:ntsiʌ] — knowledge

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + vowel the consonants «s» or «x» are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] — digestion

mixtio [mí:kstio] — mixture

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:nʌ] — zone

horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:ntsʌ] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

## § 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

**ch** is pronounced as [kh]:

hydrochloridum [hidroklól:ridum] — hydrochloride; charta [khá:rtʌ] — paper

**ph** is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic pharynx [fá:rinks] — pharynx

**rh** is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] — rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)

rhomboideus [romboí:deus] — rhomboid

**th** is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] — chest Mentha [mé:ntʌ] — mint

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:mʌ] — scheme

Schizandra chinensis [skhizá:ndrʌ khiné:nsis] — Chinese magnolia vine

## § 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel **u** is followed by one of the vowels **a, e, i, u**:

lingua [lí:ngvʌ] — tongue, language

unguentum [ungvé:ntum] — ointment

unguis [ú:ngvis] — nail

But if a consonant follows «**u**», then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] — angle

lingula [lɪ:ngulʌ] — lingula, little tongue

The letter combination **qu** with the following vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

aqua [á:kvʌ] — water

Quercus [kvé:rkus] — oak

## § 8. Exercises

1. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the vowel **c**:

bácca (berry), mísce (mix), cérebrum (brain), Cálcii cítras (calcium citrate), coerúle dúctus (duct), Ácidum acetylsalicýlicum (acetylsalicylic acid), récipe (take), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), cáncer récti (cancer of rectum), úlcus varicósum (varicose ulcer), tympánicus (tympanic), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal bladder), báccae exsiccátae (dried berries)

2. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters **g** and **q**:

Hydrogénii peróxydum (hydrogen peroxide), nérvus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gémma gustatória (taste bud), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húmor aquósus (aqueous humor), cósta quínta (fifth rib), unguéntum Hydrárgyri óxydi flávi (ointment of yellow mercury oxide)

3. Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants **j, s** and **t**:

Plantágo májor (greater plaitain), flexúra duodenojejunális (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segméntum basále antérius (anterior basal segment), básiis óssis sácri (base of sacrum), míxtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).

4. Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:

cóstae spúriae (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue) Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma larýngis (edema of larynx), nérvus auriculáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), céllulae haematopoéticae (hematogenic cells), glándulae oesophagáe (oesophageal glands), pneumonía mígrans (migratory pneumonia).

5. Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:

nérvus ischiádicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthínium (strophanthin), Synthomycínium (synthomycin), fébris haemorrhágica (hemorrhagic fever), ráphe pharýngis (pharyngeal raphe), ásthma bronchiále (bronchial asthma), vértebrae thorácicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguéntum ophthálmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrínthus ethmoidális (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylénum coerúleum (blue methylen), rhizóma Glycyrrhízae (rhizome of licorice), Schizándra chinénsis (chinese magnolia vine), sectiões hypothálami (sections of hypothalamus), dúctus cholédochus (common bile duct), cirrhósis hépatis (biliary cirrhosis), distántia trochantérica (trochanteric distance), hemisphérium cerebélli (hemisphere of cerebellum), véna saphéna (saphenous vein), typhus

abdominális (abdominal typhus), nephrolithiasis crónica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foétor ex óre seu halitosis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis)

## LESSON 2

# ACCENT RULES

### § 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables

If a word consists of two syllables, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

á-qua, lá-rynx, nér-vus, súc-cus

## § 10. Accent in polysyllabic words according length and brevity of the second end syllable

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

ā — ä, ē — ě, ī — ĭ, ō — ǒ, ū — ů, y — ŷ.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, tinctūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as capsŭla, lamīna, Camphōra etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: cápsŭla, lámīna, Cámphōra.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, there are suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature. Such suffixes called accordingly «long» or «short» can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

## § 11. Long suffixes

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-ā́l-	vaginā́lis	vaginal	encephálon (brain)
-ā́n-	montā́nus	mountain	
-ā́r-	vulgā́ris	common	
-ā́t-	destillā́tus	distilled	prostā́ta (prostate)
-ī́n-	Aspirī́num officī́na	aspirine chemist's shop	lamī́na (lamine, plate) Ricī́nus (castor oil plant) termī́nus (term)
-ī́v-	gingī́va sedatī́vus	gingiva, gum sedative, soothing	
-ṓl- (in drug names)	Allochṓlum Ichthyṓlum	alcohol ichthyol	
-ṓs-	Glucṓsum spīrituṓsus	glucose spirituous	
-ū́r-	tinctū́ra	tincture	
-ū́t-	dilū́tus	diluted	

## § 12. Short suffixes

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions
-iāc-	cardiācus	cardiac	
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca ( bladder) Urtīca (nettle) Hyperīcum (Saint-John's wort)
-īd-	acīdum fluīdus	acid fluide, liquide	In drug names: Adonisīdum (adoniside) Chlozepīdum (chlozepid) etc.
-ŭl-	Calendŭla mappŭla	pot marigold napkin	

## § 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

compositus (compound), Papāver (poppy), Sacchārum (sugar), and so on.

## § 14. Some rules of syllable length determination

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

linimētum (liniment)

ampŭlla (ampoule)

sinīster (left)

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second being **l** or **r**, this short vowel remains to be a short one:

vértēbra (vertebra), cérēbrum (cerebrum), múltīplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:

cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au, eu** or digraphs **ae, oe**: amoéba (ameba), diaéta (diet), Althaéa (althea).

3. The syllable is long when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**:

refléxus (reflex), Orýza (rice).

## § 15. The rules of syllable brevity

1. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

líněa (line), supérĭor (higher, upper)

córnuā (horns), Alumínium (aluminium)

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the diphthong **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus (coccygeal)

peritonaemum → peritonēum (peritoneum)

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel **i** and the syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of an ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before the digraphs **ch, ph, rh, th**:

ductus cholédōchus (bile duct) nephrolíthus (renal calculus)

## § 16. Exercises

*1. Write down and determine the stressed syllable paying attention to the natural brevity of the last but one vowel:*

incisūrae costāles (costal slits), vertēbra thoracīca (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledōchus (bile duct), forāmen apīcis radīcis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesīca urinaria (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricīni (castor oil), Sirūpus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio Iōdi spirituōsa (iodine spirituous solution), eczēma allergīcum (allergic eczema), stomatītis chronīca (chronic stomatitis), systēma condūcens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertūra thorācis inferior (lower opening of chest), muscūlus levātor palpēbrae superiōris (levator palpebrae superioris), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrōsae (anterior surface of petrous part), canāles palatīni minōres (lesser palatine canals), systēma lymphoideum (lymphoid system)

*2. Write down the terms putting the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using if necessary words collected under this exercise) and determine in writing the accent over a proper vowel:*

cartilago thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), Extractum Crataegi fluidum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralysis congenita (congenital paralysis), syndromum immunodeficientiae acquisitae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerebri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio genus (joint of knee), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gallbladder), musculi palati molles et faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodeni major

(major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrana bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane)

*cartilāgo, paralýsis, congeníta, syndrõmum, acquisítae, tuberositas, myelogēna, huměri, orgānum, kyphõsis, duodēni*

## PART II

### GRAMMAR FUNDAMENTALS OF MAKING TERMS

# LESSON 3 NOUN AND GRAMMAR CATEGORIES OF NOUN. 1-ST DECLENSION AND PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS WITH NOUNS OF THE 1-ST DECLENSION

#### § 17. Grammar categories of noun

The grammar categories in the Latin noun are the following:

1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin:

masculine (masculinum **m**); feminine (femininum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, men), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate are of neutral gender.

Latin nouns have always only grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by a gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so called dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, so both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like English, nouns number in Latin shows, whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings **-s** or **-es**). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension.

Case as a grammar category is presented not in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. Six cases are used in the Russian language. As to English, we can speak about a «common case» and a «possessive case». In contrast to English, in Latin there are six different kinds of noun endings corresponding to each case:

Nominativus, Nominative (answers the questions *who, what*)

Genetivus, Genitive (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

Dativus, Dative (answers the question *to whom, to what*)

Accusativus, Accusative (answers the questions *whom, what*)

Ablativus, Ablative (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

Vocativus, Vocative (expresses an address to a person).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical and particular pharmaceutical terminology, the Dative and Vocative cases occur only in the sentences; the Accusative and Ablative are used in pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

### § 18. Dictionary form of nouns

It is of vital importance to always remember, that each Latin noun must be learnt in its «Dictionary form». This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.
2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters **m, f, n**):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
aqua, ae f	aqua, aquae, femininum	water
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculinum	nerve
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculinum	cancer
Eucalyptus, i f	eucalyptus, eucalypti, femininum	eucalyptus
usus, us m	usus, usus, masculinum	use
unguentum, i n	unguentum, unguenti, neutrum	ointment

**Attention!** When doing exercises the dictionary form of each noun first is to be presented. For example, you have to translate into Latin the term *eucalyptus oil*. You write down the dictionary forms: eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f; oil — oleum, in. Translation: Oleum Eucalypti.

### § 19. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
tabuleta, ae f (tablet)	tabulett-ae	tabulett-

succus, i m (juice)	succ-i	succ-
cancer, cri m (cancer)	cancr-i	cancr-
cortex, icis m (bark)	cortīc-is	cortīc-
fructus, us m (fruit)	fruct-us	fruct-
facies, ēi f (face, surface)	faci-ēi	faci-

## § 20. Description of declensions

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 1st declension**; they are mainly feminine:

aqua, ae f — water

tabuletta, ae f — tablet

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 2nd declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

nervus, i m — nerve

succus, i m — juice

cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — **cancrī**)

Nouns of the **neutral gender** are also of two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

unguentum, i n — ointment

decoctum, i n — decoction

encephălon, i n — brain

orgănon, i n — organ

**The 3rd declension** is the most numerous one. Here are presented nouns of all genders, with different endings in the Nominative having the ending **-is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal quantity of syllables in Nominative and Genitive (so called *parisyllaba*):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) — base

canālis, canālis m (canālis, is m) — canal

cutis, cutis f (cutis, is f) — skin

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns have one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so called *imparisyllaba*):

apex, apĭcis m (the written dictionary form apex, ĭcis m) — apex, top

tuberosĭtas, tuberositālis f (tuberosĭtas, ātis f) — tuberosity

forāmen, foramĭnis n (forāmen, ĭnis n) — foramen, opening

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is presented in the dictionary form:

dens, dentis m — tooth

os, ossis n — bone

pars, partis f — part

**The 4th declension** includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender, having the ending -us in the Genitive:

fructus, fructus m (fructus, us m) — fruit

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process

cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn

gelu, gelus n (gelu, us n) — cold

**To the 5th declension** belong nouns, having the ending -ĕi in the Genitive:

facies, faciĕi f (facies, ĕi f) — face, surface

species, speciĕi f (species, ĕi f) — species (in biology)

The endings proper to each declension in the Nominative and Genitive are presented in the table below:

Declension	Gender	Ending in the Nom. sing.	Examples in the Nom. sing.	Ending in the Gen. sing.	Examples in the Gen. sing.
I	f	-a	tabuletta	-ae	tabulettae
II	m n	-us -er -um -on	succus cancer unguentum encephălon	-i	succi cancri unguenti encephăli
III	m f n	different different different	cortex basis forāmen	-is	cortĭcis basis foramĭnis
IV	m n	-us -u	fructus cornu	-us	fructus cornus
V	f	-es	facies	-ĕi	faciĕi

## § 21. Nouns of Greek origin not belonging to five types of Latin declensions

Two groups of nouns of Greek origin not belonging to five types of Latin declensions occur in the pharmaceutical terminology:

1. Nouns of the feminine gender with the ending **–e** in the Nominative singular and the ending **–es** in the Genitive singular:

Aloë, ës f — aloe, raphe, es f — raphe

2. Nouns of the masculine gender with the ending **–es** in the Nominative singular and the ending **–ae** in the Genitive singular:

diabētes, ae m — diabetes, anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism.

Nouns of these two groups are considered to belong to the so called 1st Greek declension. Their case endings are presented in the table below:

case	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nominatīvus	raphe	raphae	diabētes	diabētae
Genetīvus	raphes	raphārum	diabētae	diabetārum
Datīvus	raphae	raphis	diabētae	diabētis
Accusatīvus	raphen	raphas	diabēten (diabētam)	diabētas
Ablatīvus	raphe	raphis	diabēta	diabētis

## § 22. Capital and small letters of nouns in the pharmaceutical terms

Capital letter is used:

1. In the names of drugs: Codeīnum (codeine), Furacilīnum (furacilin), Validōlum (validol).
2. In the names of medical plants: Calendŭla (calendula), Eucalyptus (eucalyptus), Frangŭla (buckhorn).
3. In the names of chemical elements: Ferrum (iron), Oxygenium (oxygen), Zincum (zinc).

**Attention!** Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter including the dictionary form: Codeīnum, i n; Calendŭla, ae f; Ferrum, i n.

4. Being the first letter of the names of the drug form, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocid), Species antiasthmaťcae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctŭra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5. Being the first letter of the names of the plant component, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of chamomile), Folia Menthae piperītae (peppermint leaves).

**The small letter** is used:

1. In the dictionary form of drug forms, parts of medical plants and other auxiliary words:

tabuletta, ae f (tablet); cortex, ĳcis m (bark); dosis, is f (dose); numĳerus, i m (number, amount).

2. In the drug form names or the plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acĳidum acetylsalicylicum in **tabulettis** (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets) — tabuletta, ae f; acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

Decoctum **cortĳcis** Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, ĳcis m; decoctum, i n.

3. If the drug form name or the plant component name is used without drug names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvĳeres compositi (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome).

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilĳni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantĳibus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationĳibus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhalations in dark phial)

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

### § 23. Preliminary information on drug forms names

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid. Among solid forms common used are the names *tabuletta* (tablet), *pulvis* (powder), *pilųla* (pill), among semisolid forms *pasta* (paste), *cremor* (cream), *unguentum* (ointment), among liquid *solutio* (solution), *tinctųra* (tincture), *infųsum* (infusion). All drug forms will be discussed in detail at the subsequent lessons.

It is essential to memorize that in the Latin terms consisting of two or more words drug form is always on the first place:

Tabulettae Analĳini — tablets of analgin

Decoctum cortĳcis Quercus — decoction of oak bark

Extractum Glycyrrhizae siccum — dry extract of licorice

### § 24. 1st declension of nouns

As was said above, to the 1st declension belong nouns of feminine gender with the ending – **ae** in the Genitive singular. Case endings of the 1st declension are presented in the table below:

SINGULARIS			PLURALIS		
case	ending	example	case	ending	example
Nominatĳivus	<b>-a</b>	herbĳ	Nominatĳivus	<b>-ae</b>	herbae
Genetĳivus	<b>-ae</b>	herbae	Genetĳivus	<b>-ĳrum</b>	herbĳrum

Datīvus	<b>-ae</b>	herbae	Datīvus	<b>-is</b>	herbis
Accusatīvus	<b>-am</b>	herbam	Accusatīvus	<b>-as</b>	herbas
Ablatīvus	<b>-ā</b>	herbā	Ablatīvus	<b>-is</b>	herbis

Signs of length and brevity below ending **-a** are used to differ the Nominative and Ablative cases. As the Vocative is practically not used in medical and pharmaceutical terminology, it is not included into the table.

As to translation into English, the Latin Genitive case is always translated with the proposition **of**:

color solutiōnis — color *of solution*

numerus tabulettārum — number *of tablets*

The Latin Dative is usually connected with a person in a sentence and is translated into English with a preposition or without it depending on the English verb which is connected with the noun:

Da aegrōto tabulettam — give *the patient* a tablet

Adde aquae tinctūram Valeriānae — add *to the water* Valerian tincture

The Accusative and Ablative may be used both with preposition as well as without it in the sentences and only with a preposition in a term:

Pharmacopōla praepārat tinctūram — the pharmacist is preparing *a tincture*

Medīcus praescribit tabulettas cum Tetracyclīno — the physician is prescribing *tablets* with tetracycline

Solutio cum Aqua Mentae — solution with mint *water*

## § 25. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, determine its stem and number of declension; translate the terms into English:

Tabulettae Analgīni, mixtio herbārum, Oleum Amygdalārum, Herba Convallariae, Decoctum corticis Quercus, Capsūlae Validōli, Sirūpus Sacchāri, Oleum Olivārum, Infūsum herbae Leonūri, Succus Aloēs, Fructus Foenicūli, Solutio Furacilīni

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the terms into Latin:

tablets of valerian extract, mint water, aloe juice, eucalyptus tincture, infusion of juniper berries, oak bark, capsules of castor oil, root and rhizome of licorice, half of a tablet, herb of motherwort, decoction of herbs, furacilin solution

## Dictionaries to the lesson 3 Latin–English vocabulary

Aloë, ēs f — aloe	Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
Amygdāla, ae f — almond (fruit)	mixtio, ōnis f — mixture

Analgīnum, i n — analgin	oleum, i n — oil
capsūla, ae f ae f — capsule	Oliva, ae f — olive
Convallaria, ae f — lily of the valley	Quercus, us f — oak
cortex, ĩcis m — bark	Sacchārum, i n — sugar
decoctum, i n — decoction	sirūpus, i m — syrup
Foenicūlum, i n — medicinal fennel	solutio, ōnis f — solution
fructus, us m — fruit	succus, i m — juice
Furacilīnum, i n — furacilin	tabuleta, ae f — tablet
herba, ae f — herb	Validōlum — validol
infūsum, i n — infusion	

### English–Latin glossary

aloe — Aloë, ěs f	juniper — Junipĕrus, i f
bark — cortex, ĩcis m	licorice — Glycyrrhiza, ae f
berry — bacca, ae f	mint — Mentha, ae f
capsule — capsūla, ae f	motherwort — Leonūrus, i m
castor (oil) — Ricīnus, i m	oak — Quercus, us f
decoction — decoctum, i n	oil — oleum, i n
eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f	rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n
extract — extractum, i n	root — radix, ĩcis f
furacilin — Furacilīnum, i n	solution — solutio, ōnis f
half — dimidium, i n	tablet — tabuleta, ae f
herb — herba, ae f	tincture — tinctūra, ae f
infusion — infusio, ōnis f	valerian — Valeriāna, ae f
juice — succus, i m	water — aqua, ae f

# LESSON 4

## THE 2ND DECLENSION OF THE NOUNS. THE NOUNS OF THE 2ND DECLENSION AS TRIVIAL NAMES OF DRUGS. PREFIXES, SUFFIXES, GREEK AND LATIN MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS CARRYING INFORMATION ON PHARMACEUTICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF DRUGS

### § 26. Nouns of the masculine gender of the 2nd declension

As it was mentioned in the previous lesson, all the nouns of the 2nd declension have in Genitive singular ending **-i**.

The absolute majority of the nouns of masculine gender have ending **-us** in the Nominative singular: *numĕrus, i m* (number), *succus, i m* (juice).

Nouns with ending **-er** are divided into two groups. In the first, the most numerous one, the vowel **-e** before the consonant **-r** disappears in the Genitive singular as well as in other cases: *cancer, cri m* (cancer), *magister, tri m* (teacher).

Nouns of the second group retain **-e** before **-r** in all cases: *puer, ěri m* (boy).

Examples of declension of all groups of the masculine gender as well as some possible variants of its translation into English are presented in the table below:

Singular			Plural		
case	ending	example	case	ending	example
Nomina tivus	<b>-us</b>	medĭcus (doctor)	Nomi nativ us	<b>-i</b>	medĭci (doctors)
	<b>-er</b>	magister (teacher)			magistri (teachers)
		puer (boy)			puĕri (boys)
Genitiv us	<b>-i</b>	medĭci (of doctor)	Gene tivus	<b>-ōrum</b>	medicōrum (of doctors)
		magistri (of teacher)			magistrōrum (of teachers)
		puĕri (of boy)			puerōrum (of boys)

Datīvus	<b>-o</b>	medīco (to doctor) magistro (to teacher) puĕro (to boy)	Datīvus	<b>-is</b>	medīcis (to doctors) magistris (to teachers) puĕris (to boys)
Accusatīvus	<b>-um</b>	medīcum (call a doctor) magistrum (call a teacher) puĕrum (call a boy)	Accusatīvus	<b>-os</b>	medīcos (call the doctors) magistros (call the teachers) puĕros (call the boys)
Ablatīvus	<b>-o</b>	medīco ( by a doctor) magistro (by a teacher) puĕro (by a boy)	Ablatīvus	<b>-is</b>	medīcis (by the doctors) magistris (by the teachers) puĕris (by the boys)

### § 27. Nouns of the neutral gender of the 2nd declension

There are two kinds of the nouns of the neutral gender in the 2nd declension. The most numerous are nouns with ending **-um** in the Nominative singular:

infūsum, i n (infusion)                      suppositorium, i n (suppository)

In the second group of the nouns of the neutral gender are nouns of Greek origin with the ending **-on**:

orgānon, i n (organ)                      encephālon, i n (brain)

The case endings of the neutral gender nouns in the Nominative and Accusative are the same both in singular and plural. Case endings of Dative and Ablative singular and plural coincide too. Examples of declension of two groups of the neutral gender as well as some possible variants of its translation into English are presented in the table below:

Singular			Plural		
case	ending	example	case	ending	example
Nom.	<b>-um</b> <b>-on</b> (=Acc sing.)	infūsum (infusion) orgānon (organ)	Nom.	<b>-a</b> (=Acc. plur.)	infūsa (infusions) irgāna (organs)
Gen.	<b>-i</b>	infūsi (of infusion) orgāni (of organ)	Gen.	<b>-ōrum</b>	infusōrum (of infusions) organōrum (of organs)
Dat.	<b>-o</b>	infūso (to infusion) orgāno (to organ)	Dat.	<b>-is</b> (= Abl. plur.)	infūsis (to infusions) orgānis (to organs)
Acc.	<b>-um</b> <b>-on</b> (= Nom. sing.)	infūsum (use an infusion) orgānon (use an organ)	Acc.	<b>-a</b> (= Nom. plur.)	infūsa (use infusions) orgāna (use organs)
Abl.	<b>-o</b>	infūso (with an infusion) orgāno (with an organ)	Abl.	<b>-is</b> (= Dat. plur.)	infūsis (with infusions) orgānis (with organs)

### § 28. Gender exceptions in the 2nd declension

Some nouns of the 2nd declension in spite of their Nominative ending **-us** belong to the feminine gender. To these nouns belong first of all the tree names:

Crataegus, i f — hawthorn; Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus; Pinus, i f — pine. Some tree names of Greek origin retain in Nominative their Greek ending **-os**: Strychnos, i f — nux-vomica poison-nut.

Besides tree nouns, some other nouns belong to exceptions:

bolus, i f — 1) white clay 2) bolus, a very large pill by weight of 0.5 g

crystallus, i f — crystal

diamēter, tri f — diameter

virus, i n — 1) microbe poison 2) a virus

### § 29. Preliminary information on prepositions

Constructions with prepositions are widely used in the pharmaceutical terms. Four prepositions are the most commonly used:

**cum** (+ Abl.) with; **ex** (+Abl.) from, of; **in** (+ Abl., when answering the question «where») in; **in** (+Accus., when answering the question «where to?») into; **pro** (+Abl.) for:

Tabulettae cum Vitamīno C — tablets with vitamin C

Infūsum ex foliis Eucalypti — infusion of Eucalyptus leaves

Solutio Nitroglycerīni in ampullis — Nitroglycerin solution in ampoules

Injectio in venam — injection into vein

Pulvis Streptocīdi pro mixtura — powder of streptocide for mixture.

### § 30. Formation of the drug names — neutral gender nouns of the 2nd declension

**Neutral gender noun of the 2nd declension is the most common grammar form in which are presented the monosyllabic Latin names of drugs prepared of natural raw materials or made by synthetic way. Names of the first group are usually formed from the stem of the noun by adding a suffix (-in- and -ol- are the most used) and ending -um:**

Name of raw materials	Stem of the noun	Suffix	Name of the drug
Mentha, ae f (mint)	Menth-	-ol-	Menthōlum, i n (menthol)
Strophanthus, i m (strophanthus)	Strophanth-	-in-	Strophanthīnum, i n (strophanthin)
pancreas, ātis n (pancreas)	pancreat-	-in-	Pancreatīnum (pancreatin)

But most of the modern drugs are produced by a synthetic way and such a drug is a substance with a complex chemic composition. Those drugs obtain so called trivial names (from the Latin adjective *triviālis, e* «common known»). Such a name consists of some word building elements giving in a compact form some information on this drug composition or on its pharmaceutical application. So, two problems are solved. First, the necessity of enumerating all chemical components of the drug is removing, as it is not light even for a specialist. Secondly, a trivial name is not only convenient for spelling and writing, but it permits to read pharmaceutical and therapeutic information after both the word building and the sense distinguishing constituent elements. Let us look at a simple example. The wide known drug name **analgin** from the point of view of its chemic structure is «1-phenyl-2, 3-dimethyl-4-methylaminopyrazolon-5-N-sodium methansulphonate». It is clear that such a name can not be used in every day life. But everyone can pronounce the word **analgin** without any difficulty. This word consists of three morphological

elements and each of them has its sense part. So, the Greek prefix **a-/an** expresses denying or lack of something, **-alg-** is a root of the Greek noun *algos* that means «ache, pain». The Latin suffix **-in-** is a formal word building element (compare: aspirin, furacilin, tetracycline et cetera). So we can define **analgin** as name of a drug used for removing a pain. But in order to «decipher» quickly and competent such a «code» one should know the meaning of these letter blocks which compose drug names. That is why both pharmacists and physicians should know necessary information on Greek and Latin word building elements, their spelling and meaning because that these elements are repeated in many drug names.

For the best memorizing the spelling of word building elements their writing down several times should be recommended. The ancient Romans used to say: «Qui scribit — bis legit», i. e. «He who writes reads twice».

### § 31. Word building elements (part 1)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmacologic al or therapeutic information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>-cillin-</b> a part of the word <i>Penicillinum</i> , an antibiotic name synthesized from the fungus <i>Penicillium</i> (from the Latin <i>penicillum, i n</i> little tail, little brush)	antibiotics of penicillin group	<i>Ampicillinum, i n</i> <i>Benzylpenicillinum, i n</i> <b>but: Furacillinum, i n</b>	<b>ampicillin</b> <b>benzylpenicillin</b> <b>but: Furacilin</b>
<b>-cyclin-</b> from the Greek <i>cýclos (kýklos)</i> circle	antibiotics of tetracycline group	<i>Erycyclinum, i n</i> <i>Tetracyclinum, i n</i>	<b>erycyclin</b> <b>tetracyclin</b>
<b>-cycl(o)-</b> from the Greek <i>cýclos (kýklos)</i> circle	means influencing metabolic processes	<i>Acyclovirum, i n</i> <i>Cycloserinum, i n</i>	<b>acyclovir</b> <b>cycloserin</b>
<b>-fung-, -fungi-, -fungin-</b> from the Latin <i>fungus, i m</i> fungus	antimycotic means	<i>Myfungarum, i n</i> <i>Fungilinum, i n</i> <i>Nitrafunginum, i n</i>	<b>myfungar</b> <b>fungilin</b> <b>nitrafungin</b>
<b>-menth-</b> from the Latin <i>Mentha, ae f</i> mint - from the Greek <i>minthos</i> mint	presence of mint in the means acting on sensitive nerve endings	<i>Mentholum, i n</i> <i>Boromentholum, i n</i>	<b>menthol</b> <b>boromenthol</b>
<b>-mycin-</b> from the Greek <i>mýces</i> fungus	antibiotic of streptomycin group	<i>Monomycinum, i n</i> <i>Oleandomycinum, i n</i>	<b>monomycin</b> <b>oleandomycin</b>
<b>-myc(o)-</b> from the Greek <i>mýces</i> fungus	antimycotic and some other means	<i>Mycoheptinum, i n</i> <i>Mycoseptinum, i n</i> <b>but: Gramacidinum, i n</b>	<b>mycoheptin</b> <b>mycoseptin</b> <b>but: Gramicidin</b>
<b>-pyr-</b> from the Greek <i>pyr</i> fire, heat	means increasing or	<i>Antipyrinum, i n</i> <i>Pyrogenalum, i n</i>	<b>antipyrin</b> <b>pyrogenal</b>

	reducing temperature	<b>but: Aspirīnum, i n</b>	<b>but: aspirin</b>
--	----------------------	----------------------------	---------------------

### § 32. Prefixes in pharmaceutical names

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
a-, an- (the second variant is used before a vowel)	denying, absence, lack	Analgīnum, i n <b>analgin</b> (a medicine removing sensation of pain) Apressīnum, i n <b>apressin</b> (a medicine removing high blood pressure)
anti-	action against any factor	Antipyrīnum, i n <b>antipirin</b> (a medicine removing high temperature ) <b>antiasthmaticus, a, um antiasthmatic</b> , making for removing asthma
hyper-	increase	hypertonīcus, a, um <b>hypertonic</b> , making for raising blood pressure
hypo-	decrease	hypotonīcus, a, um <b>hypotonic</b> , making for decreasing blood pressure
syn-	connection, junction, synthetic means of drug producing	Synostrōlum, i n <b>synoestrol</b> (hormonal medicine produced by synthetic way) Synthomycīnum, i n <b>synthomycin</b> (antibiotic produced by synthetic way )

### § 33. Personal names in pharmaceutical and clinical terms

Names of drug inventors may be used in drug names. Male names are Latinized as nouns of the 2nd declension, female as nouns of the 1st declension:

Lugol solution — Solutio Lugōli

Burov liquid — Liquor Burōvi

Wilkinson ointment — Unguentum Wilkinsōni

Zolotareva ointment — Unguentum Zolotarevae.

Some names are not changed:

Schostacovsky balsam — Balsānum Schostacovsky

Ringer-Locke solution — Solutio Ringer-Locke.

Dictionary forms of personal names needn't to be given.

Scientists' names are widely used in the Latin microbiological terms for generic and species nouns of bacteria, fungi, viruses et cetera. For example, a genus of parasitical bacteria *Rickettsia* has obtained its name after the name of scientist H. T. Ricketts (1871–1910), a genus of pathogenic bacteria *Salmonella* after the name of scientist D. E. Salmon (1850–1914).

### § 34. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the terms into English:

Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Linimentum Synthomycīni; Solutio Furacilīni; dimidium boli; infūsa et decocta ex foliis plantārum; Aspīrinum in tabulettis; Oleum Ricīni in capsūlis; Tabulettae Tetracyclīni numēro 8; Emulsum olei Persicōrum; Unguentum Furacilīni in tubūlis; pulvis et extractum pro mixtūra; Solutio pulvērīs Fungilīni

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the terms into Latin:

ointment of boromenthol; tablets of kanamycin for adults; ointment in tubs; capsules and tablets of cycloserin; solution of gramicidin in castor oil; aspirin with vitamin C in tablets; syrup with ampicillin; injection of bicillin-1; suspension into muscles; suppositories with sea buckthorn; films with lincomycin; ointment of chlortetracycline for eyes; gramicidin paste

3. Write down in dictionary form the Latin names of drugs, taking in consideration the correct spelling:

ampicillin, analgin, antipyrin, apressin, aspirin, bicillin, boromenthol, chlortetracycline, cycloserin, fungilin, furacilin, gramicidin, kanamycin, lincomycin, synthomycin, synoestrol, tetracycline

**Dictionaries to lesson 4**  
**Latin-English vocabulary**

Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin	mixtūra, ae f — mixture
bolus, i f — 1) bolus, a large pill by weight of 0.5 g 2) clay	numērus, i m — number
	oleum, i n — oil
capsula, ae f — capsule	Oleum Ricīni — castor oil
decoctum, i n — decoction	Persīcum, i n — peach (fruit)
dimidium, i n — half	planta, ae f — plant
emulsum, i n — emulsion	pro (+ Abl.) — for
et — and	pulvis, ěris m — powder
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus	Ricīnus, i m — castor oil plant
ex (+Abl.) — from, of	solutio, ōnis f — solution
extractum, i n — extract	Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycine
folium, i n — leaf	tabuleta, ae f — tablet
Fungilīnum, i n — fungilin	Tetracyclīnum, i n — tetracycline
Furacilīnum, i n — furacilin	tinctūra, ae f — tincture
in (+ Acc., + Abl.) — in	tubūla, ae f — tube
infūsum, i n — infusion	unguentum, i n — ointment
linimentum, i n — liniment	

**English-Latin glossary**

adult — adultus, i m	in — in (+ Acc., + Abl.)
ampicillin — Ampicillīnum, i n	injection — injectio, ōnis f
analgin — Analgīnum, i n	into — in (+Acc.)
and — et	kanamycin — Kamycīnum, i n
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n	lincomycin — Lincomycīnum, i n
apressin — Apressīnum, i n	muscle — muscūlus, i m
aspirin — Aspirīnum, i n	ointment — unguentum, i n
bicillin — Bicillīnum, i n	paste — pasta, ae f
boromentol — Boromenthōlum, i n	sea buckthorn — Hippophaë, ěs f
capsule — capsūla, ae f	solution — solutio, ōnis f

castor oil — Oleum Ricīni	suppository — suppositorium, i n
chlortetracycline — Chlortetracyclīnum, i n	suspension — suspensio, ōnis f
cycloserin — Cycloserīnum, i n	synoestrol — Synoestrōlum, i n
eye — oculus, i m	synthomycine — Synthomycīnum, i n
film — lamella, ae f	syrup — sirūpus, i m
for — pro (+Abl.)	tablet — tabuleta, ae f
from — ex (+Abl.)	tetracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n
fungilin — Fungilīnum, i n	tube — tubūla, ae f
furacilin — Furacilīnum, i n	vitamin — vitamīnum, i n
gramicidin — Gramicidīnum, i n	with — cum (+Abl.)

## LESSON 5

# ADJECTIVES OF THE 1-ST AND 2-ND DECLENSIONS, THEIR GRAMMAR DESCRIPTION AND DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS GRAMMAR AGREEMENT. SOME FEATURES OF ADJECTIVES' USE IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

### § 35. Grammar characteristics and dictionary form of adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declensions

Adjectives in Latin, like Russian, have grammar signs of gender, number and case. Like Russian, these signs are determined by gender, number and case of the Latin noun connected by sense with its adjective. So, according to this rule, adjectives in Latin have the same genders, numbers and cases than nouns. But the Latin adjectives have only three types of declension and are declined after nouns of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd declensions.

Depending on declension type all adjectives are divided into two groups. The first group includes adjectives which are declined after nouns of the first or second declension. The second one includes adjectives which are declined after nouns of the third declension.

**Adjectives of the 1st group have three gender endings, that is every gender form has its proper ending: masculine adjectives have -us or -er, feminine -a, neutral adjectives -um:**

masculine	feminine	neutral
-----------	----------	---------

longus (long)	longa	longum
niger (black)	nigra	nigrum
liber (free)	libĕra	libĕrum

The dictionary form of this adjective group is given in the Nominative case and includes the whole form of masculine gender and then, after a comma, endings of the feminine and neutral gender forms (sometimes with a stem part):

longus, a, um — long dexter, tra, trum — right

liber, ĕra, ĕrum — free somnifer, ĕra, ĕrum — soporific

In an oral variant of dictionary form, all the three gender forms are pronounced: longus, longa, longum; liber, libĕra, libĕrum; niger, nigra, nigrum.

After gender endings one can determine to what declension this or that adjective belongs: **-us, -er, -um** correspond to the endings of nouns of the 2nd declension, ending **-a** corresponds to the endings of nouns of the 1st declension:

Nominative	Genitive	Declension	Stem
longus	longi	II	long -
niger	nigri	II	nigr -
liber	libĕri	II	libĕr -
somnifer	somnifĕri	II	somnifĕr -
longa	longae	I	long -
nigra	nigrae	I	nigr -
libĕra	libĕrae	I	libĕr -
somnifĕra	somnifĕrae	I	somnifĕr-
longum	longi	II	long -
nigrum	nigri	II	nigtr -
libĕrum	libĕri	II	libĕr -
somnifĕrum	somnifĕri	II	somnifĕr-

As one can see above, the stem of adjectives is determined like stem of nouns after the Genitive case via removing the Genitive ending: longus — long-i; dextra — dextr-ae; libĕrum — libĕr-i.

Adjectives are written with small letter in the dictionary form as well as in the combination with other words:

Extractum Glycyrrhizae siccum — dry extract of licorice

Folia Menthae piperitae — leaves of peppermint

### § 36. Table of case endings of adjectives of the 1st group

As it was already mentioned above, adjectives of this group are declined like nouns of the 1st and 2nd declension:

Case	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neutr.	Masc.	Fem.	Neutr.
Nom.	longus niger	longa nigra	longum nigrum	longi nigri	longae nigrae	longa nigra

	liber	libēra	libērum	libēri	libērae	libēra
Gen.	longi nigri libēri	longae nigrae libērae	longi nigri libēri	longōrum nigrōrum liberōrum	longārum nigrārum liberārum	longōrum nigrōrum liberōrum
Dat.	longo nigro libēro	longae nigrae libērae	longo nigro libēro	longis nigris libēris	longis nigris libēris	longis nigris libēris

Acc.	longum nigrum libĕrum	longam nigram libĕram	longum nigrum libĕrum	longos nigros libĕros	longas nigras libĕras	longa nigra libĕra
Abl.	longo nigro libĕro	longā nigrā libĕrā	longo nigro libĕro	longis nigris libĕris	longis nigris libĕris	longis nigris libĕris

### § 37. Grammar agreement of adjectives with nouns

An adjective in Latin, like in Russian, has grammar agreement with its sense noun in gender, number and case. To make such a grammatical agreement, it is necessary to do the following:

1) to determine the dictionary form of the noun 2) to determine the dictionary form of the adjective 3) to choose the adjective gender form after noun gender form 4) to put the chosen adjective form in the same case and number as the noun and place it after the noun. For example, let us make the grammar agreement of adjectives and nouns in word combinations *long root*, *black decoction*, *soporific powder*. First of all, according the rule, let us write down the dictionary form of nouns and adjectives:

root — radix, ĩcis f decoction — decoctum, i n powder — pulvis, ěris m

long — longus, a, um black — niger, gra, grum soporific — somnĭfer, ěra, ěrum

Now let's make grammatical agreement of adjective *longus, a, um (long)* with the noun *radix, ĩcis f (root)*. Noun *root* is feminine in Latin, that's why it is necessary to chose for this noun the feminine gender form of adjective *longus, a, um* that is the form *longa*. As the noun *radix* is in Nominative case, so adjective has to be in the Nominative too that is in the form *longa*. That's why we write down first the Nominative form of noun **radix**, and after it the adjective form in the same case — **longa**. As a result we have word combination **radix longa**, in which adjective and noun are in grammatical agreement as to feminine gender, Nominative case and singular number.

The Latin equivalent of noun *decoction* is of neutral gender. That's why we chose for it also neutral gender form of adjective — *nigrum*. As a result we have word combination **decoctum nigrum**.

To arrange the word combination *soporific powder* in Latin let's choose the Latin equivalent of adjective for the noun *pulvis, ěris m*. The masculine gender form from adjective *somnĭfer, ěra, ěrum* is *somnĭfer*. So we write down this form after the Nominative noun form *pulvis* and obtain the word combination **pulvis somnĭfer**.

The Latin word combinations noun + adjective with grammatical agreement may be used in other cases. The most wide spread is Genitive singular construction. For its proper grammar arrangement one should first determine the declension of each part of these word combinations and use proper grammar endings. So, the noun *radix* after its dictionary form belongs to the 3rd declension and its Genitive form is *radĭcis*. But the adjective *longa* is declined after nouns of the

1st declension and its Genitive form is therefore *longae*. So, the word combination **radix longa** gets in *Genitive* singular the form **radicis longae** — «of long root».

In the word combination *decoctum nigrum* both noun and adjective belong to the 2nd declension. That's why Genitive form is **decocti nigri** — «of black decoction».

In the word combination *pulvis somnifer* noun and adjective belongs to different declensions: *pulvis* to the 3rd, *somnifer* — to the 2nd one. So in Genitive singular our word combination is **pulveris somniferi** — «of soporific powder».

### § 38. Some peculiarities of adjectives use in pharmaceutical terminology

Adjectives used as a part of multiword terms and expressing proprieties of drug names take, as a rule, the last place of a Latin term:

Extractum Aloës fluidum — liquid extract of aloe

Solutio Hydrogenii peroxÿdi dilÿta — diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide

Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae — coated aspirin tablets

But in the multiword terms which include drug form names **lamella, membranÿla, mixtÿra, species, spongia, suppositorium** adjectives follow immediately their nouns:

Lamellae (Membranÿlae) ophthalmicæ cum Dicaīno — ophthalmic films with dicain

Mixtÿra sicca pro infantibus — dry mixture for children

Spongiae haemostaticeæ cum Kanamycīno — haemostatic sponges with kanamycin

Species antiasthmaticæ pro inhalatiōne — antiasthmatic species for inhalation

Suppositoria rectalia cum Synthomycīno — rectal suppositories with synthomycin.

### § 39. Word building elements (Part 2)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>-cyt-</b> from the Greek <i>cÿtos</i> ( <i>kÿtos</i> ) cell	means correcting metabolic processes at the cellular level	Cytisīnum, i n Cytochrōmum, i n	cytisin cytochrom
<b>-form-</b> from the Latin <i>formīca, ae f</i> ant	derivatives of the formic acid	Chloroformium, i n Formalīnum, i n	chloro <b>form</b> formalin
<b>-fura-</b> from the Latin <i>furfur, ũris m</i> peel, husk	antimicrobial means	Furacilīnum, i n	<b>furacilin</b>
<b>-ichthy-</b> from the Greek <i>ichthÿs</i> fish: substance ichthyol is produced of shales (slates) which are	antipyretic means	Ichthyōlum, i n Ichthyosulfōnum, i n	<b>ichthyol</b> <b>ichthyosulphon</b>

remains of fossil fishes			
<b>-poly-</b> from the Greek <i>polýs</i> numerous	multitude of components	Polyamīnum, i n Polyglucīnum, i n	<b>polyamin</b> <b>polyglucin</b>
<b>-rheo-</b> from the Greek <i>rrhéō</i> to flow	means improving blood circulation	Rheopolyglucīnum, i n	<b>rheopolyglucin</b>

## § 40. Exercises

1. Make grammar agreement of adjectives with nouns in the Nominative and Genitive singular cases:

white clay; pure acid; concentrated solution; big tablet; black crystal; soporific poppy; sulphuric ointment; red berry; yellow vaseline

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate every term into English:

Solutio Formaldehydi seu Formalinum; Oleum Olivarum sterilisatum; Membranulae cum Cytisino; Linimentum Chloroformii compositum; Tabulettae Tetracyclini obductae; Rheopyrinum in tabulettis; Extractum Aloes fluidum; Pix liquida Betulae; Linimentum balsamicum Wischnevsky

3. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate every term into Latin:

granules of rheopyrin; aqueous cytiton solution in ampoules; microcrystalline powder of iodoform; rheopolyglucine with glucose; polybiolin solution in dark phial; coated tetracycline tablets; mixture of furoplast with chloroform; peppermint oil; polyvitamins for adults; red berries of raspberry for syrup

4. Write down in dictionary form the Latin names of drugs, taking in consideration the correct spelling:

chloroform, cytisin, cytiton, formaldehyde, formalin, furoplast, glucose, iodoform, polybiolin, polyvitamin, rheopolyglucin, rheopyrin, tetracycline

## Dictionaries to lesson 5

### Latin-English vocabulary

Aloë, es f — aloe	Linimentum Wischnevsky —
balsamicus, a, um — balsamic	Wischnevsky liniment
Betula, ae f — birch	liquidus, a, um — liquid (tar)
Chloroformium, i n — chloroform	membranula, ae f — film
compositus, a, um — compound	obductus, a, um — coated
cum (+Abl.) — with	oleum, i n — oil
Cytisinum, i n — cytisin	Oliva, ae f — olive
extractum, i n — extract	Pix liquida — tar
fluidus, a, um — liquid	pix, picis f — pitch
Formaldehydum, i n — formaldehyde	Rheopyrinum, i n — rheopyrin
Formalinum, i n — formalin	seu — or
in (Abl., Acc.) — in	sterilisatus, a, um — sterilized
idaeus, a, um — belonging to mountain Ida in west-north of the Turkey	tabulettae, ae f — tablet
linimentum, i n — liniment	

### English-Latin glossary

acid — acidum, i n	mixture — mixtura, ae f
--------------------	-------------------------

adult — adultus, a, um; adultus, i, m	ointment — unguentum, i n
ampoule — ampulla, ae f	oil — oleum, i n
aqueous — aquōsus, a, um	pepper — piperītus, a, um
berry — bacca, ae f	phial — vitrum, i n
big — magnus, a, um	polybiolin — Polybiolinum, i n
black — niger, gra, grum	polyvitamin — polyvitamīnum, i n
chloroform — Chloroformium, i n	poppy — Papāver, ěris n
clay — bolus, i f	powder — pulvis, ěris m
coated — obductus, a, um	pure — purus, a, um
concentrated — concentrātus, a, um	raspberry — Rubus idaeus
crystal — crystallus, i f	red — ruber, bra, brum
cytoton — Cytitōnum, i n	rheopolyglucine — Rheopolyglucīnum, i n
dark — fuscus, a, um	rheopyrin — Rheopyrīnum, i n
fluidus, a, um (extractum) — liquid	solution — solutio, ōnis f
for — pro (+Abl.)	soporific — somnifer, ěra, ěrum
furazolidon — Furazolidōnum, i n	sulphuric — sulfurīcus, a, um
furoplast — Furoplastum, i n	syrup — sirūpus, i m
glucose — Glucōsum, i n	tablet — tabuleta, ae f
granule — granūlum, i n	tetracycline — Tertracyclīnum, i n
in — in (+Acc.,+Abl.)	vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n
iodoform — Iodoformium, i n	white — albus, a, um
microcrystalline — microcrystallīnus, a, um	with — cum (+Abl.)
mint — Mentha, ae f	yellow — flavus, a, um

# LESSON 6

## VERB AND ITS DICTIONARY FORM. STEM OF VERB IN THE PRESENT TENSE SYSTEM. PRAESENS INDICATIVI ACTIVI ET PASSIVI (3- RD PERSON OF SINGULAR ET PLURAL). VERB «ESSE» IN THE PRAESENS INDICATIVI ACTIVI. THE STEM OF THE SUPINE AND THE PARTICIPLE IN THE PAST TENSE SYSTEM. WORD ORDER IN A SIMPLE SENTENCE

### § 41. Grammar characteristics of verb

Verbs in Latin may be used in the three tense systems (Present, Past, Future), can be conjugated after 3 persons in the Singular and Plural in active or passive voice and, finally, every verb belongs to Indicative, Conjunctive or Imperative mood. Every verb has the Infinitive form, too.

According to the educational program, students have to learn only the 3rd person forms in the Singular and Plural of the Indicative and Conjunctive both in active and passive voice. Imperative forms are to be learned, too.

After the Infinitive form are defined four types of Latin conjugations:

Infinitive form	English translation	Ending of Infinitive	Type of conjugation
signāre	to label	-āre	I
miscēre	to mix	-ēre	II
dividēre diluere recipere	to divide to dilute to take	-ere	III
finire	to finish	-ire	IV

Ending of the Infinitive form is presented in the dictionary form of every verb.

#### § 42. Dictionary form of verb

Dictionary form of verb consists of four elements. The first one is the form of the first person in the Indicative Present tense of active voice (*Prasens indicatīvi actīvi*). This form has as a rule ending **-o**: signo (I label), misceo (I mix), divīdo (I divide), diluo (I dilute), recipio (I take), finio (I finish). Ending **-o** is added to the stem of verb (see below §43), but it is combined in the first person form of the 1st conjugation with stem vowel **-a** to one vowel-**o** : signo < signa + o.

The second element is the first person form of the Latin past completed tense (*Perfectum indicatīvi actīvi*). This element has always ending **-i**: signāvi (I have labeled), miscui (I have mixed), recēpi (I have taken), divīsi (I have divided), dilui (I have diluted), finīvi (I have finished).

The third element is the supine form (*supīnum*). It has endings **-tum** or **-sum**: signātum, mixtum, divīsum, dilūtum, receptum, finītum. Supine forms are not translated. They are used for participles and nouns forming.

The fourth element of the verb dictionary form is Infinitive or, as usual, the ending of Infinitive (see above § 41) with pointing the conjugation: āre 1, ēre 2, ěre 3, ĩre 4.

In the full the dictionary form is to be presented in such a form:

signo, signāvi, signātum, signāre 1 — to write on the label, to label

finio, finīvi, finītum, finīre 4 — to finish

So namely the dictionary form should be given when giving it orally. The 2nd, 3rd and fourth elements are shorted when giving the written dictionary form of verbs of the 1st and 4th conjugations. These verbs are as a rule regular and have in the 2nd and 3rd elements of the dictionary form standard endings **-āvi**, **-ātum** (the 1st conjugation) and **-īvi**, **-ītum** (the 4th conjugation):

signo, āvi, ātum, āre 1— to write on the label, to label

finio, īvi, ĩtum, ĩre 4 — to finish

Full forms of the 2nd and 3rd elements of the dictionary form are given in irregular verbs of the 1st conjugation (do, dedi, datum, are 1 — to give) and in verbs of the 2nd and 3rd conjugations:

misceo, miscui, mixtum, ēre 2 — to mix

diluo, dilui, dilūtum, ěre 3 — to dilute

divīdo, divīsi, divīsum, ěre 3 — to divide

recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3 — to take

#### § 43. Stem of present tense

The stem of present tense is used for forming personal forms of present and other tense forms as well as for forming participles of present tense.

The stem of verbs of the 1st, 2nd, 4th conjugations is defined by removing ending **–re** in the infinitive form, and by removing ending **–ēre** in verbs of the 3rd conjugation:

Conjugation	Infinitive form	Stem of present time
I	signāre	signā-
II	miscēre	miscē-
III	dividēre	divid-
III	diluēre	dilu-
IV	audīre	audī-

The verb *recipēre* belongs to a particular subgroup of verbs of the 3rd conjugation the stem of which is defined not after infinitive form, but after the first element of the dictionary form by removing ending **-o**: *recipio* → stem is **recipi-**. Many wide spread verbs belong to this subgroup e. g. *to take* (*recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3*) and *to do* (*facio, feci, factum, ěre 3*).

#### § 44. Indicative mood forms in present indicative tense of active voice (Praesens indicatīvi actīvi)

Two forms of the *Praesens indicatīvi actīvi* are formed by adding to the stem of present tense ending **–t** for the 3rd person of singular and ending **–nt** for the 3rd person of plural. These endings are added directly to the stem of the verbs of the 1st and 2nd conjugations. But in verbs of the 3rd conjugation (with a consonant stem and **–u** vowel stem) the conjunctive vowel **–i–** before ending **–t** and the conjunctive vowel **–u–** before ending **–nt** are inserted. In verbs of the 4th conjugation ending **–t** is added directly to the stem, but before ending **–nt** vowel **–u–** is placed. The same vowel **–u–** before ending **–nt** should be placed in verbs like *capio, facio, recipio*:

Conjugation	Infinitive form	Stem	3-rd person of singular form	3-rd person of plural form
I	signāre to label	signā-	signat — he (she, it) labels	signant — they label
II	miscēre to mix	miscē-	miscet — he (she, it) mixes	miscent — they mix
III	dividēre to divide	divid-	divīdit — he (she, it) divides	divīdunt — they divide
	diluēre to dilute	dilu-	diluit — he (she, it) dilutes	diluunt — they dilute
	recipēre to take	recipi-	recīpit — he (she, it) takes	recipiunt — they take
IV	finīre to finish	finī-	finit — he (she, it) finishes	finiunt — they finish

**Attention!** Personal pronouns attached to their corresponding verb forms, as one can see at the table, are omitted in the Latin.

#### § 45. Indicative mood forms in present indicative tense of passive voice (Praesens indicatīvi passivi)

Two forms of *Present passive voice* are formed by adding to the stem of present tense ending **–tur** for the 3rd person of singular and ending **–ntur** for the 3rd person of plural. These endings are added directly to the stem of the verbs of the 1st and 2nd conjugations. But in verbs of the 3rd conjugation (with a consonant stem and **–u** vowel stem) the conjunctive vowel **–i–** before ending **–tur**

and the conjunctive vowel **-u-** before ending **-ntur** are inserted. In verbs of the 4th conjugation ending **-tur** is added directly to the stem, but before ending **-ntur** vowel **-u-** is placed. The same vowel **-u-** before ending **-ntur** should be placed in verbs like *capio, facio, recipio*:

Conjugation	Infinitive form	Stem	3-rd person of singular form	3-rd person of plural form
I	signāre to label	signā-	signātur – he (she, it) is labelled	signantur — they are labeled
II	miscēre to mix	miscē-	miscētur – he (she, it) is mixed	miscentur — they are mixed
III	dividēre to divide	divid-	dividitur — he (she, it) is divided	dividuntur — they are divided
III	diluēre to dilute	dilu-	diluītur — he (she, it) is diluted	diluuntur — they are diluted
III	recipēre to take	capi-	recipitur — he (she, it) is taken	recipiuntur — they are taken
IV	finīre to finish	audī-	finītur — he (she, it) is finished	audiuntur — they are finished

#### § 46. Present tense Participle (*Participium praesentis activi*)

This Participle is formed by adding suffix **-ns** to stem of present tense in Nominative singular and suffix **-ntis** in Genitive singular in verbs of the 1st and 2nd conjugations and accordingly endings **-ens /-entis** in verbs of the 3rd и 4th conjugations:

Verb in the Infinitive and its conjugation	Verb stem	Participles in the Nom. sing. and Gen. sing. forms	Participles in the dictionary form	Translation of Participle forms into English
signāre to label 1	signā-	signans, signantis	signans, ntis	labelling
miscēre 2 to mix	miscē-	miscens, miscentis	miscens, ntis	mixing
dividēre 3 to divide	divid-	divīdens, dividētis	divīdens, entis	dividing
diluēre 3 to dilute	dilu-	diluens, diluentis	diluens, entis	diluting
recipēre 3 to take	recipi-	recipiēns, recipiētis	recipiēns, entis	taking
finīre 4 to finish	finī-	finiēns, finientis	finiēns, entis	finishing

Forms of Present tense Participle are declined after nouns of the 3rd declension. More information about declension of these Participles will be given in the following lessons.

#### **§ 47. The stem of supine and Participles of the past completed tense**

The stem of supine is used for building Participles of the past completed tense (*Participium perfecti passivi*). This stem is defined by removing in supine form ending **-um** and adding gender endings **-us, -a, -um**:

Dictionary form of verb	Supine	Supine stem	Participles of the past completed tense and its translation
signo, āvi, ātum, are 1	signātum	signāt-	signātus, a, um — labelled
misceo, miscui, mixtum, ēre 2	mixtum	mixt-	mixtus, a, um — mixed
divido, divīsi, divīsum, ěre 3	divīsum	divis-	divīsus, a, um — divided
diluo, dilui, dilūtum, ěre 3	dilūtum	dilūt-	dilūtus, a, um — diluted
recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3	receptum	recept-	receptus, a, um — taken
finio, finīvi, finītum, ĩre 4	finītum	finīt-	finītus, a, um — finished

So, forms of Participles of the past completed tense correspond grammatically to forms of the adjectives of the 1-2 declensions with endings **-us, -a, -um** and are declined like them (see §35-36).

#### § 48. The verb *esse* in the Present tense forms

Verb *esse* (to be) is used both in professional sentences and in proverbs as well. Its dictionary form is *sum, fui, esse*. These forms are not standard ones. We can see here the first form **sum** (I am), the second form **fui** (I was or I have been) and the third form is the Infinitive form **esse** (to be). The verb *esse* is to be learned only in the Indicative Present forms of active voice.

Person	Singular forms	English equivalents	Person	Plural forms	English equivalents
1.	sum	I am	1.	sumus	We are
2.	es	You are	2.	estis	You are
3.	est	He (she, it) is	3.	sunt	They are

In officīna solutio Furaculīni est — At a chemist's furacilin solution is available.

Salvia officinālis et Urtīca dioīca sunt plantae medicināles — Garden sage and stinking nettle are medical plants.

#### § 49. Word order in simple narrative Latin sentences

In a simple narrative Latin sentence the subject as a rule is at the first place. Subject is following by predicate, and then other members of sentence are proceeding: **Pharmacopōlae praepārant aegrōtis formas varias medicamentōrum.**

Let's make the grammar analysis of this Latin sentence, writing down dictionary forms. So:

Pharmacopōlae (pharmacopōla, ae m *pharmacist*) is without doubt the subject of the sentence — a noun in the form of Nominative plural case i. e. *pharmacists*.

Praepārant (praeparo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to *prepare*) is accordingly the predicate of the sentence — a verb in the form of the 3rd person of present indicative tense of active voice (Praesens indicatīvi actīvi) i. e. *(they) prepare*.

The noun *aegrotis* (aegrōtus, i m *patient*) is connected grammatically with the predicate *praepārant*. In this situation in Latin the Dative case, namely Dative plural, is understood: prepare to whom? To «aegrōtis». In English after the verb prepare can be used a direct object without a preposition i. e. *patients*.

The noun *formas* (forma, ae f *form*) is connected grammatically with the predicate: praeparant what? – formas (a direct object in Accusative plural form); in English as the equivalent may be used only the plural form *forms*.

The adjective *varias* (varius, a, um *different*) is in grammatical agreement with the noun *formas*, because it is in the same gender form (feminine) and in the same case (Accusative plural); in English the form *different* as the most possible variant of the equivalent translation is to be used.

The noun *medicamentōrum* (medicamentum, i n *drug*), as the ending -ōrum indicates, is used in the form of Genitive plural; as already is known, this Latin case is translating into English by the help of preposition *of*, so as result we have the word combination *of drugs*.

Now, thinking logically, let us try to translate our sentence into the English, resulting in such a correct variant of translation:

*Pharmacists prepare the patients different drug forms (=forms of drug).*

Personal pronouns in the subject function are missed in the Latin as a rule, compare:

Cogito ergo sum — I think, therefore I am.

Now, let's try to translate from English into Latin the sentence «**Doctors prescribe the patients new drugs**».

First of all, let's write down dictionary forms:

doctor — medicus, i m

to prescribe — praescrībo, praescrīpsi, praescrīptum, ěre 3(+Acc.)

patient — aegrōtus, i m

new — novus, a, um

drug — medicamentum, i n

Now, let's begin translating. At the first place is to be put our subject — the noun *medicus* in the Nominative plural form *medīci*.

After *medīci* we must put the predicate *prescribe* in the form of the 3rd form of plural in **present** indicative tense of active voice — *praescribunt*.

Then the word *patients* is to be translated. In Latin, to point a person, for which an action is doing, Dative case is using. So, we search for Dative plural form from the noun *aegrōtus* (belonging to the 2-end declension) and find the form *aegrōtis*.

Now, looking at the word group *new drugs* we should remember that in a Latin sentence a noun is placed at the 1st place and adjective is following the name. That's why we translate first the noun *drug* (*medicamentum*, i n) in the Accusative plural form — *medicamenta*. After that we translate the adjective *new* (*novus*, a, um) in grammar agreement with the noun *drug* and have as a result the form *nova*. The whole translation is: *Medīci praescribunt aegrōtis medicamenta nova*.

### § 50. Word building elements (part 3)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>bil-, bili-</b> from the Latin <i>bilis, is f</i> bile	means for increase bile secretion or for bile ducts diagnostic	Bilignostum, i n Bilimīnum, i n	<b>bilignost</b> <b>bilimin</b>
<b>chol-, chole-</b> from the Greek <i>cholé</i> bile	means for increase bile secretion	Allochōlum, i n Cholagōgum, i n	<b>allochol</b> <b>cholagog</b>
<b>-cid-</b> from the Latin <i>occidēre</i> to kill	antimicrobial and antiparasitical action	Streptocīdum, i n fungicīda, ōrum n	<b>streptocide</b> <b>fungicides</b>
<b>gnost-</b> from the Greek <i>gnostós</i> recognizable	diagnostic means	Acignostum, i n Bilignostum, i n	<b>acignost</b> <b>bilignost</b>
<b>hist-, hista-, histi-</b> from the Greek <i>histós</i> tissue	antihistaminic means and means regulating metabolic processes	Histadīnum, i n Histimētum, i n	<b>histadin</b> <b>histimet</b>
<b>strept-</b> from the Greek <i>streptós</i> curved (after form of bacillus)	means of different therapeutic action	Streptocīdum, i n Streptodecāsum, i n	<b>streptocide</b> <b>streptodecase</b>
<b>vir-</b> from the Latin <i>virus i n</i> poison	antiviral means	Acyclovīrum, i n Nevirapīnum, i n	<b>acyclovir</b> <b>nevirapin</b>

### § 51. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of every word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Ex viro viperārum remedia varia conficiuntur. 2. Decocta praeparāta in vitris nigris servantur. 3. Medīcus aegrōto Acyclovīrum et remedia antihistaminīca praescrībit. 4. In officīna sunt multa medicamenta in forma tabulettārum. 5. Fungicīda contīnent remedia contra fungos parasitīcos.

2. Write down the dictionary form of every word and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Allochol is a drug promoting the flow of bile 2. Bilignost is used in diagnostic of gall bladder diseases. 3. Antibiotics don't act on viruses. 4. The patient takes a mixture prepared from medical herbs. 5. Allergies are treated by antihistaminic drugs.

3. Write down in dictionary form the Latin names of the following terms, taking in consideration the correct spelling:

acyclovir, allochol, antihistaminic, bilignost, bilimin, cholagog, fungicide, nevirapin, streptocide, streptodecase

*Dictionaries to lesson 5*

*Latin-English vocabulary*

Acyclovīrum, i n — acyclovir	officīna, ae f — a chemist's; drugstore
antihistaminīcus, a, um — antihistaminic	
conficio, confēci, confectum, ěre 3 — to produce	parasitīcus, a, um — parasitical
contineo, continui, contentum, ěre 2 — to contain	praeparātus, a, um — prepared
contra (+ Acc.) — 1) against 2) for (a disease)	praescrībo, praescripsi, praescriptum, ěre 3 — to prescribe
fungus, i m — fungus	remedium, i n — medicine
fungicīdum, i n — fungicide	servo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 — to keep
medicamentum, i n — drug	vipēra, ae f — viper
multus, a, um — many	virus, i n — 1) poison 2) virus

**English-Latin glossary**

to act — ago, egi, actum, ěre 3	flow — secretio, ōnis f
allergy, heightened reactivity to an allergen — allergia, ae f	medical — medicātus, a, um
	neviramin — Neviramīnum, i n
alcohol — Allochōlum, i n	patient — aegrōtus, i m
antibiotic — antibiotīcum, i n	prepared — praeparātus, a, um
antihistaminic — antihistaminīcus, a, um	to promote — promoveo, promōvi, promōtum, ěre 2 (+Acc.)
bile — bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n
bilignost — Bilignostum, i n	streptodecase — Streptodecāsūm, i n
bilimin — Bilimīnum, i n	to take — recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3
bladder — vesīca, ae f	to be — sum, fui, esse
cholagog — Cholagōgum, i n	to treat — curo, āvi, ātum, āre 1
drug — medicamentum, i n	virus — virus, i n

# LESSON 7

## IMPERATIVE MOOD (IMPERATIVUS). CONJUNCTIVE MOOD (PRAESENS CONJUNCTIVI ACTIVI ET PASSIVI, 3-RD PERSON OF SINGULAR ET PLURAL). VERB FIERI IN PHARMACEUTICAL FORMULES

### § 52. Formation and usage of the Imperative (Imperatīvus)

The Imperative in Latin exists in singular and plural forms. These forms express order or instruction addressed to the second person of singular (Imperatīvus singulāris) or plural (Imperatīvus plurālis). Both Latin forms have in English only one form of translation, compare:

Da! (Address to one person) — Give!    Date! (Address to many persons) — Give!

Misce (Address to one person) — Mix! Miscēte! (Address to many persons) — Mix

Forms of the Imperative singular are formed by removing ending **-re** from the Infinitive form in all the conjugations:

Conjugation	Infinitive	Imperative singular
I	signāre	Signa! — Write on the label!
II	miscēre	Misce! — Mix!
III	dividēre	Divīde! — Divide!
III	diluēre	Dilue! — Dilute!
III	recipēre	Recīpe! — Take!
IV	finīre	Fini! — Finish!

Forms of the Imperative plural are formed by adding ending **-te** in all conjugations. Verbs of the 3rd conjugation a short conjunctive vowel **-i-** before ending **-te**:

Conjugation	Infinitive	Stem	Imperative plural
I	signāre	signā-	Signāte! — Write on the label!
II	miscēre	miscē-	Miscēte! — Mix!
III	dividēre	divid-	Dididīte! — Divide!
III	diluēre	dilu-	Diluīte! — Dilute!
III	recipēre	recipi-	Recipīte! — Take!

IV	finīre	finī-	Finīte! — Finish!
----	--------	-------	-------------------

### § 53. Formation and usage of Conjunctive mood (Conjunctivus praesentis actīvi et passīvi)

Both in Conjunctive and Indicative Present tense of active and passive voice are used the same endings i. e. ending **-t/-tur** for the 3rd person of singular and ending **-nt /-ntur** for the 3rd person of plural. But these endings are adding to the changed stems: verbs of the 1st conjugation change the stem vowel **-a** for the vowel **-e**, in verbs of other three conjugations vowel **-a** is adding to the stem.

#### Conjunctivus praesentis actīvi

Conjugation	Infinitive and stem	Singular forms	Plural forms
<b>I</b>	signāre signā-	signet — let him (her) write on the label	signent — let them write on the label
<b>II</b>	miscēre miscē-	misceat — let him (her) mix	misceant — let them mix
<b>III</b>	dividēre divid-	divīdat — let him (her) divide	divīdant — let them divide
<b>III</b>	diluēre dilu-	diluat — let him (her) dilute	diluant — let them dilute
<b>III</b>	recipēre recipi-	recipiat — let him (her) take	recipiant — let them take
<b>IV</b>	finīre- finī-	finiat — let him (her) finish	finiant– let them finish

#### Conjunctivus praesentis passīvi

Conjugation	Infinitive and stem	Singular forms	Plural forms
<b>I</b>	signāre signā-	signētur — let it be labelled	signēntur — let them be labelled
<b>II</b>	miscēre miscē-	misceātur — let it be mixed	misceantur– let them be mixed
<b>III</b>	dividēre divid-	divīdātur — let it be divided	divīdantur — let them be divided
<b>III</b>	diluēre dilu-	diluātur — let it be diluted	diluantur — let them be diluted
<b>III</b>	recipēre recipi-	recipiātur — let it be taken	recipiantur — let them be taken
<b>IV</b>	finīre finī-	finiātur — let it be finished	finiantur — let them be finished

**Attention!** It is important to remember that forms of Conjunctivus praesentis passīvi always  
1) are put at the first place of a sentence 2) are used with the Nominative case of nouns:

Let tincture be diluted –Diluātur tinctūra

Let solution be sterilized — Sterilisētur solutio

Let tablets be given — Dentur tabulettae

#### § 54. Verb *fiō, fiēri* in the Indicative and Conjunctive forms

Verb *fiō, fiēri* is not a regular one. The first word in the dictionary form looks to be a verb of the 4th conjugation in active voice, but the Infinitive form *fiēri* is not regular one.

In pharmaceutical texts the next forms of the Conjunctivus praesentis passivi are used:

3rd person of singular — **fiat** — let it be made = to get

3rd person of plural — **fiant** — let them be made = to get

Both these forms are translated into English **to get** in the prescription formulations which begin with Imperative form **Misce** and express an instruction of preparation any drug form:

Misce, fiat linimentum — Mix to get a liniment

Misce, fiat pasta — Mix to get a paste

Misce, fiat pulvis — Mix to get a powder

Misce, fiat unguentum — Mix to get an ointment

Misce, fiant species — Mix to get a species

In the last Latin formula the noun **species** is in the Nominative plural form that's why verb **fiant** is accordingly in the plural form.

In the Latin formulas given above the conjunction **ut** (to, in order to) may be used, but the English translation isn't changed, compare:

Misce, ut fiat linimentum — Mix to get a liniment

Misce, ut fiat pasta — Mix to get a paste

Misce, ut fiat pulvis — Mix to get a powder

Misce, ut fiat unguentum — Mix to get a liniment

Misce, ut fiant species — Mix to get a species

## § 55. Word building elements (part 4)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>aesthes-</b> , <b>aesth-</b> , <b>asthes-</b> , <b>esthes-</b> from the Greek <i>aísthesis</i> feeling	local anesthetics	Aesthocīnum, i n Anaesthesīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum, i n	<b>aesth</b> ocin <b>anaesth</b> esin <b>bellasth</b> esin
<b>alg-</b> from the Greek <i>álgos</i> pain	analgesics	Analgīnum, i n Baralgīnum, i n	<b>anal</b> gin <b>baral</b> gin
<b>cain-</b> from the name of south American tree <i>coca</i> , leaves of which are a source of cocaine — one of the first local anesthetics	local anesthetics	Lidocaīnum, i n Novocaīnum, i n Ultracaīnum, i n	<b>lidocaine</b> <b>novocaine</b> <b>ultracaine</b>
<b>dol-</b> from the Latin <i>dolor, ōris</i> m pain	analgesics	Aldolōrum, i n Panadōlum, i n	<b>aldol</b> or <b>panadol</b>
<b>sept-</b> from the Greek <i>septikós</i> putrid	antimicrobial and antiseptic means	Pantoseptum, i n Septocīdum, i n	<b>pantosept</b> <b>septocide</b>

## § 56. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate the sentences into English:

1. Praescribere aegrōto balsāmum «Stella auraria». 2. Intradūce puĕro serum antitetanicum concentrātum. 3. Recīpe suppositoria «Anaesthesōlum» et adhībe secundum praescriptum. 4. Sterilisētur Oleum Olivārum et servētur in lagēnis obturātis. 5. Detur solutio Septocīdi in ampullis. 6. Addātur aqua in lagēnam cum infūso Leonūri.

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Give milfoil herb and peppermint leaves. 2. Prescribe the patient a tablet of analgin. 3. Let be given antiasthmatic species in a little polyethylene bag. 4. Let be mixed marsh-mallow infusion with licorice syrup. 5. Take bottles with sterilized peach oil. 6. Mix to get a suppository.

3. Write down in dictionary form the Latin names of the following terms, taking in consideration the correct spelling:

aldodor, anaesthesol, analgin, aesthucin, anesthesin, bellasthesin, lidocaine, novocaine, panadol, pantosept, polyethylene, septocide, streptocide, ultracaine

*Dictionaries to lesson 6*

*Latin-English vocabulary*

addo, addīdi, addītum, ěre 3 — to add	introdūco, introduxi, introductum, ěre 3 — to induce
adhibeo, adhibui, adhibītum, ěre 2 – to use	lagēna, ae f — bottle
	Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
Anaesthesōlum, i n — anaesthesol	obturātus, a, um — closed
antitetanīcus, a, um — antitetanic, relaxing muscular contraction in tetanus	Olīva, ae f — olive (Oleum Olivārum — olive oil)
	praescriptum, i n — instruction
aurarius, a, um — golden	
balsāmum, i n — balsam	recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3 — to take
concentrātus, a, um — concentrated	secundum (+Acc.) — according
do, dedi, datum, are 1 — to give	serum, i n — serum
et — and	stella, ae f — star
infūsum, i n — infusion	sterilīso, āvi, ātum, āre 1– to sterilize

**English-Latin glossary**

aesthucin — Aesthocīnum, i n	milfoil — Millefolium, i n
aldodor — Aldodōrum, i n	novocaine — Novocaīnum, i n
anesthesin — Anaesthesīnum, i n	panadol — Panadōlum, i n
analgin — Analgīnum, i n	pantosept — Pantoseptum, i n
antiasthmatic — antiasthmaticus, a, um	polyethylene — polyaethylenīcus, a, um
bag (a little one) — saccūlus, i m	to prescribe — praescribo, praescripsi, prascriptum, ěre 3
bellasthesin — Bellasthesīnum, i n	septicide — Septocīdum, i n
to get — fio, fiēri	species — species, ěrum f (only plural!) — species
to give — do, dedi, datum, are 1	
lidocaine — Lidocaīnum, i n	sterilized — sterilisātus, a, um
marsh-mallow — Althaea, ae f	ultracaine — Ultracaīnum, i n

# LESSON 8

## 3-RD DECLENSION OF THE NOUNS

### AND THEIR CONSONANT TYPE.

#### SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE

#### ENDINGS OF MASCULINE GENDER

#### NOUNS

##### § 57. General description of nouns of the 3rd declension

Nouns of the 3rd declension are the most numerous among all other ones. Here are presented nouns of all genders with different endings in the Nominative singular. As pointed above (see § 20), the principal sign of the 3rd declension is the ending **-is** in the Genitive singular case (Genetīvus singulāris):

dosis, **is** f — dose

pulvis, **ĕris** m — powder

lac, **lactis** n — milk

All these nouns are divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns with equal quantity of syllables in Nominative and Genitive (so called *parisyllaba*):

canālis, canālis m (canalis, is m) — canal

cutis, cutis f (cutis, is f) — skin

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns of the 3-rd declension have one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so called *imparisyllaba*):

cortex, corticis m (the written dictionary form is cortex, ĭcis m) — bark

tuberositas, tuberositatis f (tuberositas, ātis f) — tuberosity

semen, seminis n (semen, ĩnis n) — seed

If such a noun has only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is given as the second part of the dictionary form:

dens, dentis m — tooth

os, ossis n — bone

pars, partis f — part

### § 58. Masculine gender endings and their systematization

It is very important to know typical endings of the 3rd declension, because these endings transmit information about noun gender. That's why we should consider minutely noun endings of every gender and systematize them. So, first let us consider noun endings of masculine gender in the Nominative singular and their way of transition to the Genitive ending after the following table below. We can divide these endings into two groups. The first one unites three endings which include in Nominative form vowel –e, the second unite three endings which include vowel –o:

Nom.sing. ending	Gen. sing. ending	Examples in the dictionary form	Exceptions
-er	-ĕris	aether, ĕris m <i>ether</i>	gaster, tris f <i>stomach</i> Papāver, ĕris n <i>poppy</i> Piper, ĕris n <i>pepper</i> tuber, ĕris n <i>tuber</i>
-es	-ĕdis -ĕtis -ĭtis	pes, pedis m <i>foot</i> herpes, ĕtis m <i>herpes</i> stipes, ĭtis m <i>stem</i>	
-ex	-ĭcis	cortex, ĭcis m <i>bark</i>	lex, legis f <i>law</i>
-o	-ĭnis	sapo, ōnis m <i>soap</i>	
-or	-ōris	liquor, ōris m a <i>liquid</i>	arbor, ōris f <i>tree</i> cor, cordis n <i>heart</i>
-os	-ōris	flos, floris m <i>flower</i>	os, oris n <i>mouth</i> os, ossis n <i>bone</i>

**Attention!** Signs of the length or brevity above the second vowel from the end of a polysyllabic word are always to be given in the dictionary form and missing them is considered as a mistake.

### § 59. Grammar types of the 3rd declension. The consonant type

Depending on both their gender as well as their Nominative and Genitive endings nouns of the 3-rd declension are divided into 3 grammar types: consonant, vowel and mixed. Let us consider first the consonant type. The consonant type is considered to be the basic one.

The consonant type includes imparisyllaba nouns of all three genders the stem of which finishes with only one consonant that's why it has a provisional name «the consonant one». Nouns of the consonant type have the following characteristic case endings:

- 1) ending **-e** in the Ablative singular ;
- 2) ending **-um** in the Genitive plural;
- 3) ending **-a** in the Nominative and Accusative plural in nouns of neutral gender.

The other case endings excluding Nominative singular of all genders as well as Nominative and Accusative singular in nouns of neutral gender are the standard ones. It is also to be remembered that masculine and feminine nouns have in the Nominative and Accusative plural the common ending **-es**, but neutral nouns have the ending **-a**. Case endings of the consonant type are shown in the table below:

Case	Singular	Plural
	m f n	m f n
Nom.	different	-es -a
Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-i	-ībus
Acc.	-em = Nom. sing.	-es -a = Nom. plur.
Abl.	-e	-ībus

Examples of noun which are declined after consonant type (nouns *flos, floris m (flower), radix, icis f (root), semen, ĩnis n (seed)*)

Case	Singular	Plural
	m f n	m f n
Nom.	flos radix semen	fores radīces semīna
Gen.	floris radīcis semīnis	florum radīcum semīnum
Dat.	flori radīci semīni	floribus radicībus seminībus
Acc.	florem radīcem semen	flores radīces semīna
Abl.	flore radīce semīne	floribus radicībus seminībus

### § 60. Meaning and usage of suffixes -or, -sor, -tor, -xor in pharmaceutical terminology

The suffixes pointed above are added to the supine stem and so are formed nouns indicating means of fulfilling an action:

Dictionary form of verbs	Supine stem	Derivate nouns
inhibeo, inhibui, inhibĭtum, ěre 2 to inhibit, to restrain	inhibĭt-	inhibĭtor, ōris m <i>inhibitor</i> , any substance which inhibits or ceases a chemic reaction or a physiological function
protĕgo, protexĭ, protectum, ěre 3 to protect	protect-	protector, ōris m <i>protector</i> , any substance which protects a catalyzer from inhibition or poisoning
provideo, provĭsi, provĭsum, ěre 3 to provide	provĭs-	provĭsor, ōris m <i>pharmacist</i> (originally, a pharmacist of a druggist's shop was responsible for drugs providing )
recipio, recĕpi, receptum, ěre 3 to take, to receive	recept-	receptor, ōris m <i>receptor</i> , a specialized sensory nerve ending, by which stimuli are transmuted into nerve impulses
stimŭlo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to stimulate	stimulāt-	stimulātor, ōris m <i>stimulator</i> , any substance or any factor stimulating physiological or chemical activity
flecto, flexi, flexum, ěre 3 to bend, to flex	flex-	(muscŭlus) flexor, ōris m <i>Flexor muscle</i>

### § 61. Word building elements (part 5)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>card-, cardi-</b> from the Greek <i>cardia</i> heart	sedative means	Cardiovalĕnum, i n Isocardum, i n	<b>cardiovalen</b> <b>isocard</b>
<b>digi-, digit-</b> from the Latin <i>Digitālis, is f</i> foxglove	heart glycosides	Cordigĭtum, i n Digitoxĭnum, i n	<b>cordigit</b> <b>digitoxin</b>
<b>os-, oss-</b> from the Latin <i>os, ossis n</i> bone	means regenerating bone tissue	Fluossĕnum, i n Ossĭnum, i n	<b>fluossen</b> <b>ossin</b>
<b>oste-, osteo-</b> from the Greek <i>ostĕon</i> bone	means regenerating bone tissue	Osteochĭnum, i n Osteogenŏnum, i n	<b>osteochin</b> <b>osteogenon</b>
<b>val-, vale-</b> from the Latin <i>valĕre</i> to be sound	sedative and cardiovascular means	Cardiovalĕnum i n Valocormĭdum, i n	<b>cardiovalen</b> <b>valocormid</b>

### § 62. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate the sentences into English:

1. Virus immunodeficientiae homĭnis sanguine tradĭtur. 2. Recĭpe extractum siccum ex foliis Digitālis pro tabulettis Cordigĭti. 3. In Papavĕre somnifĕro alcaloĭdum Papaverĭnum continĕtur. 4. Medĭci immunomodulatorĭbus et immunocorrectorĭbus aegrŏtos curant. 5. Formatio et regeneratio textus ossium Osteogenŏno stimulātur.

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Cordiamin solution is kept in syringe tubes and in bottles. 2. Activated coal is produced as black tablets without odor and taste 3. Seed flax mucilage is administered for treating stomach diseases. 4. Names of trees in the Latin language belong always to feminine gender. 5. Leaves, seeds, flowers and roots of medical plants are used for drugs preparation.

*3. Write down in dictionary form the Latin names of the following terms taking in consideration the correct spelling:*

cardiovalen, cordiamin, cordigit, digitoxin, fluossen, isocard, ossin, osteochin, osteogenon, papaverin, valocormid

## Dictionaries to lesson 8

### Latin-English vocabulary

activātus, a, um — activated	homo, ĩnis m — a man
	immunocorrector, ōris m — immunocorrector
alcaloīdum, i n — alkaloid	immunodeficientia, ae f — immunodeficiency
arbor, ōris f — tree	immunomodulātor, ōris m — immunomodulator
carbo, ōnis m — coal	os, ossis n — bone
color, ōris m — color	Osteogenōnum, i n — osteogenon
contineo, continui, contentum, ěre 2 — to contain	Papaverīnum, i n — papaverin
	regeneratio, ōnis f — regeneration
Cordigītum, i n — cordigit	sanguis, ĩnis m — blood
curo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 — to treat	siccus, a, um — dry
depurātus, a, um — purified	stimūlo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 — to stimulate
Digitālis, is f — foxglove	textus, us m — tissue
formatio, ōnis f — formation	trado, tradīdi, tradītum, ěre 3 — to transmit

### English-Latin glossary

activated — activātus, a, um	gender — genus, ěris n
to administer = to prescribe —prascrībo, praescrīpsi, praescrīptum, ěre 3	language — lingua, ae f
	Latin — Latīnus, a, um
always — semper	mucilage — mucilāgo, ĩnis f
as — ut	name — nomen, ĩnis n
to belong — pertineo, pertinui, -, ěre 2 (ad + Acc.)	odor — odor, ōris m
	preparation — praeparatio, ōnis f
bottle — lagēna, ae f	seed — semen, ĩnis n
coal — carbo, ōnis m	stomach — gaster, tris f
cordiamin — Cordiamīnum, i n	syringe — injector, ōris m
flax — Linum, i n	taste — sapor, ōris m
flower — flos, floris m	valocormid — Valocormīdum, i n
	without — sine (+Abl.)

# LESSON 9

## SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE ENDINGS OF THE FEMININE GENDER NOUNS IN THE 3-RD DECLENSION. THE MIXED TYPE OF THE 3-RD DECLENSION

### § 63. Systematization of the feminine gender nouns of the 3rd declension

The feminine gender demonstrates the most numerous varieties of Nominative case endings. These endings and their way of changing in the Genitive singular are showed in the table below:

Endings in the Nominative case	Endings in the Genitive case	Examples	Exceptions
do	-īnis	longitūdo, īnis f <i>length</i>	
-go	-īnis	Plantāgo, īnis f <i>plantain</i>	
-io	-ōnis	injection, ōnis f <i>injection</i>	turio, ōnis m <i>bud (of a pine)</i>
-as	-ātis	cavitas, ātis f <i>cavity</i>	pancreas, ātis n <i>pancreas</i> ; vas, vasis n <i>vessel</i> ; sulfas, ātis m <i>sulphate</i> (all the anion names with ending -as)
-es	-is	sedes, is f <i>location (of a disease)</i>	Ribes, is n <i>currant</i>
-is	-is (parisyll.)	Digitālis, is f <i>foxglove</i>	vermis, is m <i>worm</i>
-is	-īdis (imparisyll.)	Thermopsis, īdis f <i>thermopsis</i>	pulvis, ěris m <i>powder</i> ; sanguis, īnis m <i>blood</i> ; sulfis, ītis m <i>sulphite</i> (all the anion names with ending -is)
-us	-ūtis	salus, ūtis f <i>health</i>	
-ys	-ydis	Mays, ydis f <i>maize</i>	
consonant + s	conson. + tis	Bidens, ntis f <i>bur-marigold</i> helmins, inthis f <i>helminth</i> pars, partis f <i>part</i>	adeps, ĩpis m <i>fat</i> ; dens, dentis m <i>tooth</i>
vowel+ x (except -ex)	vowel + cis	radix, īcis f <i>root</i> nux, nucis f <i>nut</i>	anthrax, ācis m <i>anthrax</i>

**Attention:** The noun *Adōnis* (*Adonis, pheasant's eye*) has two gender signs — masculine and feminine ones: Adōnis, īdis m, f.

### § 64. The mixed type of the 3rd declension

A conventional grammar name «mixed» is used because nouns belonging to this type use case endings of both consonant and vowel types. From the last one the mixed type borrows the ending **-ium** in the Genitive plural. The other case endings are borrowed from the consonant type.

After the mixed type are declined:

1) parisyllaba nouns with the endings **-es** or **-is** in the Nominative singular: *sedes*, is f *location*; *apis*, is f *bee*;

2) nouns, stem of which finishes with two consonants: *infans*, ntis m,f *child*; *pars*, partis f *part*; *os*, ossis n *bone*.

Examples of declining the nouns belonging to the mixed type

Case	Singularis	Pluralis
	m f n	m f n
Nom.	infans apis os	infantes apes ossa
Gen.	infantis apis ossis	Infantium apium ossium
Dat.	infanti api ossi	infantibus apibus ossibus
Acc.	infantem apem os	Infants apes ossa
Abl.	infante ape osse	infantibus apibus ossibus

### § 65. Declining peculiarities of the nouns with ending -sis and the nouns febris, tussis, pertussis

Parisyllaba feminine nouns with the ending **-sis** (*dosis*, is f *dose*; *diagnōsis*, is f *diagnose* etc.) are the Latinized nouns of the Greek origin. They are declined after the mixed type, but they have two peculiar endings:

- 1) ending **-im** in the Accusative singular
- 2) ending **-i** in the Ablative singular:

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom.	dosis	doses
Gen.	dosis	dosium
Dat.	dosi	dosibus
Acc.	dosim	doses
Abl.	dosi	dosibus

The Latin nouns *febris*, is f *fever*; *tussis*, is f *cough*; *pertussis*, is f *pertussis*, *whooping cough* are declined like the noun *dosis*.

### § 66. The declining peculiarities of the noun vas, vasis n vessel

**This noun is declined in the singular cases after the 3rd declension and in the plural cases after the 2nd one:**

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom.	vas	vasa
Gen.	vasis	vasōrum
Dat.	vasi	vasis
Acc.	vas	vasa
Abl.	vase	vasis

### § 67. Word building elements (part 6)

Word building	Pharmaceutical or	Latin examples and	English
---------------	-------------------	--------------------	---------

<b>elements and their etymology</b>	<b>therapeutic information</b>	<b>exceptions</b>	<b>equivalents with black tipped word building elements</b>
angi- from the Greek <i>angeion</i> vessel	means influencing the cardiovascular system (angiotensins)	Angioprilum, i n Angisemum, i n	<b>angiotril</b> <b>angisem</b>
febri- from the Latin <i>febris, is f</i> fever	analgesics-antipyretics	Febricetum, i n Febrinilum, i n	<b>febricet</b> <b>febrinil</b>
helm-, helmin-, helmint- from the Greek <i>helmins, helminthos</i> helminth	anthelmintic means	Helmexum, i n Helmintoxum, i n	<b>helmex</b> <b>helmintox</b>
tuss- from the Latin <i>tussis, is f</i> cough	antitussive means	Tussiglaucinum, i n Tussamagum, i n	<b>tussiglaucin</b> <b>tussamag</b>
vas- from the Latin <i>vas, vasis n</i> vessel	means influencing cardiovascular system or used in the diagnostic of the cardiovascular diseases	Vasoprenum, i n Vasotrastum, i n	<b>vasopren</b> <b>vasotrast</b>
verm- from the Latin <i>vermis, is m</i> worm	anthelmintic means	Vermolfinum, i n Vermitoxum, i n	<b>vermolfin</b> <b>vermitox</b>

## § 68. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Medīcus aegrōto dosim necessariam tabulettārum Vasoprēni praescribit. 2. Pharmacopōla mixtūram contra tussim cum sirūpis Althaeae et Glycyrrhizae praeparat. 3. Vitra et vasa vitrea cum sanguīnis analýsi in loco frigīdo continentur. 4. Decoctum ex turiōnibus Pini ad bronchitīdes chronīcas parātur. 5. Sub osteoporōsi densitas ossium valde minuītur.

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Ether for narcosis is kept in hermetically closed phials of dark glass. 2. Codeine or otherwise «tussamag with codeine» is administrated in powders, tablets and solutions. 3. An infusion from briquettes of bur-marigold herb is prepared for a curative bath. 4. Invasions of parasitical worms are treated by anthelmintic means. 5. Berries of blackcurrant contain a great amount of vitamin C.

3. Write in the dictionary form names of the following terms:

angiopril, angisem, codeine, febricet, febrinil, helmex, helmintox, tussiglaucin, tussamag, vasopren, vasotrast, vermolfin, vermitox

## Dictionaries to lesson 9

### English–Latin vocabulary

ad (+Acc.) — in	obturātus, a, um — closed
Althaea, ae f — march-mallow, sweatweed	os, ossis n — bone
analýsis, is f — analysis	osteoporosis, is f — osteoporosis
bronchītis, itīdis f — bronchitis, inflammation of bronchi	pharmacopōla, ae m — pharmacist
	Pinus, i f — pine
chronīcus, a, um — chronic	sub (+Abl.) — 1 during 2) in
densitas, ātis f — density	turio, ōnis m — bud (of pine)
dosis, is f — dose	tussis, is f — cough
frigīdus, a, um — cold	valde — greatly
locus, i m — place	vas, vasis n — vessel
minuo, minui, minūtum, ěre 3 — to decrease, to diminish	Vasoprēnum, i n — vasopren
	vitreus, a, um — glass
necessarius, a, um — necessary	vitrum, i n — phial

### English–Latin glossary

amount — quantitas, ātis f	helmex — Helmēxum, i n
angiopril — Angioprilum, i n	helmintox — Helmntoxum, i n
angisem — Angisēmum, i n	hermetically — hermetice
anthelminthic — antihelminthīcus, a, um	invasion — invasio, ōnis f
bath — balneum, i n	to keep — contineo, continui, contentum, ěre 2

blackcurrant — Ribes (is, n) nigrum (niger, gra, grum)	narcosis — narcōsis, is f
briquette — brikētum, in	otherwise — alīter
bur-marigold — Bidens, ntis f	parasitical — parasitarius, a, um
closed — obturātus, a, um	tussamag — Tussamāgum, i n
codeine — Codeīnum, i n	vasopren — Vasoprēnum, i n
curative — curatīvus, a, um	vasotrast — Vasotrastum, i n
febricet — Febricētum, i n	vermitox — Vermitoxum, i n
febrinil — Febrinīlum, i n	Vermolfin — Vermolfīnum, i n
great — magnus, a, um	worm — vermis, is m
herb — herba, ae f	

## LESSON 10

# SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE ENDINGS OF THE NEUTRAL GENDER NOUNS IN THE 3-RD DECLENSION. THE VOWEL TYPE OF THE 3-RD DECLENSION

### § 69. Systematization of the neutral gender nouns of the 3rd declension

The neutral gender nouns and their way of changing in the Genitive case are shown in the following table:

Endings in the Nom. sing. case	Endings in the Gen. sing. case	Examples	Exceptions
-al	-ālis	anīmal, ālis n <i>animal</i>	
-ar	-āris	exemplar, āris n <i>example</i>	
-e	-is	Secāle, is n <i>rye</i> rete, is n <i>network</i>	
-en	-īnis	semen, īnis n <i>seed</i>	lichen, ēnis m <i>lichen</i> ren, renis m <i>kidney</i>
-ma (of the Greek origin)	-ātis	stigma, ātis n <i>stigma</i> (of maize) trauma, ātis n <i>trauma, injury</i>	gemma, ae f <i>bud</i> struma, ae f <i>goiter</i> forma, ae f <i>form</i> norma, ae f <i>norm</i>
-ur	ūris	sulfur, ūris n <i>sulphur</i>	
-us	-ēris -ōris	vulnus, ēris n <i>wound</i> corpus, ōris n <i>body</i>	
-c	-tis	lac, lactis n <i>milk</i>	
-l	-lis	mēl, mellis n <i>honey</i>	sal, salis m,n <i>salt</i>

**Attention!** 1. Noun **sal** is of neutral gender in the Singular cases, but in the Plural this noun belongs to the masculine gender, compare:

Sal marīnum — sea-salt, but:

Sales Acīdi nitrīci — salts of nitric acid.

2. Nouns of neutral gender with ending — **ma** in the Nominative singular have in the Dative and Ablative plural ending **-is** instead of **-ibus**:

radīces cum rhizomātis — roots with rhizomes

decocta ex stigmātis Maŷdis — decoctions from maize stigmata

## §70. The vowel type of the 3rd declension

The name «vowel type» is due to vowel «i» which is used in several case endings, namely in the following ones:

- 1) in the Ablative singular of all the genders ending –i
- 2) in the Genitive plural of all the genders ending –ium
- 3) in the Nominative and Accusative plural of neutral gender ending –ia.

In the other cases are used the endings which are common for the consonant, vowel and mixed types.

After the vowel type are declined:

- 1) nouns of neutral gender with endings **-al**, **-a r**, **-e** in the Nominative singular
- 2) adjectives of the 3rd declension (except for adjectives in the comparative degree)
- 3) participles of the present tense.

### Examples of declining the nouns belonging to the mixed type

Case	Singulāris	Pluralis
Nom.	animā exemplar rete	animalia exemplaria retia
Gen.	animālis exemplāris retis	animalium exemplarium retium
Dat.	animāli exemplāri reti	animalibus exemplaribus retibus
Acc.	animā exemplar rete	animalia exemplaria retia
Abl.	animāli exemplāri reti	animalibus exemplaribus retibus

## § 71. Word building elements (part 7)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutica I or therapeutic information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
dorm- from the Latin <i>dormīre</i> to sleep	hypnotic means	Dormīcum, i n Novidormum, i n	<b>dormic</b> <b>novidorm</b>
hypn- from the Greek <i>hýpnos</i> sleep	hypnotic means	Hypnodormum, i n	<b>hypnodorm</b>
nox-, noct- from the Latin <i>nox, noctis</i> f night	hypnotic means	Eunoctīnum, i n Normanoxum, i n	<b>eunoctin</b> <b>normanox</b>
somn- from the Latin <i>somnus, i m</i> sleep	hypnotic means	Insomnium, i n Somnibrōmum, i n	<b>insomnium</b> <b>somnibrom</b>
sed- from the Latin <i>sedāre</i> to quiet down	sedative means	Sedonālum, i n Valosedānum, i n	<b>sedonal</b> <b>valosedan</b>

tranqui-, tranquil- , tranquill- from the Latin <i>tranquillus, a, um</i> quiet, calm	sedative means, tranquilizers	Tranquisānum, i n Tranquillīnum, i n	<b>tranquisan</b> <b>tranquillin</b>
--	----------------------------------	---	---

## § 72. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Oleum Jecōris Aselli vitaminisātum detur in capsūlis gelatinōsis 2. Remedia hypnotīca patientībus ad somnum laesum seu insomniam praescribuntur. 3. Animalia domestīca interdum translātōres morbōrum contagiosōrum sunt. 4. Sulfur depurātum cum pulvĕre radicis Glycyrrhizae mixtum est remedium laxatīvum. 5. Somnibrōmum seu alīter Bromisovālum infantībus ad insomniam aut pertussim praescribītur.

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into the Latin:

1. Columns with maize stigmata are compressed in form of granules for decoctions. 2. Sound persons fall asleep without hypnotic means. 3. Milk sugar isn't dissolved in ether. 4. Honey with warmed milk is good cure for sleepiness. 5. From the dried off rhizomes of hollow stem infusions are prepared for digestive system stimulation.

3. Write down in the dictionary form names of the following terms:

bromisoval, dormic, eunoctin, hypnodorm, normanox, novidorm, sedonal, tranquillin, tranquisan, valosedan

## Dictionaries to lesson 10 Latin-English vocabulary

anīmal, ālis n — animal	laesus, a, um — damaged, hurted
Asellus, i m — cod	laxatīvus, a, um — laxative
Bromisovālum, i n — bromisoval	mixtus, a, um mixed
contagiōsus, a, um — contagious	pertussis, is f — pertussis, whooping cough
domestīcus, a, um — domestic	
gelatinōsus, a, um — gelatinous	seu — or
hypnotīcus, a, um — hypnotic, soporific	Somnibrōmum, i n — somnibrom
insomnia, ae f — insomnia , sleeplessness	somnum, i n — sleep
	Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur
interdum — sometimes	translātor, ōris m — carrier
jecur, ōris n — liver (of fishes)	vitaminisātus, a, um — vitaminized

## English-Latin glossary

column — stylus, i m	milk sugar — Sacchārum lactis
----------------------	-------------------------------

to compress — compīmo , compressi, compressum, ěre 3	novidorm — Novidormum, i n
cure — remedium, i n	normanox —Normanoxum, i n
digestive — digestorius, a, um	person — homo, ĩnis m
to dissolve — dissolvo, dissolvi, dissolūtum, ěre 3; solvo, solvi, solūtum, ěre 3	or — seu
dormic — Dormīcum, i n	sedonal — Sedonālum, i n
dried off — exsiccātus, a, um	to sleep — dormio, ĩvi, ĩtum, ĩre 4
ether — aether, ěris m	sleeplessness — insomnia, ae f
eunoctin — Eunoctīnum, i n	somnibrom — Somnibrōmum, i n
to fall asleep — dormīto, āvi, ātum, āre 1	sound — sanus, a, um
good — bonus, a, um	stigma — stigma, ātis n
hollow stem — Calāmus, i m	stimulation — stimulatio, ōnis f
honey— mel, mellis n	system — systēma, ātis n
maize — Mays, ĳdis f	tranquillin — Tranquillīnum, i n
means — remedium, i n	tranquisan — Tranquisānum, i n
milk — lac, lactis n	valosedan — Valosedānum, i n
	warmed — tepefactus, a, um

# LESSON 11

## THE ADJECTIVES OF THE 3-RD DECLENSION AND VARIANTS OF THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. PECULIARITIES IN DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES AND PRESENT TENSE PARTICIPLES

### § 73. Adjectives of the 3rd declension

Adjectives of the 3rd declension are divided after their number of gender endings in the Nominative case into 3 groups.

The first one includes adjectives with 3 gender endings:

1) **-er** for masculine 2) **-is** for feminine 3) **-e** for neutral:

m	f	n
celer — fast, rapid, quick	celěris — fast, rapid, quick	celěre — fast, rapid, quick
salūber — curative	salūbris — curative	salūbre — curative

Dictionary form of these adjectives includes the masculine gender form in the Nominative case and, after comma, endings of feminine and neutral gender forms with a part of the stem:

celer, ģris, ģre — fast salūber, bris, bre — curative.

Such a mood of presenting feminine and neutral gender endings aims to demonstrate which adjectives serve in these gender forms the vowel **e** before **r** (like adjective *celer*) and which don't serve it (like adjective *salūber*).

Adjectives of the 3rd declension, like nouns of the same declension, have the ending **-is** in the Genitive singular. This case form coincides with feminine gender form of the Nominative singular:

	m	f	n
Nom. sing.	celer salūber	celģris salģbris	celģre salģbre

Gen. sing.                      celģris salubris                      stems: *celer-*, *salubr-*

The second group includes adjectives with ending **-is** for masculine and feminine gender forms and ending **-e** for neutral gender form:

m f	n
brevis — brief, short	breve — brief, short
rectģlis — rectal	rectģle — rectal

Dictionary form of these adjectives includes the masculine and feminine gender form in the Nominative case with ending **-is** and, after comma, ending **-e** of the neutral gender form:

rectģlis, e — rectal solubģlis, e — soluble

The Genitive case of these adjectives, the common one for all genders, coincides in the form with the Nominative case of the masculine and feminine gender forms:

	m	f	n
/ Nom. sing.	rectģlis	rectģlis	rectģle

Gen. sing.    rectģlis                      stem is *rectal-*

Adjectives of this group are the most numerous among adjectives of the 3rd declension. Many of these adjectives were assimilated in the English language, compare: *bacteriģlis, e* — bacterial; *sterģlis, e* — sterile; *transdermģlis, e* — transdermal; *vaginģlis, e* — vaginal.

The 3rd group includes adjectives with a single ending in the Nominative singular which is common for all genders. There are 4 such endings: **-ns**, **-s**, **-r**, **-x**, for example:

recens — fresh

teres — round

tricolor — three-colored

simplex — simple

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative singular form which is common for all three genders and the Genitive singular ending which is common for all three genders too:

<b>Nom. sing. (m, f, n)</b>	<b>Gen. sing.(m, f, n)</b>	<b>Dict. form</b>	<b>Stem</b>
recens — fresh	recentis	recens, ntis	recent-
teres — round	terētis	teres, ētis	terēt-
tricolor — three-colored	tricolōris	tricolor, ōris	tricolōr-
simplex — simple	simplicis	simplex, ĩcis	simplic-

Besides given above sorts of adjectives, the Latinized adjectives of the Greek origin especially in the botanic and bacteriological terms are used. They are parisyllaba adjectives with ending **-es** in the Nom. sing. for all genders:

rhamnoīdes, is — belonging to Hippophaë rhamnoīdes (sea-buckthorn)

pyogēnes, is — producing pus (Arcanobacterium pyogēnes — Arcanobacterium producing pus).

#### § 74. Special features of case endings of the 3rd declension adjectives

Adjectives of the 3rd declension are declined in singular after the vowel typei. e. they have in Abl. sing. ending **-i**. In the plural cases, Adjectives of the masculine and feminine genders are declined after the mixed type but adjectives of neutral gender are declined after the vowel one:

<b>Case</b>	<b>Singular</b>		
	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>
Nom.	salūber brevis recens	salūbris brevis recens	salūbre breve recens
Gen.	salūbris brevis recentis	salūbris brevis recentis	salūbris brevis recentis
Dat.	salūbri brevi recenti	salūbri brevi recenti	salūbri brevi recenti
Acc.	salūbrem brevem recentem	salūbrem brevem recentem	salūbre breve recens
Abl.	salūbri brevi recenti	salūbri brevi recenti	salūbri brevi recenti
<b>Plural</b>			
Nom.	salūbres breves recentes	salūbres breves recentes	salubria brevia recentia

Gen.	salubrium brevium recentium	salubrium brevium recentium	salubrium brevium recentium
Dat.	salubrībus brevībus recentībus	salubrībus brevībus recentībus	salubrībus brevībus recentībus
Acc.	salūbres breves recentes	salūbres breves recentes	salubria brevia recentia
Abl.	salubrībus brevībus recentībus	salūbrībus brevībus recentībus	salubrībus brevībus recentībus

Adjectives with ending **-es** in the Nominative plural are declined after the consonant type of the 3rd declension:

Case	Singular		
	m	f	n
Nom.	rhamnoīdes	rhamnoīdes	rhamnoīdes
Gen.	rhamnoīdis	rhamnoīdis	rhamnoīdis
Dat.	rhamnoīdi	rhamnoīdi	rhamnoīdi
Acc.	rhamnoīdem	rhamnoīdem	rhamnoīdes
Abl.	rhamnoīde	rhamnoīde	rhamnoīde
Plural			
Case	m	f	n
Nom.	rhamnoīdes	rhamnoīdes	rhamnoīda
Gen.	rhamnoīdum	rhamnoīdum	rhamnoīdum
Dat.	rhamnoidībus	rhamnoidībus	rhamnoidībus
Acc.	rhamnoīdes	rhamnoīdes	rhamnoīda
Abl.	rhamnoidībus	rhamnoidībus	rhamnoidībus

### §75. Grammar agreement of the 3rd declension adjectives with the nouns

Adjectives of the 3rd declension make grammar agreement with nouns after the same rules as adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declensions: after the noun is placed the adjective in the form which corresponds to the gender and case of the name:

Word combination in English	Dictionary form of each word	Word combination in Latin
green leaf	leaf folium, i n green virīdis, e	folium (n) virīde (n) Nom. sing. Nom. sing.
forest berry	berry bacca, ae f forest silvester, tris, tre	bacca (f) silvestris (f) Nom. sing. Nom. sing.
fresh flowers	flower flos, floris m fresh recens, ntis	flores (m) recentes (m) Nom. plur. Nom. plur.
simple plasters	plaster emplastrum, i n simple simplex, ĩcis	emplastra (n) simplicia (n) Nom. plur. Nom. plur.

### §76. Specific features in declension of present tense participles

Present tense participles are declined like the 3rd declension adjectives with ending **-ns**. As examples let's use participles *stimūlans, ntis stimulating* and *repellens, entis repelling*:

Case	Singular			Plurar		
	m	f	n	m	f	n

Nom.	stimūlans	repellens	stimulantes repellentes	stimulantia repellentia
Gen.	stimulantis repellentis		stimulantium repellentium	
Dat.	stimulanti repellenti		stimulantibus repellentibus	
Acc.	stimulantem (m f) stimūlans (n) repellentem (m,f) repellens (n)		stimulantes stimulantia repelentes repellentia	
Abl.	stimulanti repellenti		Stimulantibus repellentibus	

### § 77. Lexical variety of adjectives in some botanical names

Some adjectives with the same meaning may be used in different lexical forms depending on a noun which the adjective is joined to. So, adjective *common* may be translated into Latin *commūnis, e* and *vulgāris, e* as well:

common juniper — Junipĕrus commūnis, but:

common thyme — Thymus vulgāris.

In most cases *vulgāris, e* in the meaning of *common* is used. It is useful to remember as exception some widely used terms in which the variant *commūnis, e* is used:

Amygdālus commūnis — bitter almond

Junipĕrus commūnis — common juniper

Ricīnus commūnis — castor bean.

### § 78. Word building elements (part 8)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutical information	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>lax-</b> from the Latin <i>laxāre</i> to make lax	laxative means	Laxigālum, i n Regulaxum, i n	<b>laxigal</b> <b>regulax</b>
<b>neo-</b> from the Greek <i>néos</i> new	a new variant or a remake	Neodōlum, i n Neomycīnum, i n	<b>neodol</b> <b>neomycin</b>
<b>purg-, pur-</b> from the Latin <i>purgāre</i> to purge	purgative means	Purgĕnum, i n Pursennīdum, i, n	<b>purgen</b> <b>pursennid</b>
<b>sen-, senn-</b> from the Latin <i>Senna, ae f</i> senna	laxative means	Antrasennīnum, i n Senadexīnum, i n	antrasennin <b>senadexin</b>

### § 79. Exercises

1. Write down the Latin dictionary forms and make the Nominative and Genitive singular and plural forms translating them into English:

anticoagulant drug; soluble powder; equal part; such a dose; sweet syrup

2. Write down the Latin dictionary forms and translate the sentences into English:

1. Succī recentium baccārum silvestrium sirūpis medicinalibus adduntur. 2. Pursennīdum producitur in tabulettis Sacchāro obductis. 3. Hirudīnes medicināles ad hypertensiōnem arteriālem et ut remedium anticoagulans alhibentur. 4. Emulsa seminalia et oleōsa distinguuntur. 5. Recīpe massam pilulārum et dividē in partes aequāles.

3. Write down the Latin dictionary forms and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Castor oil is produced from castor bean and is used as a purgative means. 2. Green soap is included into content of Wilkinson ointment and other drugs. 3. Infusions from swamp ledum are prepared as an expectorant means for bronchopulmonary diseases. 4. Medicines from Chinese magnolia vine stimulate the central nervous system. 5. Mix to make rectal suppositories in the amount 10.

## Dictionaries to lesson 11

### Latin–English vocabulary

aequālis, e — equal	medicinālis, e — medicinal
anticoagulans, ntis — anticoagulant	obductus, a, um — coated
arteriālis, e — arterial	oleōsus, a, um — oily
distinguo, distinxi, distinctum, ěre 3 to distinguish	pilūla, ae f — pill
divīdo, divīsi, divīsum, ěre 3 — to divide	Pursennīdum, i n — pursennid
hirudo, ĩnis f — leech	recens, ntis — fresh
hypertensio, ōnis f — hypertension	Sacchārum, i n — sugar
massa, ae f — mass	seminālis, e — seminal
	silvester, tris, tre — forest

### English–Latin glossary

amount (anything countable) — numērus, i m	magnolia vine — Schizandra, ae f
	nervous — nervōsus, a, um
as — ut	other — alius, a, ud
bronchopulmonary — bronchopulmonālis, e	purgative — purgatīvus, a, um
castor bean — Ricīnus, i m	rectal –rectālis, e
castor oil — Oleum Ricīni	soap — sapo, ōnis m
central — centrālis, e	soluble — solubīlis, e
Chinese — chinensis, e	to stimulate — stimūlo, āvi, ātum, āre 1
content — compositio, ōnis f	such — talis, e
expectorant — expectōrans, ntis	swamp ledum — Ledum (Ledum, i n)
green — virīdis, e	palustre (paluster, tris, tre)
to include — inclūdo, incūsi, inclūsum, ěre 3	sweet — dulcis, e
	system — systēma, ātis n

# LESSON 12

## COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE GRADES OF COMPARISON AND SPECIAL FEATURES OF THEIR FORMATION, DECLENSION AND USAGE

### § 80. Formation and declension of adjectives in the comparative grade

Qualitative adjectives in Latin like the English ones have three comparison grades — positive, comparative and superlative.

The positive grade corresponds to the dictionary form of adjective and we have already met all sorts of these adjectives.

The comparative grade is formed from the stem of the positive grade by adding final suffix – **ior** for masculine and feminine genders and by adding final suffix – **ius** for the neutral gender:

Positive grade	Stem	Comparative grade	
		m f	n
albus, a, um <i>white</i>	alb-	albior <i>whiter, more white</i>	albius <i>whiter, more white</i>
niger, gra, grum <i>black</i>	nigr-	nigrior <i>blacker, more black</i>	nigrius <i>blacker, more black</i>
breviŕ, e <i>short</i>	brev-	brevior <i>shorter, more short</i>	brevius <i>shorter, more short</i>
simplex, ĩcis <i>simple</i>	simplĭc-	simplĭcior <i>simpler, more simple</i>	simplĭcius <i>simpler, more simple</i>

The comparative grade forms are declined after the consonant type of the 3rd declension:

Case	Singular		Plural	
	m f	n	m f	n
Nom.	brevior	brevius	breviōres	breviōra
Gen.	breviōris	breviōris	breviōrum	breviōrum
Dat.	breviōri	breviōri	breviorĭbus	breviorĭbus
Acc.	breviōrem	brevius	breviōres	breviōra
Abl.	breviōre	breviōre	breviorĭbus	breviorĭbus

The stem of the comparative grade forms is determined like the positive grade that is by removing ending **-is** from the Genitive singular form. This stem is equal with form of the Nominative case of masculine and feminine genders.

### § 81. Formation and declension of adjectives in the superlative grade

The most adjectives make the superlative grade by adding to the positive grade stem the suffix **-issim-** and the gender endings **-us, a, um**:

Positive grade	Stem	Superlative grade
purus, a, um <i>pure</i>	pur-	purissimus, a, um <i>the purest</i>
brevis, e <i>short</i>	brev-	brevissimus, a, um <i>the shortest</i>
simplex, icis <i>simple</i>	simplīc-	simplīcissimus, a, um <i>the most simple</i>

Adjectives with ending **-er** in the Nominative singular case of masculine gender make the superlative grade by adding to this form the suffix **-rīm-** and gender endings **-us, -a, -um**:

Positive grade	Masculine gender form	Superlative grade
niger, gra, grum <i>black</i>	niger	nigerrīmus, a, um <i>the most black</i>
acer, cris, cre <i>sharp</i>	acer	acerrīmus, a, um <i>the sharpest</i>

The following six adjectives with ending **-lis** in the Nominative singular case make the superlative grade by adding to the stem of the positive grade the suffix **-līm-** and gender endings **-us, -a, -um**:

facilis, e <i>easy</i>	facil-	facillīmus, a, um <i>the easiest</i>
difficilis, e <i>difficult</i>	difficil-	difficillīmus, a, um <i>the most difficult</i>
similis, e <i>similar</i>	simil-	simillīmus, a, um <i>the most similar</i>
dissimilis, e <i>dissimilar</i>	dissimil-	dissimillīmus, a, um <i>the most dissimilar</i>
gracilis, e <i>slender</i>	gracil-	gracillīmus, a, um <i>the most slender</i>
humilis, e <i>low</i>	humil-	humillīmus, a, um <i>the lowest</i>

Forms of the superlative grade are declined like forms of the positive grade with endings **-us, a, um** that is after the 1st and 2nd declensions. Grammar agreement is made after already known rules:

the finest powder — pulvis subtilissimus

the most sweet berry — bacca dulcissima

the purest Vaseline — Vaselinum purissimum

## § 82. Special forms of making the comparative and superlative grades

Adjectives with vowels **-e, -i, -u** before gender endings **-us, -a, -um** make the comparative grade consisting of the word combination **magis** (more) and the adjective in the proper gender positive grade form. The superlative grade is made of the word combination **maxīme** (the most) and the adjective in the proper gender positive grade form:

Positive grade	Comparative grade	Superlative grade
continuus, a, um <i>continuous</i>	magis continuus, a, um <i>more continuous</i>	maxīme continuus, a, um <i>the most continuous</i>
varius, a, um <i>various</i>	magis varius a, um <i>more various</i>	maxīme varius, a, um <i>the most various</i>

Adjectives bonus (good), malus (bad), magnus (great), parvus (little, small) change somewhat their stem in the comparative and superlative grades:

Positive grade	Comparative grade	Superlative grade
bonus, a, um <i>good</i>	melior, ius <i>better</i>	optīmus, a, um <i>the best</i>
malus, a, um <i>bad</i>	peior, ius (pejor, pejus) <i>worse</i>	pessīmus, a, um <i>the worst</i>
magnus, a, um <i>big, great</i>	maior, ius (major, majus) <i>bigger, greater</i>	maxīmus, a, um <i>the biggest, the greatest</i>
parvus, a, um <i>little</i>	minor, minus <i>lesser</i>	minīmus, a, um <i>the least</i>

**Attention!** Adjectives in comparative and superlative grades in some Latin botanical names take on by translating into English a not expected grammar and lexical form:

Arctium majus — great burdock

Centaurium minus — common centaury

Cucurbita maxīma — winter squash

Linum usitatissimum — fiber flax

Vinca minor — common periwinkle

## § 83. Word building elements (part 9)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>api-</b> from the Latin <i>apis, is</i> f bee	means produced from life work of bees	Apilācum, i n Apiphōrum, i n	<b>apilāc</b> <b>apiphor</b>
<b>myo-</b> from the Greek <i>mys, myós</i> muscle	means which have an effect both on muscles of skeleton and inner organs	Myolastānum, I n Myo-Relaxīnum, I n	<b>myolastan</b> <b>myo-Relaxin</b>
<b>rifa-</b> a provisional name of a group of	antibiotics of the rifamycine group	Rifamycīnum, i n Rifampicīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	<b>rifamycin</b> <b>rifampicin</b> <b>rifathyroin</b>

antibiotics			
<b>uro-</b> from the Greek <i>úron</i> urine	means which have an effect on the urinary system	Urodipīnum, i n Urolesānum, i n Uromidīnum, i n	<b>urodipin</b> <b>urolesan</b> <b>uromidin</b>

## § 84. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into English

low (lower, the lowest) tree; good (better, the best) drug; red (redder, the reddest) berry; dense (denser, the densest) solution; little (lesser, the least) dose; useful (more useful, the most useful) juice; simple (more simple, the most simple) system

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Semīna exsiccāta et depurāta Cucurbītae majōris ut remedium effīcax contra varia Cestōda adhibentur. 2. Plantaglučīdum in granūlis ex extracto aquōso foliōrum Plantagīnis majōris effīcitur. 3. Exprīme succum ex baccis Oxycocci recentissīmis et adde sirūpum Sacchāri. 4. Remedia amarissīma sunt saepe remedia maxīme necessaria et utilissīma. 5. Medicamenta naturalia sunt non tam celeria in curatione, ut remedia synthetīca.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Mix to get the finest powder. 2. Urolesan has spasmolytic activity and diminishes inflammatory phenomena in the urinary system. 3. Infusion of swallowwort is administered before meal as diuretic, purgative and analgesic means. 4. Myorelaxin is induced patients for full relaxation of respiratory muscles during the operation. 5. Rifamycine is produced as a solution for injections in ampoules or in bottles.

## Dictionaries to lesson 12

### Latin-English vocabulary

amārus, a, um — bitter	Myorelaxīnum, i n — myorelaxin
analgesic — analgetīcus, a, um	naturālis, e — natural
aquōsus, a, um — aqueous	necessarius, a, um — necessary
celer, ēris, ěre — fast, quick, rapid	Oxycoccus, i m — cranberry
Cestōda, ōrum n — Cestoda, the typical tapeworms, a subclass of the Cestoidea	Plantāgo, ĩnis f — plantain Plantāgo major — common plantain
Cucurbīta, ae f — pumpkin Cucurbīta major — winter squash	Plantaglučīdum, i n — plantaglučid saepe — frequently, often
curatio, ōnis f — treatment	synthetīcus, a, um — synthetic
effīcax, ācis — effective	utilis, e — useful
exprīmo, expressi, expressum, ěre 3 – to squeeze out	varius, a, um — various

### English-Latin glossary

activity — activītas, ātis f	meal — cibus, i m
before — ante (+Acc.)	phenomenon — phenomēnon, i n
dense — densus, a, um	purgative — purgatīvus, a, um
to diminish — deminuo, deminui, deminūtum, ěre 3	simple — simplex, ĩcis spasmolytic — spasmolytīcus, a, um

diuretic — diuretĭcus, a, um	swallowwort — Chelidonium, i, n majus (major, majus)
during — tempore (+Gen.)	
fine — subtilis, e	time — tempus, ōris n
inflammatory — inflammatorius, a, um	urinary — urinarius, a, um
little — parvus, a, um	urolesan — Urolesānum, i n
low — humĭlis, e	useful — utĭlis, e

## LESSON 13

# THE 4-TH AND 5 -TH NOUN DECLENSIONS. NOUNS *USUS* AND *SPECIES* IN PROFESSIONAL PHARMACEUTICAL EXPRESSIONS

### § 85. The 4th declension and its case endings

As already shown above (§12), the ending **-us** in the Genitive singular case is the characteristic feature of the 4th declension nouns. This declension unites mainly masculine gender nouns:

fructus, us m *fruit* processus, us m *process* spirĭtus, us m *spirit/alcohol*

Nouns of neutral gender are not numerous, for example:

cornu, us n *horn* gelu, us n *cold, frost*

Case endings of the 4-th declension nouns are shown in the table below:

Case	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	fructus	cornu	fructus	cornua
Gen.	fructus	cornus	fructuum	cornuum
Dat.	fructui	cornu	fructĭbus	cornĭbus
Acc.	fructum	cornu	fructus	cornua
Abl.	fructu	cornu	fructĭbus	cornĭbus

The 4th declension includes some nouns of the feminine gender, for example: Quercus, us f *oak*; manus, us f *hand*. Such nouns are declined after the noun *fructus*.

### § 86. The name *usus* in expressing the drug route administration

The formulas expressing the common route of drug administration consist usually of the preposition **ad** or **pro** with the same meaning «for», the noun **usus, us m** usage and an adjective, defining more precisely the drug administration:

ad usum externum (= pro usu externo) — for external use

ad usum internum (= pro usu interno) — for internal use

ad usum locālem (= pro usu locāli) — for the topical (local) use

ad usum parenterālem (= pro usu parenterāli) — for parenteral use

### § 87. The 5th declension and its case endings

The 5th declension includes nouns of the feminine gender with the characteristic ending **-ei** in the Genitive singular case: *facies, ēi f face, surface; res, rei f matter, thing; scabies, ēi f scabies, itch.*

The only noun of the masculine gender of the 5th declension is *meridies, ēi m noon*. The noun *dies, ēi, m, f day* belongs to the feminine gender when it is combined with an ordinal numeral: *dies prima — the first day*. In other meaning word *dies* is of the masculine gender: *dies crīticus — critical(crucial) day*. That's why the dictionary form of this word includes two gender signs: *dies, ēi m, f*.

Case endings of the 5th declension are shown in the table below:

Case	Endings in the singular	Endings in the plural	Full form in the singular	Full form in the plural
Nom.	-es	-es	<i>species</i>	<i>species</i>
Gen.	-ēi	-ērum	<i>speciēi</i>	<i>speciērum</i>
Dat.	-ēi	-ēbus	<i>speciēi</i>	<i>speciēbus</i>
Acc.	-em	-es	<i>speciem</i>	<i>species</i>
Abl.	-e	-ēbus	<i>specie</i>	<i>speciēbus</i>

The noun *species* used both in singular and plural forms has a biological meaning *species (of a plant, of an animal etc.)*, but used only in plural forms this noun has a pure pharmaceutical meaning *species*. In English this term may be used both in singular and in plural as well.

It is useful to memorize the names of the pharmaceutical species. Pay attention that the Latin variants are in the Nominative plural, and the English ones — in the Nominative singular:

*Species amarae* — bitter species

*Species antiasthmaticae* — antiasthmatic species

*Species antihaemorrhoidales* — antihaemorrhagical species

*Species carminativae* —carminative species

*Species cholagogae* —cholagogue species

*Species diaphoreticae* — diaphoretic species

*Species diureticae seu urologicae* — diuretic or urological species

*Species laxantes* — laxative species

*Species pectorales* — pectoral species

Species sedatīvae — sedative species

Species stomachīcae — stomachic species

Species (poly)vitaminōsae — (poly)vitaminous species

### § 88. Word building elements (part 10)

Word building element and his etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>erythr-, eryth-, ery-, -ythr-, thr-</b> from the Greek <i>erythrós</i> red	1) means containing erythromycin 2) means produced from erythrocytes	Clarythromycīnum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	clarythromycin <b>erycyc</b> line
<b>haem-</b> from the Greek <i>haíma</i> blood	means stopping blood circulation or stimulating blood cell formation	Haemostimulīnum, i n haemostaticus, a, um	<b>haem</b> ostimulin <b>haem</b> ostatic
<b>pyo-</b> from the Greek <i>pýon</i> pus	antiseptic means	Pyocīdum, i n Pyocillīnum, i n	<b>pyo</b> cide <b>pyo</b> cilline
<b>rythm-</b> from the Greek <i>rhythmós</i> rhythm	antiarrhythmic means	Rythmodānum, i n Rythmonormum, i n	<b>ryth</b> modan <b>ryth</b> monorm
<b>stat-, static-</b> from the Greek <i>statikós</i> stopping	cessation of an (obstructive) process	haemostaticus, a, um Lovostatinum, i n	haemostatic lovostatin
<b>thromb-, tromb-</b> from the Greek <i>thrómbos</i> lump	means influencing blood or thrombocyte coagulating	Thromboliquīnum, i n Trombostōpum, i n	<b>throm</b> boliquin <b>trom</b> bostop

### § 89. Exercises

1. Translate the following word combinations into Latin in the Nominative and Genitive cases both in singular and plural as well:

diluted spirit, pectoral species, parenteral usage, third day, hard frost, chronic caries, present state, bitter fruit, new species (in biology)

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Recīpe plantas officināles necessarias et praepāra species amaras pro infantībus. 2. Res rudes plantārum in locis remotissimis saepe colliguntur. 3. Thromboliquīnum seu Heparīnum est anticoagulantum actiōnis directae. 4. Aegrōtus vitrum cum infūso speciērum stomachicārum recīpit et bibit. 5. Pyocīdum ad usum locālem in curatiōne stomatologīca adhibētur.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Disopyramid or the other rhythmmodan suppresses excitability of myocardium. 2. The preparation eryhaem is produced from human blood erythrocytes. 3. After bite of an animal with symptoms of rabies the victim takes the antirabic vaccine. 4. There are two species of almond: bitter or common almond and sweet almond. 5. Burns and some other skin injuries are treated with aqueous oak decoction.

### Dictionaries to lesson 13

#### Latin-English vocabulary

actio, ōnis f — effect	Pyocīdum, i n — pyocide
amārus, a, um — bitter	remōtus, a, um — remote
anticoagulantum, i n — anticoagulant	res, rei f — matter, thing
bibo, bibi, -, ěre 3 — to drink	res rudes — raw materials
colligo, collēgi, collectum, ěre 3 — to collect, to gather	rudis, e — raw
directus, a, um — direct	saepe — frequently, often
Heparīnum, i n — heparin	species, ēi f — species (in biology)
locālis, e — local	species, ērum f — species (in pharmaceuticals)
locus, i m — place	stomachīcus, a, um — stomachic
officinālis, e — officinal	Thromboliquīnum, i n — thromboliquin
planta, ae f — plant	usus, us m — use, usage

#### English-Latin glossary

after — post (+Acc.)	oak — Quercus, us f
almond tree — Amygdālus, i f	preparation — praeparātum, i n
antirabic — antirabīcus, a, um	rabies — rabies, ēi f
aqueous — aquōsus, a, um	rhythmmodan — Rhythmodānum, i n
bite — morsus, us m	some — nonnullus, a, um
bitter — amārus, a, um	sort, species — species, ēi f
burn — combustio, ōnis f	to suppress — supprīmo, supressi, supressum, ěre 3
common — commūnis, e	
disopyramid — Disopyramīdum, i n	symptom — symptōma, ātis n
eryhaem — Eryhaemum, i n	sweet — dulcis, e
excitability — excitabilitās, ātis f	the other — alīter
a human — homo, ĩnis m	two — duo (m), duae (f), duo (n)
injury — laesio, ōnis f	vaccine — vaccīnum, i n
myocardium — myocardium, i n	victim — victīma, ae f

#### Summary table of noun declensions case endings

Declension	I	II		III		IV		V
Gender	f	m	n	m f	n	m	n	f
Nom. sing.	-a	-us -er	-um -on	different		-us	-u	-es

Gen. sing.	-ae	-i		-is		-us		-ēi
Dat. sing.	-ae	-o		e (i)		u		-e
Acc. sing.	-am	-um	=Nom. sing.	-em (-im)	=Nom. sing.	-um	=Nom. sing.	-em
Abl. sing.	-ā	-o		-e (-i)		-u		-e
Nom. plur.	-ae	-i	-a	-es	-a (-ia)	-us	-ua	-es
Gen. plur.	-ārum	-ōrum		-um (-ium)		-uum		-ērum
Dat. Plur.	-is	-is		-ibus		-ibus		-ēbus
Acc. plur.	-as	-os	=Nom. plur.	-es	=Nom. plur.	-us	=Nom. plur.	-es
Abl. plur.	-is	-is		-ibus		-ibus		-ēbus

# LESSON 14

## SYSTEMATIZED INFORMATION ON PREPOSITIONS AND THEIR USE IN THE PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

### § 90. Some general remarks on prepositions

Prepositions in the Latin terms are used mainly with Accusative or Ablative and only few prepositions are used with both these cases dependently on the questions «were?» or «where to?» Some prepositions in Latin don't coincident in direct sense with their English equivalents. For example, when we have to translate «a medicine for some disease», in Latin the preposition «contra» i. e. «against» instead of preposition «pro» i. e. «for» is to be used.

You are already familiar with some prepositions. Now, let's systemize all the most used prepositions according their grammar rules of usage.

### § 91. Prepositions used with Accusative case

The following prepositions are used with Accusative:

Proposition	Meaning	Examples
<b>ad</b>	1) for 2) in (in designations of pathologic states)	ad usum internum – for internal use ad bronchitidem – in bronchitis
<b>ante</b>	before	ante cibum – before meal
<b>apud</b>	in	morbi allergici apud infantes – allergic diseases in children
<b>contra</b> (literally «against»)	for	contra tussim – for cough contra diarrhoeam – for diarrhea

<b>inter</b>	1) between (two objects) 2) among (in the mass)	inter labia– between lips inter aegrotos – among patients
<b>intra</b>	in, into	intra musculos – into muscles
<b>per</b>	1) during, per 2) through 3) by means of, via	per diem – during a day per rectum – through rectum per injectiōnes – via injections
<b>post</b>	after	post morbum – after disease
<b>retro</b>	behind	retro buccam – behind cheek
<b>secundum</b>	according to	secundum medici prescriptionem – according to doctor’s prescription
<b>super, supra</b>	above	supra cutem – above skin
<b>trans</b>	through	trans vas – through a vessel

### § 92. Prepositions used with Ablative case

Proposition	Meaning	Examples
<b>cum</b>	with	cum radicibus – with roots
<b>de</b>	about, of	de vitamīnis – about vitamins
<b>e, ex</b> (the second variant is widely used)	from	ex foliis – from leaves ex tempore – in case of need
<b>pro</b>	for	pro inhalatiōne – for inhalation pro cursu – for course of treatment
<b>sine</b>	without	sine cortice – without bark

### § 93. Prepositions used with two cases (Accusative and Ablative as well)

Two prepositions — **in** (into, in, on) and **sub** (under) may be used both with Accusative and Ablative as well depending on the questions «where?» or «where to?». In the first case Accusative is used, in the second one - Ablative:

in ampullam — into ampulle («where to?»)

in ampulla — in ampulle («where?»)

under plaster — sub emplastrum («where to?»)

under plaster — sub emplastro («where?»)

The same prepositions can be used in a temporal meaning:

in die — every day, per day

sub operatiōne — under operation, during operation

### § 94. Prepositions used with Genitive

Two prepositions can be used with Genitive: **causa** (because of), **gratia** (for the sake of):  
complicatiōnis causa — because of complication

exempli gratia (e. g.) — for example (literally «for the sake of example»).

## § 95. Word building elements (part 11)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building elements
<b>emes-, emet-</b> from the Greek <i>émesis</i> vomiting; <i>emetikós</i> emetic, vomitive	antiemetic means	Emesētum, i n Emetisānum, i n	<b>emeset</b> <b>emetisan</b>
<b>enter-</b> from the Greek <i>énteron</i> intestine	means for treating enteric diseases	Enterosalŷlum, i, n Enterosorbentum, i n	<b>enterosalyl</b> <b>enterosorbent</b>
<b>gastr-</b> from the Greek <i>gastér, gastrós</i> stomach	means for treating gastrointestinal diseases	Alugastrīnum, i n Gastrosōlum, i n	<b>alugastrin</b> <b>gastrosol</b>
<b>nause-, nausi-</b> from the Latin <i>nausea, aef</i> nausea, sickness from the Greek <i>náusia</i> sea-sickness	antiemetic means	Anausīnum, i n Nauseālum, i n Nauselīnum, i n	<b>anausin</b> <b>nauseal</b> <b>nauselin</b>
<b>ulc, ulcer-</b> from the Latin <i>ulcus, ěris n</i> ulcer	means for treating ulcerous diseases of gastrointestinal tract	Ulcerānum, i n Ulcosānum, i n	<b>ulceran</b> <b>ulcosan</b>

## § 96. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

1) aerosol for intranasal inhalation 2) solution for injections in ampoules 3) suspension for internal use 4) powder for a solution for external use in little packets 5) ophthalmic drops in phial-droppers 6) solutions in ampoule in disposable syringes 7) drug dose for a day and for a course of treatment.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English

1. Post remotiōnem ex gastre materiārum irritantium ex tempore remedia obvolventia et constringentia adhibentur. 2. In solutionibus sterilibus pro injectionibus adhibentur per se olea pingua, exempli gratia oleum Olivārum et oleum Amygdalārum. 3. Enterosorbentum seu Carbo activātus inter cibi assumptiōnes sumitur. 4. Pulvis Polysorbi MP ad usum localem in vulnus sub fasciam semel pro die imponitur. 5. Tabulettae sumuntur sub linguam, retro buccam et per tractum gastrointestinalem.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Ulceran is produced in form of lyophilised powder for solutions in ampoules together with a solvent. 2. The ampoule content for intravenous injection is diluted in a sterile glucose solution. 3. Preparations of flowers and grass of lily-of-the-valley are administered for heart diseases. 4. Into composition of stomachic species powdery rhizome from some medical herbs is included. 5. Gastrosol penetrates quickly into parietal cells of stomach and takes cell protecting effect.

## Dictionaries to lesson 14

### Latin–English vocabulary

assumptio, ōnis f — reception, intake	obvolvens, ntis — enveloping
bucca, ae f — cheek	per — 1) during, per 2) through 3) by

constringens, entis — constringent	by means of, via
cibus, i m — meal	per se — in natural state, non purified
enterosorbentum, i n — enter sorbent	pinguis, e — fat
exemplum, i n — example	Polysorbum, i n — polysorb
exempli gratia — for example	retro (+ Acc.) — behind
fascia, ae f — bandage	semel — once
gastrointestinalis, e — gastrointestinal	sterilis, e — sterile
impōno, imposui, impositum, ěre 3 — to apply	tempus, ōris n — time ex tempore — in case of need

### English-Latin glossary

aerosol — aērosōlum, i n	intranasal — intranasālis, e
cell — cellūla, ae f	intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um
composition — contentus, us m	lily-of-the-valley — Convallaria, ae f
content — contentus, us m	little packet — fascicūlus, i m
course — cursus, us m	parietal — parietalis, e
disposable — uniusuālis, e	
external — externus, a, um	to penetrate — penĕtro, āvi, ātum āre l
gastrosol — Gastrosōlum, i n	phial-dropper — flaco-guttātor, flacōnis-guttatōris m
glucose — Glucōsum, i n	
grass — herba, ae f	powdery — pulverātus, a, um
heart — cor, cordis n	protecting — protĕgens, entis
herb — herba, ae f	quickly — cito
inhalation — inhalatio, ōnis f	solvent — dissolūtor, ōris m
internal — internus, a, um	sterile — sterilis, e
into — in (+Acc.)	together — una cum (+Abl.)

# LESSON 15

## NUMERALS IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

### § 97. Latin cardinal numerals

Latin cardinal numerals and their figure equivalents are shown at the table below:

Contemporary designations of Latin cardinal numerals	Roman figures designating cardinal numerals	Latin names of cardinal numerals
1 (one)	I	unus, a, um
2 (two)	II	duo, duae, duo
3 (three)	III	tres, tria
4 (four)	IV	quattuor
5 (five)	V	quinque
6 (six)	VI	sex
7 (seven)	VII	septem
8 (eight)	VIII	octo
9 (nine)	IX	novem
10 (ten)	X	decem
11 (eleven)	XI	undĕcim
12 (twelve)	XII	duodĕcim
13 (thirteen)	XIII	tredĕcim
14 (fourteen)	XIV	quattuordĕcim
15 (fifteen)	XV	quindĕcim
16 (sixteen)	XVI	sedĕcim
17 (seventeen)	XVII	septendĕcim
18 (eighteen)	XVIII	duodeviginti
19 (nineteen)	XIX	undeviginti
20 (twenty)	XX	viginti
21 (twenty-one)	XXI	unus et viginti (= viginti unus)
30 (thirty)	XXX	triginta
40 (forty)	XL	quadraginta
50 (fifty)	L	quingenta
60 (sixty)	LX	sexaginta
70 (seventy)	L XX	septuaginta
80 (eighty)	L XXX	octoginta
90 (ninety)	XC	nonaginta
100 (a hundred)	C	centum
125 (one hundred and twenty five)	CXXV	centum viginti quinque
200 (two hundred)	CC	ducenti, ae, a
300 (three hundred)	CCC	trecenti, ae, a

400 (four hundred)	CD	quadringenti, ae, a
500 (five hundred)	D	quingenti, ae, a
600 (six hundred)	DC	sescenti, ae, a
700 (seven hundred)	DCC	septingenti, ae, a
800 (eight hundred)	DCCC	octingenti, ae, a
900 (nine hundred)	CM	nongenti, ae, a
1000 (one thousand)	M	mille
2000 (two thousand)	MM	duo milia

**Some notes to the table:** 1. As seen below, only 7 signs are used in the Roman figure designations: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; D = 500; M = 1000. On the base of these signs all the figure designations are composed by joining them to the left (by number increasing) or to the right (by number diminishing).

2. Numerals from 11 till 17 include the final element — *dĕcim* which is a derivate from the numeral *decem* (10).

3. Numerals composing figures of dozens in combination with 8 or 9 (18, 19, 28, 29 etc) are designed by subtraction the ‘one’ or ‘two’ from the next dozen:

18 = 20-2 — *duodeviginti* (literally: two from twenty)

29 = 30-1 — *undetriginta* (literally: one from thirty)

4. Figures from 21 till 99 are designed by two ways:

a) the one-numeral is at the first place, and after conjunction *et*, the dozen designation is placed: 24 — *quattuor et viginti*;

b) the dozen designations are at the first place, and then without conjunction *et* the one-numerals are placed: 24 — *viginti quattuor*.

5. In numerals above 100 names of the hundredth part (in the Nominative plural) are the first, then without conjunction dozen names and one-numeral names are joined, for example, 225 — *ducenti viginti quinque* (for masculine gender), *ducentae viginti quinque* (for feminine gender), *ducenta viginti quinque* (for neutral gender).

6. Historically and nowadays, the Roman figures are used especially in the West Europe and the USA for designating chronologic dates, pages, and volumes of books and time of their printing as well.

7. In the pharmaceutical terminology the Roman figures are used for determining amount of drops (see below) and for time determining in expressions with the preposition *per* in the meaning *during*: *per horas II* — during two hours, *per minūtas V*— during five minutes.

#### § 98. Declension of cardinal numerals

From all the cardinal numerals are declined:

- 1) *unus, a, um* (in singular cases);
- 2) *duo, duae, duo* (in plural cases);
- 3) *tres, tria* (in plural cases);
- 4) dozen designations from 200 to 900 (in plural cases);
- 5) *milia* (in plural cases).

Declining the numeral *unus, a, um* – one

Cases	m	f	n
Nom.	<i>unus</i>	<i>una</i>	<i>unum</i>
Gen.	<i>unīus</i>	<i>unīus</i>	<i>unīus</i>
Dat.	<i>uni</i>	<i>unī<sup>85</sup></i>	<i>uni</i>
Acc.	<i>unum</i>	<i>unam</i>	<i>unum</i>
Abl.	<i>uno</i>	<i>una</i>	<i>uno</i>

Declining the numeral duo, duae, duo – two

Cases	m	f	n
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duos	duas	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Declining the numeral tres, tria — three

Cases	m f	n
Nom.	tres	tria
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	tres	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

Declining dozen designations (ducenti, ae, a)

Cases	m	f	n
Nom.	ducenti	ducentae	ducenta
Gen.	ducentōrum	ducentārum	ducentōrum
Dat.	ducentis	ducentis	ducentis
Acc.	ducentos	ducentas	ducenta
Abl.	ducentis	ducentis	ducentis

Numeral milia is the Nominative plural form of the numeral *mille* and is declined only in plural like neutral gender nouns of the vowel type :

Nom.	milia
Gen.	milium
Dat.	milibus
Acc.	milia
Abl.	milibus

§ 99. Grammar agreement of numerals with nouns

Cardinal numerals which can be declined, except for the numeral *milia*, agree with nouns in gender, number and case:

- duo suppositoria — two suppositories
- tres solutiōnes — three solutions
- ducentae doses — two hundred doses
- ducenta grammāta — two hundred grams

trecenta quinquaginta millilītra — three hundred milliliters.

Nouns used with numeral form *mille* are put in the Nominative plural:

mille homīnes — thousand persons

mille ampullae — thousand ampoules.

But nouns used with numeral *milia* are put in the Genitive plural:

duo milia dosium — two thousand doses

tria milia ampullārum — three thousand ampoules.

#### § 100. The ordinal numerals

English name	Latine name
first	primus, a, um
second	secundus, a, um (= alter, ěra, ěrum)
third	tertius, a, um
fourth	quartus, a, um
fifth	quintus, a, um
sixth	sextus, a, um
seventh	septīmus, a, um
eighth	octāvus, a, um
ninth	nonus, a, um
tenth	decīmus, a, um
eleventh	undecīmus, a, um
twelfth	duodecīmus, a, um
thirteenth	tertius decīmus, a, um
fourteenth	quartus decīmus, a, um
fifteenth	quintus decīmus, a, um
sixteenth	sextus decīmus, a, um
seventeenth	septīmus decīmus, a, um
eighteenth	duodevicesīmus, a, um
nineteenth	undevicesīmus, a, um
twentieth	vicesīmus, a, um
twenty-first	unus et vicesīmus (= vicesīmus primus)
thirtieth	trecesīmus, a, um
fortieth	quadragesīmus, a, um
fiftieth	quingagesīmus, a, um
sixtieth	sexagesīmus, a, um
seventieth	septuagesīmus, a, um
eightieth	octogesīmus, a, um
ninetieth	nonagesīmus, a, um
hundredth	centesīmus, a, um
two-hundredth	ducentesīmus, a, um
three-hundredth	trecentesīmus, a, um
thousandth	millesīmus, a, um
two-thousandth	secundus, a, um millesīmus, a, um
five-thousandth	quintus, a, um millessīmus, a, um
hundred- thousands	centesīmus, a, um millesīmus, a, um

So, from point of view of grammar Latin ordinal numerals are adjectives of the 1st or 2nd declensions. They are signed by the same symbols as the corresponding cardinal numerals:

the hundred twenty-first tablet — *tabuletta CXXI (centesima vicesima prima)*

#### § 101. Expression of percentage correlation

Integral numbers of percents are expressed by cardinal numerals grammatically agreed with the names *pars* in the Nominative singular (if it is only one a percent) and *partes* in the Nominative plural (if there are two or more percents) to which the *pro centum* is added:

1% — *una (pars) pro centum*; 2% — *duae (partes) pro centum*; 10% — *decem (partes) pro centum*; 100% — *centum (partes) pro centum*. The words *pars/partes* may be omitted. Such constructions are also not changed after cases in a multiword term expressing a percentage correlation:

*Solutio Lidocaini duae partes pro centum — 2% lidocain solution*

*Solutiōnis Lincomycīni hydrochlorīdi triginta (partes) pro centum millilītrum unum — 1 milliliter of 30% solution of lincomycin hydrochloride*

A percentage expressed by decimal fraction is arranged by the following way. First proceeds an ordinal numeral *decima* (for dozens), *centesima* (for hundreds) or *millesima* (for thousands) agreed with nouns «*pars*» or «*partes*» (as usual they are omitted), to which the expression *pro centum* is added:

0.1% — *decima pro centum*; 0.02% — *duae centesimae pro centum*; 0.003 % — *tres millesimae pro centum*. Numeral 1 one (one tenth/ hundredth / thousandth) in the Latin text is omitted as seen above. The expression «five tenths» is translated as *dimidia*:

0.5% — *dimidia pro centum*; 3.5% — *tres partes et dimidia pro centum*. But: 3.05% — *tres partes et quinque centesimae pro centum*.

Like expressions with designation integral percent numbers, both names of drug form and the drug name as well are not changed after cases in expressions designating tenth/ hundredth / thousandth percent parts:

*Solutiōnis Thiamīni bromīdi duae decimae (partes) pro centum gramma unum — 1 gram of solution of thiamin bromide 0.2%*

*Solutiōnis Furacilīni duae centesimae (partes) pro centum grammata viginti — 20 grams of 0.02% solution of furacilin*

*Medicus praescribit Solutiōnem Novocaini viginti quinque centesimae (partes) pro centum in ampullis ana decem et viginti millilītra —*

*Doctor prescribes 0.25% solution of Novocain in ampoules on 10 and 20 ml everyone*

#### § 102. Designation of matter amount in Latin pharmaceutical terms

The matter amount is designed in grams (*gramma, ātis n — gram*) or in tenth, hundredth and thousandth portions of gram (*decigramma, ātis n — decigram*; *centigramma, ātis n — centigram*; *milligramma, ātis n — milligram*).

If the matter amount is expressed by an integral number, then after this integral number a comma is placed with a following zero:

1.0 — *gramma unum (one gram)*

- 2.0 — grammāta duo (two grams)  
 10.0 — grammāta decem (ten grams)  
 20.5 — grammāta viginti et dimidia — 20.5 (twenty point five) grams —

If the matter amount is expressed by a decimal portion of gram, then a word expressing this portion is at the first place following by a cardinal numeral:

- 0.1 — decigramma unum — 0.1 (nought point one gram)  
 0.2 — decigrammāta duo — 0.2 (nought point two grams)  
 0.01 — centigramma unum — 0.01 (nought point nought one gram)  
 0.005 — milligrammāta quinque — 0.005 (nought point two oes five grams)

**Attention!** When translating into Latin figures designating tenth, hundredth or thousandth portions of gram, the Latin nouns decigramma, centigramma or milligramma in grammar agreement with corresponding numerals are used:

- 0.3 grams — decigrammāta tria  
 0.02 grams — centigrammāta duo  
 0.001 gram — milligramma unum  
 0.005 grams — milligrammāta quinque.

The fluid matter amount is usually designed in milliliters (millilītrum, i n). This word is to be agreed with a numeral if necessary and is placed at the first place followed by a cardinal numeral:

- millilītrum unum (1 ml) — one milliliter  
 millilītra tria (3 ml) — 3 milliliters  
 millilītra quinquaginta (50 ml) — 50 milliliters

The amount of a liquid to 1 milliliter is dosed out in drops (gutta, ae f). One such drop is equal to 0.25 milliliters. The number of drops is designed in medical prescriptions by a Roman figure and is written after noun form guttam in the Acc. sing., if only one drop is designed, and after noun form guttas in Acc. plur., if number of drops is more than one. Lines above and below a figure are not placed:

- Take: Eucalyptus oil III drops  
 Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas III (guttas tres)

**Attention!** When indicating the drug content of equal weight of several drug volumes we use in the Latin the adverb *ana* «of each», but in the English equivalent we have another proposition construction:

Quinque tabulettae Amydopyrini ana 2,0 — five amydopyrin tablets on 2.0 grams everyone

But when indicating several prescription components in the equal amount we use the formula «of each», compare:

- Recipe: Amidopyrīni Take: Amidopyrin  
 Sulfadimezīni ana 2,0 Sulfadimezin of each 2.0

### § 103. Latin numerals as prefixes in pharmaceutical terms

Prefix	Meaning	Examples and English equivalents
<b>un-, uni-</b>	one	Unazīdum, i, n — <b>unazid</b> Unithiōlum, i n — <b>unithiol</b> unicōlor, ōris — onecolour
<b>bi-, duo-</b>	two	Bicarmintum, i, n — <b>bicarmint</b> Duogestrālum, i n — <b>duogestral</b>

<b>tri -</b>	three	Trimecaīnum, i n — <b>trimecain</b>
<b>quadri-, quadro-</b>	four	quadripetālus, a, um — <b>quadripetal</b> , having four petals Quadropīlum, i n — <b>quadropril</b>
<b>quin-quinque-</b>	five	Quinacrīnum, i n — <b>quinacrin</b> quinquelobātus, a, um — <b>five-lobar</b>
<b>septi-</b>	seven	Septidrōnum, i n — <b>septidron</b>
<b>octo-</b>	eight	Octoestrōlum, i n — <b>octoestrol</b>
<b>deci-</b>	ten	Decilātum, i n — <b>decilat</b>
<b>undeci-, unde-</b>	eleven	Undecīnum, i n — <b>undecin</b> Undevītum, i n — <b>undevit</b>
<b>centi-</b>	hundred	centigramma, ātis n — <b>centigram</b>
<b>mille-, milli-</b>	thousand	milligramma, ātis n — <b>milligram</b> Millefolium, i n — <b>milfoil</b>
<b>semi-</b>	half, semi-	semilente — half slowly semiannuālis, e — semi-annual

#### § 104. Greek numerals as prefixes in pharmaceutical terms

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
<b>mono-</b>	one-, mono-,	Monomycīnum, i n — <b>monomycin</b> monobromātus, a, um — <b>monobromate</b>
<b>di-</b>	two-, di-,	Dimedrōlum, i n — <b>dimedrol</b>
<b>tri-</b>	three-, tri-,	Trimecaīnum, i n — <b>trimecain</b>
<b>tetra-</b>	four-, tetra-,	tetrabōras, ātis m — <b>tetraborate</b>
<b>penta-, pento-</b>	five-, penta-, pento-,	Pentagastrīnum, i n — <b>pentagastrin</b> Pentovītum, i n — <b>pentovit</b>
<b>hexa-, hexo-</b>	hexa-, hexo-,	Hexamidīnum, i n — <b>hexamidin</b> Hexobarbitālum, i n — <b>hexobarbital</b>
<b>hepta-</b>	six-, septa-, seven-	Heptavītum, i n — <b>heptavit</b>
<b>octa-, octi- octo-,</b>	eight-, octa-, octi-,	Octadīnum, i n — <b>octadin</b> Octidipīnum, i n — <b>octidipin</b> Octocaīnum, i n — <b>octocain</b>
<b>deca-</b>	ten-, deca-,	Decamevītum, i n — <b>decamevit</b>
<b>hendēca</b>	eleven-, hendeca-,	Hendecavītum, i n — <b>hendecavit</b>
<b>dodēca-</b>	twelve-, dodeca-,	Dodecavītum, i n — <b>dodecavit</b>
<b>hemi-</b>	half, hemi-	hemispherium, i n — <b>hemisphere</b>

#### § 105. Word building elements (part 12)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building element
<b>chon-, chondr-</b> from the Greek <i>chóndros</i> cartilage	means promoting cartilage tissue regeneration	Chondrolōnum, i n Chonsurīdum, i n	<b>chondrolon</b> <b>chonsurid</b>
<b>muc(o)-</b> from the Latin <i>mucus</i> , <i>i m</i> mucus	expectorant means	Mucosānum, i n	<b>mucosan</b>
<b>neur(o)-</b> from the Greek <i>neúron</i> nerve	means making effect on the CNS	Neurolaxum, i n Neurotīnum, i n	<b>neurolax</b> <b>neurotin</b>

<b>norm(i)-, norm(o)-</b> from the Latin <i>norma, ae f</i> norm	Means restoring different functions	Normitēnum, i n Normodipīnum, i n Normopressum, i n	<b>normiten</b> <b>normodipin</b> <b>normopress</b>
<b>onco-</b> from the Greek <i>óncos</i> tumor	Antiplastic means	Oncocristīnum, i n Oncovīnum, i n	<b>oncocristin</b> <b>oncovin</b>

## § 106. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

two ointments; three powders; one tablet; mixture of two solutions; liquid drug in three glasses; hundred doses of drugs; two hundred and fifty granules; three hundred and forty seven milliliters of solution; 40 grams of solution of furacilin 0.02%; thousands of new drugs, nought point three grams of ointment

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. In nonnullis morbis septīma dies est dies críticus. 2. In ore hominis adulti triginta duo dentes sunt. 3. Sume remedium ter per diem, semel vel bis per noctem. 4. Numeralia Latīna atque Graeca in nominibus vitaminōrum saepe adhibentur. 5. Solutio septuaginta quinque pro centum praeparāti Mucosāni seu alīter Ambroxōli pro inhalatiōnibus infantibus et adultis praescribitur. 6. Tabuleta Neurotīni (alīter Pyriditōli) contīnet decigramma unum medicamenti et per os bis in die assumitur.

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin, including all the figure designations:

1) The patient buys at the chemist's elixir of bromhexin 0.08% in bottles on 60, 100 and 120 ml everyone. 2) 30 ml of licorice syrup are taken by one table-spoon three times a day. 3) Pharmacist prepares 180 ml of infusion from six grams of pheasant's eye herb. 4) Mix 10 ml of riboflavin solution 0.2% and 5 drops of citral solution 0.01%. 5) Divide pill mass into three equal parts and prepare 15 pills.

## Dictionaries to the lesson 15

### Latin-English vocabulary

Ambroxōlum, i n — ambroxol	Neurotīnum, i n — neurotin
bis — twice	nonnullus, a, um — some
centum — hundred	nox, noctis f — night
críticus, a, um — critical	numerale, is n — numeral
decigramma, ātis n — decigram	os, oris n — mouth
duo, duae, duo — two	Pyriditōlum, i n — pyriditol
Graecus, a, um — Greek	quinque — five
inhalatio, ōnis f — inhalation	semel — once

Latīnus, a, um — Latin	ter — three times, thrice
Mucosānum, i n — mucosan	triginta — thirty
	unus, a, um — one

### English–Latin glossary

bromhexin — Bromhexīnum, i n	of each — ana (+Acc.)
to buy — emo, empsi, emptum, ěre 3	pill — pilŭla, ae f
citral — Citrālum, i n	riboflavin — Riboflavīnum, i n
drop — gutta, ae f	sixty — sexaginta
eight — octo	table-spoon — cochlear escāle
eighty — octoginta	(cochlear, āris n — spoon
elixir–elixir, īris n	escālis, e — used for having dinner)
fifteen — quindĕcim	ten — decem
five — quinque	three times — ter
gram — gramma, ātis n	twenty — viginti

# LESSON 16

## PRONOUNS. ADVERBS. CONJUNCTIONS

### § 107. Pronouns in pharmaceutical terminology

In pharmaceutical texts some forms of the personal, demonstrative, relative and reflexive pronouns are used. Let you be acquainted first with the personal pronouns forms:

Cases	Case forms and their translation into English			
Nom.	ego — I	nos — we	tu — you	vos — you
Gen.	mei — of me	nostri — of us nostrum — from us	tui — of you	vestri — of you vestrum — from you
Dat.	mihi — to me	nobis — to us	tibi — to you	vobis — to you
Acc.	me — me	nos — us	te — you	vos — you
Abl.	me — by me	nobis — by us	te — by you	vobis — by you

As one can see at the table, there are two special forms of the Genitive plural, they are used in the spoken or narrative texts.

It was already mentioned above (§ 44) that in the Latin personal pronouns connected grammatically with their verbs are usually omitted. The second special feature of the Latin is absence of the personal pronouns of the 3rd person, instead of them demonstrative pronouns are used (see below).

The expression **pro me** (personally for me) is used in the prescription formulas.

Only one form of the reflexive pronoun is used — that of the Accusative singular form **se** in the expression **per se** — in natural state, non purified (literally «through itself»).

In the Latin language several forms of demonstrative pronouns are used. We have to consider only two forms: **hic, haec, hoc** and **is, ea, id**. The first form corresponds to the English «**this**» and the second one — to the «**that**». The same pronouns can carry out the function of personal pronouns of the 3-rd person. In Latin, there are three gender forms of these two demonstrative pronouns: **is/hic** are of masculine gender, **ea/haec** are of feminine gender, **id/hoc** are of neutral one. Gender forms have also the relative pronoun **qui, quae, quod** («which»): **qui** is of masculine gender, **quae** of feminine and **quod** of the neutral one.

#### Declension of gender forms is, ea, id

/ Gender Cases	Singulār	Plurāl
	m f n	m f n
Nom.	is ea id	ei (ii) eae ea
Gen.	ejus	eōrum eārum eōrum
Dat.	ei	eis (iis)
Acc.	eum eam id	eos eas ea
Abl.	eo ea eo	eis (iis)

It is to pay attention that all three gender forms have equal case forms in the Genitive and Dative singular.

#### Declension of gender forms hic, haec, hoc

/ Gender/ Cases	Singulār	Plurāl
	m f n	m f n
Nom.	hic haec hoc	hi hae haec
Gen.	hujus	horum harum horum
Dat.	huic	his
Acc.	hunc hanc hoc	hos has haec
Abl.	hoc hac hoc	his

Like the previous pronoun, the pronoun *hic, haec, hoc* has the equal case forms in the Genitive and Dative singular.

#### Declension of gender forms **qui, quae, quod**

/ Gender Cases	Singulār	Plurāl
	m f n	m f n
Nom.	qui quae quod	qui quae quae
Gen.	cujus	quorum quarum quorum
Dat.	cui	quibus
Acc.	quem quam quod	quos quas quae
Abl.	quo qua quo	quibus

And again we see that pronoun **qui, quae, quod** like the previous ones has equal case forms in the Genitive and Dative singular.

### § 108. Adverbs

Adverbs in Latin are formed from adjectives, nouns, verbs or they exist primordially as independent words.

Adverbs being formed from adjectives are the most numerous. They have usually ending **-e**:

Adjective	Derivative adverb
aseptīcus, a, um — aseptic	aseptīce — aseptically
exactus, a, um — exact	exacte — exactly
frigīdus, a, um — cold	frigīde — coldly, without warming

Some derivative adverbs have ending **-o**:

Adjective	Derivative adverb
citus, a, um — quick	cito — quickly
creber, bra, brum — frequent	crebro — frequently
rarus, a, um — rare	raro — seldom

Adverbs can be formed from adjectives of the 3-rd declension by adding to the adjective stem the suffix **-īter**, and from participles of present time by adding to participle stem the suffix **-er**:

Adjective	Derivative adverb
celer, ěris, ěre — quick	celerīter — quickly
simplex, ĩcis — simple	simplicīter — simply
sterīlis, e — sterile	sterilīter — sterily
permānens, ntis — constant, permanent	permanenter — constantly, permanently

Some adverbs are made from noun, adjective and verb stem with the aid of suffix **-tim**:

Initial word	Derivation stem	Derivative adverb
pars, partis f — part	part-	partim — partly
paulus, a, um — little	paul-	paulātim — little by little
separāre — to separate	separa-	separātim — separately

Accusative singular forms of neutral gender can be used as adverbs, too:

Initial adjective form	Acc. sing. form of neutral gender as adjective
difficīlis, e — difficult	difficīle — difficult, hard
facīlis, e — easy	facīle — easely
multus, a, um — many, numerous	multum — many, much

Examples of primordially independent adverbs

diu — long, for a long time	nunc — now
deinde — then	saepe — often
interdum — sometimes	semper — always

One should especially memorize the following adverbs widely used in pharmaceutical terminology:

**statim** — immediately, **cito** — quickly, **citissīme** — most quickly

**quantum satis** — in sufficient amount.

### § 109. Conjunctions

Most used conjunctions in pharmaceutical terminology are the following:

1) **et** — and

2) **aut, seu, vel** — or. The difference in usage of these forms is the following.

Conjunctions **aut** is put between two objects (drug, drug form etc) if there is a problem of choice: *Mentha aut Eucalyptus* — mint or eucalyptus.

Conjunction **seu** is put between two synonym objects:

*Acidum ascorbinicum seu Vitamīnum C* — ascorbic acid or vitamin C.

Conjunction **vel** is put between two drug names which are quite similar in their medical effect: *Tinctūra Valeriānae vel Tinctūra Convallariae* — valerian tincture or lily of the valley tincture.

### § 110. Word building elements (part 13)

Word building elements and their etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building element
cyst(o)- from the Greek <i>kýstis</i> bladder	means making effect on the urinary system or regulating metabolic processes	Cysteīnum, i n Cystenālum, i n	<b>cystein</b> <b>cystenal</b>
leuc(o)-, leuk(o)- from the Greek <i>leukós</i> white	means regulating metabolic processes	Leucogĕnum, i n Leukomycīnum, i n	<b>leucogen</b> <b>leukomycin</b>

	connected with leucocytes		
--	------------------------------	--	--

lys-, lysin- from the Greek <i>ĺ̥sis</i> discharge, liberation, disintegration	means 1) making antiseptic effect 2) regulating metabolic processes	Baĺ̥sum, i n Cerebrolyś̥num, i n Lysoć̥mum, i n	<b>balys</b> cerebro <b>lysin</b> <b>lysocim</b>
lyt-, lytin-, -lyt̥́c- — from the Greek <i>lytikós</i> deliberating, removing	deliberation from any pathogenic or pathological factor	Broncholyt̥́num, i n bacteriolyt̥́cus, a, um spasmolyt̥́cus, a, um	broncholy <b>tin</b> bacterioly <b>tic</b> spasmoly <b>tic</b>
ozo- from the Greek <i>ózo</i> to smell	medicine prepared of ozokerite and used as analgesic and anti-inflammatory means	Ozokeraf̥́num, i n Ozokeraĺ̥num, i n	<b>ozokerafin</b> <b>ozokeralin</b>
plat(o)- from the French <i>platine</i> platinum from the Spain <i>plátina</i> flat silver < Greek <i>platýs</i> flat, wide	medicine prepared from platinum	Cisplat̥́num, i n Carboplat̥́num, i n	cis <b>platin</b> carbop <b>latin</b>
spasm(o)- from the Greek <i>spasmós</i> spasm, cramp	antispasmodic or anticonvulsant means	Contraspasḿ̥num, i n Spasmalgōnum, i n	contrasp <b>asmin</b> <b>spasmalgon</b> antisp <b>asmodic</b>
spast-, spastic- from the Greek <i>spastikós</i> drawing in	antispasmodic or anticonvulsant means	Spast̥́num, i n antispast̥́cus, a, um antispasmatić̥cus, a, um	<b>spastin</b> antisp <b>astic</b>

### § 111. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

these finest powders, this diluted solution, two phials of this decoction, drugs with these components, the form of these tablets, without this color, tinctures of these herbs, medicine for this child, in these ointments

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Cysteinum est aminoacidum, quod juvat permutatiōnem materiārum in organismo. 2. Hic pulvis albus crystallisātus cum odōre specifīco est Leucogēnum, qui ut stimulātor leucopoēsis adhibētur. 3. Ozokerītum medicināle est massa ceriformis, quae Paraffinum, olea mineralia, pices et alias substantias contīnet. 4. Aegrōtus antepōnit emēre medicamenta, nomīna quorum ei nota sunt. 5. Recīpe hanc mixtūrā and adde guttas V olei Anīsi.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Ozokerafin is used as an anti-inflammatory and an analgesic medicine for epidermal applications. 2. Lysocim destroys polysaccharides of microbial envelopment. 3. Broncholytin is administered as an antitussive means and as a bronchodilator. 4. At that pharmacy all necessary

drugs are always proposed. 5. A part of skin is first lubricated with an antiseptic and then an injection is given into this area.

## Dictionaries to the lesson 16

### Latin–English vocabulary

aminoacīdum, i n — amino acid	minerālis, e — mineral
Anīsum, i n — anise	notus, a, um — known
ceriformis, e — cereous	organismus, i m — organism
crystallisātus, a, um — crystalline	Ozokerītum, i n — ozokerite
Cysteinum, i n — cystein	Paraffīnum, i n — paraffin
hic, haec, hoc — this	permutatio, ōnis f — exchange
is, ea, id — that	pix, picis f — resin
juvo, juvi, jutum, āre 1 (+Acc.) – to promote	qui, quae, quod –which
Leucogēnum, i n — leucogen	skin — cutis, is f
leucopoēsis, is f — leucocytopoiesis, formation of leucocytes	specificus, a, um — specific
	stimulātor, ōris m — stimulator

### English–Latin glossary

all — omnis, e	epidermal — epidermālis, e
always — semper	first — prius
analgesic — analgeticus, a, um	to lubricate — lino, livi, litum, ěre 3
anti-inflammatory — antiphlogistīcus, a, um	lysocim — Lysocīnum, i n
antitussive — antitussīvus, a, um	microbial — microbīcus, a, um
application — applicatio, ōnis f	pharmacy — officīna, ae f
bronchodilatator — bronchodilatātor, ōris m	polysaccharide — polysaccharīdum, i n
broncholytin — Broncholytīnum, i n	to propose — propōno, proposui, proposītum, ěre 3
component — componentum, i n	that — is, ea, id
to destroy — destruo, destruxi, destructum, ěre 3	then — deinde
envelopment — involucrum, i n	this — hic, haec, hoc

# LESSON 17

## LATIN CHEMICAL TERMINOLOGY. NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS AND OXIDES.

### § 112. Names of chemical elements

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neutral gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminium; Ferrum, i n — iron; Zincum, i n — zinc.

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception to this rule:

Phosphorus, i m — phosphorus

Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur).

Some elements have double names:

fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n.

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenicum	arsenic
Au	Aurum	gold
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismuthum	bismuth
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine
Hg	Hydrargyrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen

I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphōrus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulphur (sulfur)
Zn	Zincum	zinc

### § 113. Latin names of acids

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun «acĭdum» (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both noun and adjective are written with a small letter, but in the combination with adjectives the noun *acĭdum* is written with a capital letter: acĭdum, i n — acid borĭcus, a, um — boric, but: Acĭdum borĭcum

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants concern the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when the acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic** as a final element:

Latin noun of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n (sulphur)	sulfur-	sulfurĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum sulfurĭcum (H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> )	sulphuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used, when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun and its meaning	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lactĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum lactĭcum (C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>4</sub> O <sub>3</sub> )	lactic acid

In the second variant, when an acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun and its meaning	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ůris n (sulphur)	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acĭdum sulfurōsum (H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub> )	sulphurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ůris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfurĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum hydrosulfurĭcum (H <sub>2</sub> S)	hydrosulphuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun *Nitrogenium* only a part of the stem is used — **nitr-**:

Acĭdum **nitricum** — **nitric acid** Acĭdum **nitrosum** — **nitrous acid**

#### § 114. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, and then the Nominative form *oxĭdum* (*hydroxĭdum*, *peroxĭdum*) follows:

Zinci oxĭdum — zinc oxide

Aluminii hydroxĭdum — aluminum hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxĭdum — hydrogen peroxide.

The names *oxĭdum*, *hydroxĭdum*, *peroxĭdum* are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxĭdum, i n; hydroxĭdum, i n; peroxĭdum, i n.

§ 115. Word building elements reflecting chemical information (Part 14)

Word building elements and their etymology	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents with black tipped word building element
<b>-az-, -(a)zid-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zol-, -(a)zon-</b> from the French <i>azote</i> nitro- gen < Greek prefix <i>a-</i> (absens, denying) and <i>zoon</i> life	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptīnum, i n Phthivazīdum, i n Sulfapyridazīnum, i n Norsulfazōlum, i n Sibazōnum, i n	<b>azaleptin</b> <b>phthivazid</b> <b>sulphapyridazin</b> <b>norsulphazol</b> <b>sibazon</b>
<b>-benz-</b> from the late Latin <i>benzoe</i> < the shorted Arabian (Iu)ban gavi incense of Java	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoīcus, a, um	<b>benzohexon</b> <b>benzoic</b>
<b>-cyan-</b> from the Greek <i>kýanos</i> dark blue	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamīnu m, i n cyanīdum, i n	<b>cyanocobalamine</b> <b>cyanide</b>
<b>-hydr-, -hyd-</b> from the Greek <i>hýdor</i> water	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydum, i n	<b>hydrogen</b> <b>formaldehyde</b>
<b>-naphth-</b> from the Persian through Greek <i>naphtha</i> petroleum	products of petroleum	Naphthalānum, i n Naphthyzīnum, i n	<b>naphthalan</b> <b>naphthyzin</b>
<b>-oxy-</b> from the Greek <i>oxýs</i> sharp	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydīnum, i n Oxyliđīnum, i n	<b>chinoxidin</b> <b>oxyliđin</b>
<b>-phtha(l)-</b> from the Persian through Greek <i>naphtha</i> petroleum	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazōlum, i n Phthazōlum, i n	<b>phthalazol</b> <b>phthazol</b>
<b>-phthor-</b> from the Greek <i>phthóros</i> destruction, ruin	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizīnum, i n	<b>phthorocort</b> <b>phthoracizin</b>
<b>-sulf-</b> from the Latin <i>sulfur, ūris n</i> sulphur	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazōlum, i n sulfas, ātis m	<b>norsulphazol</b> <b>sulphate</b>
<b>-thi(o)-</b> from the Greek <i>theíon</i> sulphur	presence of atom sulphur in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentālum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	<b>thiopental</b> <b>thiosulphate</b>
<b>-yl-</b> from the Greek <i>hýle</i> material, substance	presence of carbohyd- rogenic radicals	Benzylicillīnu m, i n salicylicus, a, um	<b>benzylpenicillin</b> <b>salicylic</b>

<b>-zep- (-zepām-)</b> — from the name <i>Diazepāmum</i> , where <b>-az-</b> signifies presence of nitrogen in the hetero- cyclic compounds	presence of derivatives of diazepam in the tranquilizer names	Chlozepīdum, i n Nozepāmum, i n	chlozepid nozepam
---	---	------------------------------------	----------------------

## § 116. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

1) pure and radioactive phosphorus 2) yellow purified sulphur 3) simple and compound lead  
plasters 5) anhydrous arsenous acid 6) suspension of aluminium hydroxide 7) white sedimentary  
mercury 8) concentrated hydrochloric acid 9) powder of citric acid 10) concentrated solution of  
hydrogen peroxide or perhydrol 11) crystal carbolic acid

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Paracetamōlum, Coffelinum et remedia antihistaminīca augent pericūlum effectuum  
adjunctōrum Acīdi acetylsalicylicī. 2. Acīdum hydrochloricū dilūtum partem unam Acīdi  
hydrochloricī puri et partes duas Aquae destillātae inclūdit. 3. Inhalatiōnes Oxygenii late adhibentur  
ad varios morbos, qui hypoxiā comitantur. 4. Alumini hydroxŷdum est componentum cardinale  
Almagēli, quod est unum e primis praeparātis antacīdis.

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Maalox is a combined medicine which contains approximately equal parts of aluminium  
hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide. 2. Spirituous solution of iodine or tincture of iodine is  
administered for external use as an antiseptic, irritant and distractive agent. 3. Phytin is a compound  
organic substance in form of a white powder from which are produced tablets. 5. Phosphathiamin  
does not differ from other synthetic vitamin B1 preparations by its basic proprieties.

## Dictionaries to the lesson 17

### Latin–English vocabulary

acetylsalicylicus, a, um — acetylsalicylic	hydrochloricus, a, um — hydrochloric
acidum, i n — acid	hydroxŷdum, i n — hydroxide
adjunctus, a, um (effectus) — side (effect)	hypoxia, ae f — hypoxia, an insufficient supply of O <sub>2</sub> to the tissues
Almagēlum, i n — almagel	late — wide, widely
Aluminium, i n — aluminium	Oxygenium, i n — oxygen
antacīdus, a, um — antacid	Paracetamōlum, i n — paracetamol
augeo, auxi, auctum, ēre 2 — to raise	pericūlum, i n — danger, risk
cardinalis, e — basic	praeparātum, i n — preparation
Coffeinum, i n — caffeine	primus, a, um — first
comīto, āvi, ātum, āre 1 — to accompany	purus, a, um — pure
	unus, a, um — one

### English–Latin glossary

agent — agens, ntis m	magnium — Magnium, i n; Magnesium, i n
anhydrous — anhydricus, a, um	

approximately — circīter	mercury — Hydrargyrum, i n
arsenous — arsenicōsus, a, um	organic — organīcus, a, um
basic — cardinālis, e; principālis, e	perhydrol — Perhydrōlum, i n
combined — combinātus, a, um	peroxide — peroxydum, i n
compound — compositus, a, um	plaster — emplastrum, i n
concentrated — concentrātus, a, um	phosphorus — Phosphōrus, i m
crystal — crystallisātus, a, um	phosphothiamine — Phosphothiamīnum, i n
to differ — distingo, distinxī, distinctum, ěre 3 (in Passive voice + Ablat.)	phytin — Phytīnum, i n
distractive — distractīvus, a, um	radioactive — radioactīvus, a, um
iodine — Iōdum, i n	sedimentary — praecipitātus, a, um
irritant — irritans, ntis	spirituous — spirituōsus, a, um
its — ejus (is, ea, id)	substance — substantia, ae f
lead — Plumbum, i n	sulphur — Sulfur, ūris n
maalox — Maaloxum, i n	synthetic — synthetīcus, a, um

## LESSON 18

# LATIN CHEMICAL TERMINOLOGY. SALT NAMES (PART 1)

### § 117. Names of anions including oxygen and those without oxygen

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), at the second place is an anion in the Nominative case. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we considerate anions derivative of acids which contain oxygen of different degrees, so two variants of these anions are distinguished.

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen which are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative singular case and ending **-ātis** in the Genitive singular case: Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion name and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulphate	sodium sulphate
NaNO <sub>3</sub>	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easy find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: English ending **-ate** corresponds to Latin ending **-as**.

In this way we may at once determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate**. too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propionas

2. Names of anions containing a lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative singular case and **-ītis** in the Genitive singular case:  
 $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3$  – Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion name and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
$\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3$	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulphite	sodium sulphite
$\text{NaNO}_2$	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it permits, as below, to determine any necessary equivalent taking, however, into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

### § 118. Latin names of salts, whose anions don't contain oxygen

Names of anions which don't contain oxygen are Neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-id-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion name and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
$\text{Na}_2\text{S}$	Natrii sulfīdum	sulfīdum, i n	sulphide	sodium sulphide
$\text{NaCl}$	Natrii chlorīdum	chlorīdum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So complex ending **-īdum** of Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions of the similar chemical compound.

And to sum up: if you remember the endings of three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you needn't know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

### § 119. Word building elements (Part 15)

Word building elements and their etymology	Meaning	Latin examples and exceptions	English equivalents with black tipped word building element
<b>-aeth-</b> from the Greek <i>aithēr</i> air, sky	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n <b>But: etacrynīcus, a, um</b>	ethylic ethynal etacrynic
<b>-meth-</b> from the	presence of methyl	Methylēnum, i n	methylen

Greek <i>méthy</i> wine	group	Methylum, i n	<b>methyl</b>
<b>-morph-</b> from the Greek <i>morphé</i> form, shape	Analgesic means derivative of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	<b>apomorphin</b> <b>morpholong</b>
<b>-phen-</b> from the Greek <i>pháinomai</i> to shine	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phenacetīnum, i n	<b>phenol</b> <b>phenacetin</b>

## § 120. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

hydrocortisone acetate; calcium chloride; mercury cyanide; testosterone propionate; ephedrine hydrochloride; potassium arsenite; ethacridine lactate; oleandomycin phosphate; copper citrate; etacrynic acid, oxytetracyclin dihydrate

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Ad deminutiōnem effectuum adjunctōrum Kanamycīni sulfātis praescriptio Calcii pantothenātis commendatur. 2. Magnii carbōnas adhibētur ad usum externum ut aspersio et ad usum internum pro deminutione aciditātis succi gastrīci. 3. Suspensio Phenoxymethylpenicillīni parātur in mixtiōne cum Acīdo citrīco, Natrii benzoāte, essentiā Rubi idaei et Sacchāro. 4. Apomorphīni hydrochlorīdum adhibētur ut remedium vomīcum pro evocatiōne celerrima e gastre materiārum toxicārum.

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Hydrocortisone acetate is introduced by a dropper in case of acute allergic reactions. 2. Etacrynic acid is administered in edema for the patients with the insufficiency of the blood circulation. 3. Gentamycin sulphate is the most effective medicine for grave purulent infections. 4. The preparation «Magnium plus» is produced in the form of effervescent tablets which contain magnium carbonate 0.1g, magnium lactate 0.2 g and some vitamins.

## Dictionaries to the lesson 18

### Latin-English vocabulary

aciditas, ātis f — acidity	evocatio, ōnis f (any food from the stomach) — removal
Apomorphīnum, i n — apomorphin	gastrīcus, a, um — gastric
aspersio, ōnis f — aspersion	hydrochlorīdum, i n — hydrochloride
benzoas, ātis m — benzoate	Kanamycīnum, i n — kanamycin
carbōnas, ātis m — carbonate	pantothēnas, ātis m — pantothenate
citrīcus, a, um — citric	Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n — phenoxymethylpenicillin
commendo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 – to recommend	sulfas, ātis m — sulfate
deminutio, ōnis f — diminution	toxīcus, a, um — toxic
essentia, ae f — essence	vomīcus, a, um — vomitive

### English-Latin glossary

acetate — acētas, ātis m	circulation — circulatio, ōnis f
--------------------------	----------------------------------

acute — acūtus, a, um	etacrynic — etacrynĭcus, a, um
arsenite — arsēnis, ĩtis m	ethacridine — Aethacridĭnum, i n
by — ope (+ Genitive)	gentamycin — Gentamycĭnum, i n
carbonate — carbōnas, ātis m	hydrocortisone — Hydrocortisōnum, i n
case — casus, us m	infection — infectio, ōnis f
chloride — chlorĭdum, i n	insufficiency — insufficientia, ae f
copper — Cuprum, i n	lactate — lactas, ātis m
cyanide — cyanĭdum, i n	oleandomycin — Oleandomycĭnum, i n
dihydrate — dihyd̄ras, ātis m	oxytetracyclin — Oxytetracyclĭnum, i n
dropper — guttātor, ōris m	phosphate — phosphas, ātis m
edema — oedēma, ātis n	propionate — propiōnas, ātis m
effervescent — effervescens, ntis	purulent — purulentus, a, um
effective — effĭcax, ācis	sulphate — sulfas, ātis m
ephedrine — Ephedrĭnum, i n	testosterone — Testosterōnum, i n

# LESSON 19

## LATIN SALT NAMES (PART 2)

### § 121. Latin anion names in basic and acid salts

Latin anion names in basic salts are formed with the aid of prefix **sub-**:

basic bismuth nitrate — Bismūthi subnītras

basic aluminium acetate — Alumīnii subacētas

Latin anion names in acid salts are formed with the aid of prefix **hydro-**:

sodium acid carbonate — Natrii hydrocarbōnas

ethylmorphin acid chloride — Aethylmorphīni hydrochlorīdum

**Attention!** In the Latin equivalent of the name *caffeine sodium benzoate* two first words make a two-component cation in which the first component *Coffeīnum* is combined by a hyphen with its second cation part *natrii* and the anion *benzoas* follows this cation like all salt names:

caffeine sodium benzoate — *Coffeīnum-natrii benzoas* (Gen. sing. — Coffeīni-natrii benzoātis).

### § 122. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium neutral gender noun salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral gender noun of the second declension. The second component following after the hyphen is written with the small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follows. English equivalents of these terms are written without hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i (Sulfacyli-natrii) n — sulphacyl sodium

Benzylpenicillinum-kalium, i (Benzylpenicillīni-kalii) n — benzylpenicillin potassium

### § 123. Latin names of compound ethers

Names of compound ethers are composed like salt names: the first part with capital letter is in the Genitive singular, the second one with small letter is in the Nominative:

amyl nitrite — Amylii nitris

benzyl benzoate — Benzylīi benzoas

ethyl chloride — Aethylīi chlorīdum

methyl salicylate — Methylīi salicȳlas

phenyl salicylate — Phenylīi salicȳlas

First part of these names is a neutral gender noun of the second declension with suffix **-yl-** and with ending **-ium**:

Acetylium, i n — acethyl

Aethylium, i n — ethyl

Amylium, i n — amyl

Formylium, i n — formyl

Methylium, i n —metyl

Phenylium, i n — phenyl

After the form of these compound ethers the name *Chlorāli hydras* — chloral hydrate is made up.

### § 124. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

amyl nitrite in ampoules; compound liniment of methyl salicylate; thiopental sodium with sodium salicylate; basic bismuth nitrate with belladonna; ophthalmic films with lidocaine hydrochloride; methyldopa solution with sodium bisulphate and a conserving agent; tablets of ethylmorphin hydrochloride for adults; granules of ethazol sodium for children; solution of basic aluminium acetate or Burow's liquid; powder of chloral hydrate for a solution

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Methylī salicylas adhibētur in mixtiōne cum Chloroformio et oleis Terebinthinae et Hyoscyāmi pro inunctiōne ad morbos articulatōnum. 2. Benzylpenicillīnum-natrium cito in sanguīnem absorbētur post intraductiōnem intramusculārem. 3. In comparatiōne cum praeparātis antibacteriālibus contemporaneis Phenylii salicylas est non tam effīcax, sed id est oligotoxicum et complicatiōnes non provōcat. 4. Coffeīnum-natrii benzoas proprietatibus pharmacologicis analogicum est Coffeīno, melius autem in aqua solvitur et citius ex organismo deducitur.

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Grubs and adult individuals of scabies mite perish under the effect of medical benzyl benzoate. 2. When taking bismuth salicylate the tongue of the patient takes a dark coloration. 3. Oxacilline sodium keeps its activity in an acidic environment. 4. Sulphacyl sodium or sulphacyl soluble is used in ampoules for injections and in form of ophthalmic drops.

### Dictionaries to lesson 19

#### Latin–English vocabulary

absorbeo, absorpsi, absorptum, ēre 2 — to absorb	dedūco, deduxi, deductum, ěre 3 — to take out
analogicus, a, um — analogous	Hyoscyāmus, i m — henbane
articulatio, ōnis f — joint	inunctio, ōnis f — a medicine to be rubbed in

benzoas, ātis m — benzoate	melius — better
Benzylpenicillīnum-natrium i n — benzylpenicillin sodium	Methylum, i n — methyl
	oligotoxīcus, um — of low toxicity
Chloroformium, i n — chloroform	pharmacologicus, a, um — pharmacological
Coffeīni-natrium, Coffeīni-natrii n — caffeine sodium	Phenylum, i n — phenyl
comparatio, ōnis f — comparison	provōco, āvi, ātum, āre l — to cause
complicatio, ōnis f — complication	salicylas, ātis m — salicylate
contemporaneus, a, um — modern	Terebinthīna, ae f — turpentine

### English-Latin glossary

acidic — acīdus, a, um	grub — larva, ae f
activitiy — activītas, ātis f	hydrate — hydras, ātis m
amyl — Amylium, i n	an individual — individuum, i n
benzoate — benzoas, ātis m	lidocaine — Lidocānum, i n
benzyl — Benzylum, i n	methyldopa — Methyldōpha, ae f
bismuth — Bismūthum, i n	mite — acārus, i m
bisulphate — bisulfas, ātis m	nitrite — nitris, ītis m
Burow's liquid — liquor (ōris m) Burōwi	oxacilline — Oxacillīnum, i n
chloral — Chlorālum, i n	to perish — pereō, perii, perītum, īre
coloration — coloratio, ōnis f	scabies — scabies, ēi f
conserving — conservans, ntis	soluble — solubīlis, e
environment — circumjacentia, ium n (plur.)	sulphacyl — Sulfacylum, i n
ethazol sodium — Aethazōlum-natrium, i n	thiopental sodium — Thiopentālum-natrium, i n
ethylmorphin — Aethylmorphīnum, i n	
	tongue — lingua, ae f

# LESSON 20

## NAMES OF VITAMINS. NAMES OF HORMONE AND FERMENT PREPARATIONS. DESIGNATION OF DURATION AND INTENSITY OF DRUG ACTION

### § 125. Names of vitamins

Term «vitamin» literally means «vital amine» (from the Latin *vita, ae f* life + *amīnum, i n* amine, a derivative of the name *ammonia*). The Latin names of vitamins consist of the word *Vitamīnum* (vitamīnum, i n) and a capital letter of the Latin alphabet (A, B, C, D, E, K, P, U) which calls a group name of a vitamin:

Vitamīnum A — vitamin A; Vitamīnum C — vitamin C.

Names of some vitamins contain double capital letters:

Vitamīnum PP — vitamin PP.

Names of vitamins of a related chemically group contain a figure placed after the letter symbol:

Vitamīnum B1– vitamin B1 Vitamīnum B2 — vitamin B2.

Each vitamin has also its one- word general name and one or two-word name reflecting as usual the vitamin chemic structure. The table below contains the most used names of vitamins:

<b>Latin group and general names of vitamin</b>	<b>English group and general names of vitamin</b>	<b>Latin names reflecting more detailed or synonym vitamin name</b>	<b>English names reflecting more detailed vitamin name</b>
Vitamīnum A = Retinolum	vitamin A = retinol	Retinoli acetas Retinoli palmītas	retinol acetate retinol palmate
Vitamīnum B1 =Thiaminum	vitamin B1 = thiamin	Thiamini bromidum Thiamini chloridum Thiamini nitras Phosphothiaminum Benfothiaminum	thiamin bromide thiamin chloride thiamin nitrate phosphothiamine benfothiamine
Vitamīnum B2 = Riboflavinum	vitamin B2 = riboflavin	Riboflavinum- mononucleatidum Flavinatum	riboflavin- mononucleotide flavinate
Vitamīnum B3 (=B5) = Pantothenates	vitamin B3 (=B5) = pantothenates	Calcii pantothenas	calcium pantothenate

Vitamīnum B4 = Cholinum	vitamin B4 = cholin	Cholini chloridum	choline chloride
Vitamīnum B6 = Pyridoxinum	vitamin B6 = pyridoxin	Pyridoxini hydrochloridum Pyridoxalphosphatum	pyridoxin acid chloride pyridoxalphosphate
Vitamīnum B12 = Cyanocobalaminum	vitamin B 12 Cyanocobalamin	Oxycobalaminum Cobamamidum Vitohepatum	oxycobalamin cobamamid vitohepat
Vitamīnum B15	vitamin B15	Calcii pangamas	calcium pangamate
Vitamīnum Bc	vitamin Bc	Acidum folicum Calcium folinatum	folic acid calcium folinate
Vitamīnum BT = Carnitinum	vitamin BT = carnitine	Carnitini chloridum	carnitine chloride
Vitamīnum C	vitamin C	Acidum ascorbinicum Galascorbīnum	ascorbic acid galascorbīn
Vitamīnum D2	vitamin D2	Ergocalciferolum	ergocalciferol

Vitamīnum D3	vitamin D3	Cholecalciferolum Vigantolum	cholecalciferol vigantol
Vitamīnum E	vitamin E	Alpha-Tocopheroli acētas	alpha-Tocopherol acetate
Vitamīnum K1	vitamin K1	Phytomenadiōnum	phytomenadion
Vitamīnum K3	vitamin K3	Vikasolum	vikasol
Vitamīnum P = flavonoīda	Vitamīnum P =flavonoids	Rutīnum Quercetīnum	rutin quercetin
Vitamīnum PP	vitamin PP	Acīdum nicotinīcum Nicotinamīdum	nicotinic acid nicotinamide
Vitamīnum U	vitamin U	Methylmethionin-sulfonii chlorīdum	methylmethionin- sulphone chloride

As vitamin preparations fruit oils of some plants are used and mixtures of fruits with berries as well, for example:

Oleum Rosae — dog rose oil

Species vitaminosae №1 — vitamin species №1

Latin names of synthetic polyvitaminous preparations include usually the word building element **-vit-**, Greek or Latin numerals and other words:

Heptavitum, i n — heptavit

Tetravitum, i n — tetravit

Undevitum, i n — undevit

Oligovitum, i n — oligovit

Complivitum, i n — complivit

Some names don't include the word building element **-vit-**:

Accolum, i n — accol

Vetorum, i n — vetoron

## § 126. Names of hormone preparations

Name hormone (hormōnum, i n) originates from the Greek verb *hormáo* (to set in motion).

Hormone names are usually formed either from name of an organ elaborating hormone or from name of organ to which the effect of hormone is directed:

Hydrocortisōnum, i n (hydrocortisone) — from *cortex glandūlae adrenālis* –cortex of adrenal gland

Thyreoidīnum, i n (thyreoidin) –from *glandūla thyreoidea* — thyroid gland.

In formation of the female hormone names the word building elements –**oestr-** (**-estr**) and –**gest-** are used.

In formation of the male hormone names the word building elements –**andr-**, –**ster-**, –**test-**, –**bol-**, –**prost-** are used.

The information in details on these word building elements is presented in tables below.

### § 127. Names of ferment preparations

The term *fermentum*, i n ferment (literally *an element of fermentation*) originates from the Latin verb *fermentāre* to ferment which in its turn originates from the Latin verb *fervēre* to boil. Another name of ferment is *enzyme* (enzymum, i n) originating from the Greek word *zýme* (a fermenting substance). From here the word building elements –**(en)zym-** or –**zy-** are borrowed:

Solizýmum, i n — solizyme, Enzystālum, i n — enzystal.

The most numerous Latin ferment name preparations include suffix –**as-** and ending –**um**:

Collagenāsum, i n — collagenase

Cocarboxylāsum, i n — coxarboxylase

Ribonucleāsum, i n — ribonuclease.

#### **Attention!**

In the following names instead of suffix –**as-** the –**az-** is used:

Lydāzum, i n — lydaze

Nigedāzum, i n — nigedaze

Ronidāzum, i n — ronidaze.

In ferment preparation names the stems of main ferment name agent of digestive tract are used, too:

**peps-** from pepsin (Pepsīnum, i n)

**trips-** from tripsin (Tripsīnum, i n)

**pancreat-** from pancreatin (Pancreatīnum, i n).

## § 128. Designation of the drug effect duration and intensity

In some contemporary drug names especially in the preparations of insulin, in cardiovascular and gastrointestinal drug names special designations are used which express information on drug duration or drug intensity effect.

Duration or slow-down of drug effect is expressed by the Latin adverb **lente** slow (from the adjective *lentus, a, um* slow, slowed down), or by the Latin Participle of the past completed tense **prolongātum** prolonged (from *prolongātus, a, um* prolonged):

Insulīnum lente MC — insulin lente MC

Kalipōzum prolongātum — kalipoz prolongatum.

It is to pay attention that words **lente** and **prolongātum** are not translated into English and are considered as international pharmaceutical designations. As such designations which don't need to be translated into Latin the following English words are also used:

1) **depot** (from the Latin *deposītus, a, um* saved up): Andocor depot

2) **long** (from the Latin *longus, a, um* long): Adamon long

3) **retard** (from the Latin *retardātus, a, um* slowed down): Maycor retard

The middle duration of a drug effect is designed by the Latin adverb **semilente** semi slow: Insulinum semilente — insulin semi slow.

The largest duration of a drug effect is designed by the Latin prefixes **supra-** or **ultra-** with the meaning «extreme» and the adverb **lente**: Insulīnum supralente, Insulīnum ultralente.

In the English analogues prefixes **supra-**, **ultra** jointed with the **long** and **tard** are used: **ultralong** or ultratard (from the Latin *longus, a, um* long, and *tardus, a, um* slow, slowed down): Insulīn Ultralong SMC, Insulin Ultratard HM.

The Latin adjectives **forte** strong and **mite** soft design stronger or softer pharmaceutical effect because of the greater or lesser drug agent concentration:

Sustac-forte (a tablet contains 6, 4 mg of nitroglycerin)

Sustac-mite (a tablet contains 2, 6 mg of nitroglycerin).

Prefixes **mini-** (from the Latin *minīmus, a, um* the least) and **maxi** (from the Latin *maxīmus, a, um* the greatest) are used for designation of the most rapid or the most long drug effect:

Insulin minilente, Insulin maxirapid.

Designation **rapid** (from the Latin *rapīdus, a, um* quick, rapid) is used as an equivalent of the Latin **forte**: Insulīn rapid, Insulīn Maxirapid.

And once again: all the mentioned above Latin adjectives or adverbs (*lente*, *semilente*, *forte*, *mite*, *prolongātum*) are not translated into English. English designations (*long*, *tard*, *ultralong*, *ultratard*,

rapid) are not translated into Latin as well. All these designations are considered as international word building elements of drug names.

### § 129. Word building elements (Part 16)

Word building elements and their etymology	Chemic or pharmaceutical information	Latin examples	English equivalents with black tipped word building element
<b>-andr-</b> from the Greek <i>anér, andrós</i> man, male	male hormone preparations (androgens)	Methandrostenolōnum, i n	methandrostenolon
<b>-as-</b> a conventional letter symbol for ferment preparation names	ferment preparations	Ribonucleāsum, i n	ribonuclease
<b>-bol-</b> from the Greek <i>anabolé</i> throw upward	anabolics — synthetic hormone preparations influencing intensive protein building	Phenobolīnum, i n	phenobolin
<b>-cort-, -cortic-</b> from the Latin <i>cortex, corticis m</i> cortex (of adrenal gland)	preparations of adrenal gland cortex	Cortisōnum, i n	cortison
<b>-gēn-</b> (in the Latin terms -genus, a, um) from the Greek <i>genés</i> 1) giving birth 2) happening because of any reason	pointing out reasons or results of an action	androgēna, ōrum n oestrogēna, ōrum n oncogēnus, a, um psychogēnus, a, um	androgens oestrogens oncogenous, producing tumors, psychogenous, happening because of mental reasons
<b>-gest-</b> from the Latin <i>gestāre</i> to be pregnant	preparations produced from corpora lutea hormone	Progesterōnum, i n	progesteron
<b>-en(zym)-, -zyn-, -zy-</b> from the Greek <i>zýme</i> a fermenting substance	preparations improving digestion processes	Panzynormum, i n Solizýmum, i n Enzystalum, i n Emzýmum, i n	panzynorm solizyme enzystal enzyme
<b>-oestr- (-estr)</b> from the Greek <i>oístros</i> gadfly	female hormone preparations	Synoestrōlum, i n	synoestrol
<b>-pancre-, -pan-</b> from the Latin <i>pancreas, pancreātis n</i> pancreas (from the Greek <i>pas, pantós</i> the hole + <i>kréas</i> flesh)	preparations improving digestion processes	Pancreoflātum, i n Pancurmenum, i n	pancreoflat pancurmen
<b>-peps-, -pept-</b> (from the Greek <i>pépsis</i> digestion or <i>peptikós</i> belonging to the digestion)	preparations improving digestion processes	Pepsidīlum, i n Peptorānum, i n	pepsidil peptoran

<b>-prost-</b> from the Latin <i>prostāta, ae f prostate</i> ( from the Greek <i>prostates</i> one standing before)	synthetic analogues of prostaglandins, biologically active substances which are numbered among hormones	Prostaglandīnum, i n Prostandīnum, i n	<b>prostaglandin</b> <b>prostandin</b>
<b>-ster-</b> from the Latin <i>sterōida</i> steroids (from the Greek <i>stereós</i> solid+ <i>eidés</i> similar to)	steroid hormone preparations	Testosterōnum, i n	<b>testosteron</b>
<b>-test-</b> from the Latin <i>testis</i> testicle	male hormone preparations	Testosterōnum, i n	<b>testosteron</b>
<b>-thyr(e)o-</b> from the Latin <i>glandūla thyr(e)oidea</i> thyroid gland	preparations acting like hormones of thyroid gland	Thyroliberīnum, i n Thyreocombum, i n	<b>Thyroliberin</b> thyreocomb
<b>-tryps-, -psin-</b> from the Greek <i>thrýpsis</i> splitting	preparations splitting products of protein disintegration	Chymopsīnum, i n Trypsīnum, i n	<b>chymopsin</b> <b>trypsin</b>
<b>-vit-</b> from the Latin <i>vita, ae f</i> life	names of vitamin preparations	Hendevītum, i n	<b>hendevit</b>

### § 130. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into Latin:

1) oily solution of retinol palmitate 2) folic acid in tablets 3) injections of calcium pantothenate 3) ophthalmic ointment of hydrocortisone acetate in tubes 4) powder of ascorbic acid in little packets for internal use 5) tocopherol acetate in ampoules for intramuscular introduction 6) 0.5 % spirituous solution of ergocalciferol 7) powder of choline chloride in firmly corked phials 8) nicotinic acid tablets retard 9) preparation thyreocomb or mixture of triiodthyronin, thyroxin and potassium iodide.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Testoenātum, qui habet nomīna analōga Testosterōnum-depot et Testorōnum-retard, est mixtio solutiōnum oleosārum Testosterōni oenanthātis et Testosterōni propionātis. 2. Ergocalciferōlum accēdit in organismum homīnis cum cibo, Cholecalciferōlum sub cute producitur. 3. Cyanocobalamīnum continētur in varia quantitatē in praeparātis medicinalibus acceptis ex hepāte animalium. 4. Oestradiōlum in forma aethērum in textibus organismi practice non destruitur et cito et complēte absorbitur.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Cortex of suprarenal glands elaborates a great amount of steroid hormones which are named corticosteroids. 2. Conjugated estrogens are preparations containing a mixture of estrogens of natural origin. 3. Methyltestosteron is a synthetic analogue of testosterone that has biological and

medical properties of a natural hormone. 4. Lydaze powder for injection is taken from a phial and after that it is dissolved in three milliliters of isotonic sodium chloride solution.

## Dictionaries to the lesson 20

### Latin–English vocabulary

accēdo, accessi, accessum, ěre 3 — to come	Pancreatīnum, i n — pancreatin
acceptus, a, um — received	Pepsīnum, i n — pepsin
aether, ēris m — ether	practīce — practically
Cholecalciferōlum, i n — cholecalciferol	prodūco, produxi, productum, ěre 3 — to produce
complēte — completely	
Cyanocobalamīnum, i n — cyanocobalamin	propionas, ātis m — propionate
destruo, destruxi, destructum, ěre 3 – to destroy	quantitas, ātis f — amount
	Testoenatum, i n — testoenat
Ergocalciferōlum, i n — ergocalciferol	Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone
habeo, habui, habītum, ěre 2 — to have	Testosterōnum-depot, Testosterōni-depot n — testosterone-depot
nomen, ĩnis n — name	
oenanthas, ātis m — oenanthate	Testosterōnum-retard, Testosterōni-retard n — testosterone-retard
Oestradiōlum, i n — oestradiol	
	Trypsīnum, i n — trypsin

### English–Latin glossary

choline — Cholīnum, i n	lydaze — Lydāzum, i n
conjugated — conjugātus, a, um to cork — obtūro, āvi, ātum, āre 1	methyltestosteron — Methyltestosterōnum, i n
corticosteroid — corticosteroīdum, i n	to name — nomīno, āvi, ātum, āre 1
to dissolve — dissolvo, dissolvi, dissolūtum, ěre 3; solvo, solvi, solūtum, ěre 3	origin — orīgo, ĩnis f
	palmitate — palmītas, ātis m
to elaborate — elabōro, āvi, ātum, āre 1	pantothenate — pantothēnas, ātis m
ergocalciferol — Ergocalciferōlum, i n	propriety — proprietas, ātis f
estrogen — oestrogēnum, i n	retinol — Retinōlum, i n
firmly — firmīter	steroid — steroīdum, i n
folic — folīcus, a, um	suprarenal — suprarenālis, e
gland — glandūla, ae f	thyreocomb — Thyreocombum, i n
hormone — hormōnum, i n	thyroxin — Thyroxīnum, i n
hydrocortisone — Hydrocortisōnum, i n	tocopherol — Tocopherōlum, i n
isotonic — isotonīcus, a, um	triiodthyronin — Triiodthyronīnum, i n

# LESSON 21

## LATIN BOTANICAL TERMINOLOGY. GENUS AND SPECIES NAMES IN BOTANIC. BOTANICAL NAMES IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS. LATIN NAMES OF MEDICAL PLANT PARTS

### § 131. Common information on the Latin botanical terminology

The Latin botanical terminology includes names of plants and their parts. Scientific names of plants are unified and are used according to rules of the Latin grammar and spelling. Most names are borrowed from the Latin language, but there are numerous borrowings from the Greek, sometimes from the Arabic or other languages, compare:

Althaea (from the Greek) — *althea*, marsh — mallow; Quercus (from the Latin) — *oak*; Sophōra (from the Arabic) — *Japanese pagoda tree*; Camphōra (from the ancient Hindi) — *camphor*; Cassia (from the Hebrew) — *cassia*; Ipecacuānha (from a local Brazilian name) — *ipecacuanha*; Belladonna (from the Italian) — *belladonna*.

### § 132. Botanical genus and species names of plants

Formation and usage of Latin plant names is regulated by the International Codex of the Botanical Nomenclature, which is periodically revised. Plant names are presented here according to the taxonomy (from the Greek *táxis* arrangement and *nómos* law) created after the work of the Sweden scientist Carl Linné (1707–1778) «Species plantarum» («The species of plants»). According to taxonomy the binominal (from the Latin *binominālis* consisting from two names) or binary (from the Latin *binarius* binary) principle of plants nominating is used. According to this principle every plant name consists from two parts.

**Firs part** is a genus name (*nomen generīcum*). It is always expressed by one word only that is by a name in the singular form or (rarely) by an adjective in the Nominative case being in the role of a name:

Arnīca, ae f — *arnica* Centaurea, ae f — *bluebottle*

**Second part** is a species name (*nomen specificum*). This is so called generic epithet or a generic definition. In this role mostly an adjective is acting, but also the Genitive case of a name, a combination of the Nominative and Genitive cases an indeclinable noun may be used. In sum, five most used grammar models of botanical names may be distinguished:

Model type	Latin botanic plant name	English equivalent of the plant	Generic epithet form
I	Atrōpa belladonna	Deadly nightshade	A noun in form of the Nominative singular ( <b>Belladonna</b> , ae f belladonna)
II	Capsella bursa-pastōris	Shepherd's purse	A combination of two names in the Nominative and Genitive plural ( <b>bursa</b> , ae f purse; pastor, ōris ( <b>pastōris</b> ) m shepherd)
III	Theobrōma cacao	Cocoa tree	An indeclinable noun ( <b>Cacāo</b> )
IV	Primūla veris	Cowslip primrose	A noun in form of Genitive singular case (ver, <b>veris</b> n веча)
V	Arnīca montāna	Mountain arnica	Adjective ( <b>montāna</b> from montānus, a, um mountain) agreed with a noun

At the end of a botanical name usually the name of the person which first made up the plant description (in a shorted form) is given. So, plant names have mostly the letter L. that signifies name of Linne: Arnīca montāna L.; Atrōpa delladonna L.; Primūla veris L.

### § 133. Character features of botanic names usage in the pharmaceutical terms

There are five main models according which botanic names pass into the pharmaceutical ones. If a botanic name belongs to models I, II, III, so a **generic epithet** as pharmaceutical equivalent is used:

Model type	Latin botanic name	Pharmaceutical equivalent	Example of a pharmaceutical term
I	Atrōpa <b>belladonna</b> – Deadly nightshade	<b>Belladonna</b>	Radīces <b>Belladonnae</b> – Belladonna roots
II	Capsella <b>bursa-pastōris</b>	<b>Bursa pastōris</b>	Herba <b>Bursae pastōris</b> — Shepherd's purse herb
III	Theobrōma <b>cacāo</b> — Cocoa tree	<b>Cacāo</b>	Oleum <b>Cacāo</b> – Cocoa oil

If a botanic name belongs to models IV и V, so its **generic name** as the pharmaceutical equivalent is used:

Model type	Latin botanical name	Pharmaceutical equivalent	Example of a pharmaceutical term
IV	<b>Primūla</b> veris — Cowslip primrose	<b>Primūla</b>	Folia <b>Primūlae</b> — Cowslip primrose leaves
V	<b>Arnīca</b> montāna — Mountain arnica	<b>Arnīca</b>	Flores <b>Arnīcae</b> – Flowers of arnica

The whole botanical name as a pharmaceutical equivalent is used if a plant is a poisonous one:

Herba Adonidis vernalis — spring Adonis herb

Herba Ledi palustris — swamp ledum herb.

Sometimes, pharmaceutical names don't coincident with their botanical equivalents:

Botanic name	Pharmaceutical name	Examples
Brassica nigra — black mustard	Sināpis, is f — mustard	Oleum Sināpis aethereum — ether mustard oil
Olea europaea — common olive	Olīva, ae f — olive	Oleum Olivārum — olive oil

### § 134. Alkaloid and glycoside names

Medical plants are used as raw materials for producing specific chemical substances so called alkaloids and glycosides which are widely used in pharmaceuticals.

The name alkaloids (**alcaloīda**) is formed by combining the late Latin word *alkali* (=alcali) alkali (from the Arabic *al-qali* ashes) and suffix **-oīd-**, originating from the Greek noun *eídos* appearance, likeness, similarity. Alkaloids are organic compounds of mostly vegetable origin which influence vitally important systems of human body.

The name glycosides (**glycosīda**) is formed by combining the stem of the name *glucōsum* glucose (from the Greek *glykys* sweet) and suffix **-īd-** originating from the Greek noun *eídos* appearance, likeness, similarity. Glycosides are organic compounds of mostly vegetable origin molecules of which are formed by *glycon* (a sugar part) and *aglycon* (non sugar part).

The Latin names of alkaloids and glycosides are formed from the stem of genus name or generic epithet name by adding suffix **-īn-**:

Botanic name	Stem of noun	Name of alkaloid of glycoside
Ephedra equisetina (horstail ephedra)	Ephedr-	Ephedrīnum, i n ephedrin
Strophanthus Kombe (strophanthus Kombe)	Strophanth-	Strophanthīnum, i n strophanthin

### § 135. Systematization of plant part names

Plant part is written in the dictionary form with small letter, but at the term beginning — with capital one, compare: flos, floris m — flower, but: Flores Chamomillae — chamomile flowers.

The most used plant part names are presented in the table below:

Latin name	English equivalent	Latin name	English equivalent
bacca, ae f	berry	herba, ae f	herb
caput, ītis n	head	radix, īcis f	root
cornus, i m	sprout, shoot	rhizōma, ātis n	rhizome

cortex, ĩcis m	bark	semen, ĩnis n	seed
flos, floris m	flower	stigma, ĩtis n	stigma
folium, i n	1) leaf 2) pine-needle	strobĭlus, i m	cone
fructus, us m	fruit	tuber, ěris n	tuber
gemma, ae f	bud	turio, ōnis m	bud (of pine)

### § 136. Word building elements (part 17)

Word building element and its etymology	Pharmaceutical or therapeutic information	Latin examples	English equivalents with black tipped word building element
<b>camph-</b> from the Latin <i>camphōra</i> originating from the ancient Hindu <i>karpuras</i> resin	analeptics (from the Greek <i>analeptikós</i> – recovering, repairing)	Camphōra, ae f Camphomēnum, i n	<b>camphor</b> <b>camphomen</b>
<b>ephedr-, eph-, phedr-</b> from the Greek <i>ephēdra</i> ephedra	means stimulating adrenoreceptors	Ephedrĭnum, i n Theophedrĭnum, i n	<b>ephedrine</b> <b>theophedrin</b>
<b>anth-</b> from the Greek <i>ánthos</i> flower	belonging to vegetable alkaloids and glycosides with a large spectrum of influencing organism	Helianthus, i m	sunflower
<b>glyc(y)-</b> from the Greek <i>glykŷs</i> sweet		Glycĭnum, i n Glycyrrhiza, ae f	<b>glycin</b> licorice
<b>phyll-</b> from the Greek <i>phŷllon</i> leaf		Euphyllĭnum, i n	<b>euphylline</b>
<b>phyt-</b> from the Greek <i>phytón</i> plant		Phytoferōlum, i n Phytolysĭnum, i n	<b>phytoferol</b> <b>phytolysin</b>
<b>stroph-</b> from the Greek <i>strophé</i> twist		Strophanthus, i m Strophanthĭnum, i n	<b>strophanthus</b> <b>strophanthin</b>
<b>the(o)-</b> 1) from the Greek <i>theós</i> god (in the name Theobrōma) 2) from the latinized Chinese <i>thea</i> tea		Theobromĭnum, i n Theophyllĭnum, i n Thepaphyllĭnum, i n	<b>theobromin</b> <b>theophyllin</b> <b>thepaphyllin</b>
<b>-trōpus, a, um</b> from the Greek <i>trōpos</i> direction	direction of any action	myotrōpus, a, um nootrōpus, a, um	<b>myotropic</b> <b>nootropic</b>
<b>thym-</b> from the Latin <i>thymus</i> , i m thymus originating from the Greek <i>thýmos</i> thyme	preparations stimulating immunity processes	Thymalĭnum, i n Thymōlum, i n Thymoptĭnum, i n	<b>thymalin</b> <b>thymol</b> <b>thymoptin</b>

### § 137. Exercises

1. Determine the pharmaceutical equivalents of the given botanical names and make up the following pharmaceutical terms:

1. Adonis vernālis (herb, infusion of herb, dry extract)
2. Acōrus calāmus (powdery rhizome, infusion of rhizomes)
3. Atrōpa belladonna (leaves, dry extract, thick extract)

5. Brassica nigra (oil, seeds, mustard plasters)
6. Capsella bursa-pastoris (herb, liquid extract, infusion of herb)
7. Cassia acutifolia (leaves, tablets of dry extract)
8. Panax ginseng (root, infusion)
9. Primula veris (powdery leaves, rhizome with roots)
10. Theobroma cacao (butter for suppositories)
11. Vaccinium myrtillus (fruits, decoction of fruits)

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Galanthaminum est alcaloidum ex tuberibus Galanthi Woronowi elicatum, quod in aliis quoque speciibus Galanthi continetur. 2. Atropinum in forma Atropini sulfatis in variis regionibus medicinae nostri temporis adhibetur. 3. Pulvis antiasthmaticus (aliter species antiasthmaticae) includit duae partes foliorum Belladonnae, partem unam Hyoscyami, Stramonii partes sex, Natrii nitratis partem unam. 4. Multa alcaloïda venenata sunt, sed in dosibus parvis therapeuticam actionem habent.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

1. Strophantin-K is a mixture of cardiac glycosides extracted from seeds of strophanthus-Kombe. 2. Thymalin belongs to preparations stimulating immunity processes. 3. Camphor bromide takes a sedative effect and improves cardiac activities. 4. Tablets «Euphylline» are the prolonged drug forms of theophylline.

### § 138. List of botanical names and their pharmaceutical equivalents used in this lesson

Botanical name	Pharmaceutical equivalent
Acorus calamus — sedge cane	Calamus, i m — sedge cane
Adonis vernalis — spring adonis	Adonis (idis m, f) vernalis (e) — spring adonis
Atröpa belladonna — deadly nightshade	Belladonna, ae f — belladonna
Arnica montana — mountain arnica	Arnica, ae f — arnica
Artemisia absinthium — common wormwood	Absinthium, i n — absinth
Betula verrucosa — warty birch	Betula, ae f — birch
Brassica nigra — black mustard	Sinapis, is f — mustard
Capsella bursa-pastoris — shepherd's purse	Bursa pastoris — shepherd's purse
Cassia acutifolia — Alexandrine senna	Senna, ae f — senna
Datura stramonium — thorn apple	Stramonium, i n — thorn apple
Ephedra equisetina — horsetail ephedre	Ephedra, ae f — ephedre
Galanthus Woronowi — Woronow's snowdrop	Galanthus, i m — snowdrop
Hyoscyamus niger — black henbane	Hyoscyamus, i m — henbane
Ledum palustre — swamp ledum	Ledum (i, n) palustre (is, e) — swamp ledum

Panax ginseng — Chinese ginseng	Ginseng (indeclinable) — ginseng
Primūla veris — cowslip primrose	Primūla, ae f — primrose
Strophanthus Kombe — strophanthus- Kombe	Strophanthus, i m — strophanthus
Theobrōma cacāo — cocoa tree	Cacāo (indeclinable) — cocoa
Vaccinium myrtillus — blueberry	Myrtillus i m — blueberry

### Dictionaries to the lesson 21 (except for plant names which are in the table above)

#### Latin–English vocabulary

alcaloīdum, i n — alkaloid	regio, ōnis f — region
antiasthmaticus, a, um — antiasthmatic	tempus, ōris n — time
Atropīnum, i n — atropine	therapeutīcus, a, um — therapeutic
elicio, elicui, elicītum, ěre 3 — to extract	tuber, ěris n — tuber
Galanthamīnum, i n — galanthamine	venenātus, a, um — poisonous
nostrer, tra, trum — our	

#### English–Latin glossary

activities — activitas, ātis f	mustard — Sināpis, is f
butter (thick oil) — butýrum, i n	plaster — emplastrum, i n
camphor — Camphōra, ae f	powdery — pulverātus, a, um
euphylline — Euphyllīnum, i n	prolonged — prolongātus, a, um
glycoside — glycosīdum, i n	strophanthin — Strophanthīnum, i n
immunity — immunitas, ātis f	theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n
to improve — emendo, āvi, ātum, āre 1	thymalin — Thymalīnum, i n

# LESSON 22

## MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION AND THE RULES OF WRITING OUT THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION

### § 139. Common information on prescriptions

The word *prescription* has the second name *recipe* which originates from the Latin noun *receptum*, i n. This noun is derived from the Latin participle *receptum* (literally: a thing that has been taken), derived in its turn from the verb *recipio*, *recēpi*, *receptum*, ěre 3 (to take). As commonly known a prescription is an official paper given by a physician to a patient for receiving a drug in the chemist's shop.

The whole prescription list includes 9 main sections as shown below:

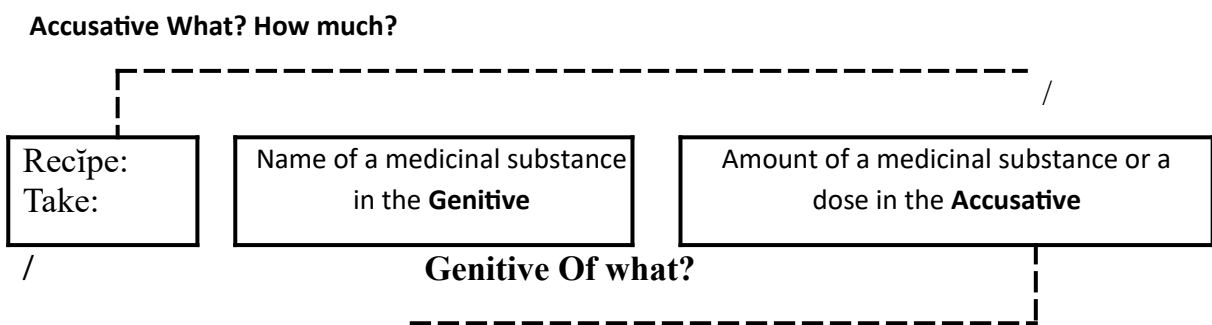
I. Inscriptio (inscription)	Information about the medicinal department in which the physician writes out the prescription
-----------------------------	---

II. Datum (date)	May, 3, 2016
III. Nomen aegrōti (patient's name)	Richard Pirks
IV. Aetas aegrōti (patient's age)	23 (years old)
V. Nomen medīci (physician's name)	Gromov Ivan
VI. Praescriptio (prescription) 1. Invocatio (compellation) 2. Designatio materiārum (list of medicinal substances)	Recipe: (Take:) Erythromycini 0,25 (Erythromycin 0.25)
VII. Subscriptio (subscription)	Da tales doses numero 10 (Give such a dose in the amount 8)
VIII. Signatūra (Signature)	Signa: 1 tablet 3 times a day
IX. Nomen personale et sigillum medīci (physician's personal signature and seal)	Physician's signature Place of seal

So, a prescription namely includes the VI–VIII parts of the recipe list. These parts are a written compellation of a medical doctor to a pharmacist which contains information about drug in a definite formulation and description of route of drug administration. According to the centuries-old tradition this information is composed in the Latin from the word *Recīpe* till the word *Signa*.

#### § 140. The Latin part of prescription

So, the Latin part of every prescription starts with the imperative form *Recīpe* (Take) which is followed by a colon. This is so called *Invocatio* — a compellation of a physician to a pharmacist. After the colon the physician writes a list of medicinal substances of definite drugs and their amount. This part is called *Designatio materiārum* — substances designation. The grammar correlations in this prescription line are the following:



For example when prescribing 15 ml of valerian tincture the prescription line looks like that:

**Recīpe: Tinctūrae Valeriānae    15 ml**

*Genitive*

*Accusative*

If a drug name is presented in the first line only then such a prescription is considered as a simple and the prescribing mood as a shorted one. By such a way are written out preparations which are produced in pharmaceutical plants and are delivered to chemist's shops ready-made.

If any drug is to be made up in a pharmacy then in the prescription all its components are to be enumerated. Such a mood of prescribing is called a full scale one and the prescription is called a complex one.

The drug amount of solid substances is designed in grams (gramma, ātis n — gram) or in tenth, hundredth and thousandth portions of gram (decigramma, ātis n — decigram; centigramma, ātis n — centigram; milligramma, ātis n — milligram). But these word designations are indicated neither in full nor in shorted form: doses are in the decimal numeration system indicated only.

If the matter amount is expressed by an integral number, then after this integral number a comma is placed with a following zero:

1,0 — gramma unum (one gram)

2,0 — grammāta duo (two grams)

10,0 — grammāta decem (ten grams)

20,5 — grammāta viginti et dimidia — 20.5 (twenty point five) grams.

If the matter amount is expressed by a decimal portion of gram, then a word expressing this portion is at the first place following by a cardinal numeral:

0,1 — decigramma unum — 0.1 (nought point one) gram

0,005 — milligrammāta quinque — 0.005 (nought point two oes five) grams.

Liquids are designed in milliliters (10 ml; 25 ml) and drops. The figure designating quantity of milliliters is followed by abbreviation **ml**. In drops (gutta, ae f) liquids in amount less than 1 milliliter are indicated. The drop amount is by a Roman figure indicated and is written after noun form *guttam* (if one drop is indicated) or *guttas* (if more than one drop is indicated):

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I Take: Peppermint oil I drop

Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V Take: Eucalyptus oil V drops

In units of activity or international units (IU) or in Latin unitātes internationāles (UI) some antibiotics or insulin preparations are designated:

Recīpe: Insulini 15 000 UI (quindēcim milia unitātum internationalium )

Take: Insulin 15 000 IU (fifteen thousand international units)

Recīpe: Bicillini 150 000 UI (centum quinquaginta milia unitātum

internationalium )

Take: Bicilline 150000 IU (hundred fifty thousand international units)

If two or more components are taken in the equal amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb *ana* «of each» is written before this amount:

Recīpe: Corticis Frangūlae  
Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15,0

Take: Cortex of buckthorn  
Leaves of nettle of each 15.0

In the second line of a simple prescription usually formulations «Da» or «Detur» («Give» or «Let it be given») are written. After that formulations «Signa» or «Signētur» («Write on the label» or «Let it be labelled») are written.

Given above one-word Imperative and Conjunctive formulations are of the equal value and their choice depends on the composer of a prescription only.

By words «Signa» or «Signētur» the Latin part of a prescription is finished. After these words an instruction to the patient in his native language is given how he should take the drug. So, the Latin part of a simple prescription looks like that:

Recīpe:	Unguenti Decamīni 30,0 Detur. Signetur:	Take:	Decamin ointment 30.0 Let it be given. Let it be labelled:
Recīpe:	Tinctūrae Valeriānae 15 ml Da. Signa:	Take:	Tincture of valerian 15 ml Give. Write on the label:

For a more detailed definition of a drug form or drug dosage the following formulas are used:

«Da (Detur) tales doses numēro... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsūlis etc.)»– Give (Let it be given) such a dose in the amount ...in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.):

Recīpe:	Solutiōnis Lidocāini 10% — 2 ml Da tales doses numēro 10 in ampullis Signa:	Take:	Solution of lidocain 10% — 2 ml Give such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules Write on the label:
---------	--	-------	--

Now let's consider the structure of a complex prescription and order of writing down its components.

Take:	Sodium salicylate 6,0	Recīpe:	Natrii salicylātis 6.0
	Sodium hydrocarbonate 3.0		Natrii hydrocarbonātis 3.0
	Mint water 20 ml		Aquae Menthae 20 ml
	Rectified water up to 100 ml		Aquae purificātae ad 100 ml
	Let it be mixed.		Misceātur.
	Let it be given:		Detur.
	Let it be labelled:		Signētur:

After the «**Recīpe**»: always the cardinal medical substance is written (**basis seu remedium cardināle**) mostly influencing the organism. Sodium salicylate (Natrii salicylas) is such a component of our prescription.

In the next line an auxiliary medicine (remedium adjūvans) is indicated that increases or reduces activities of the first component. Sodium hydro carbonate is used in this function.

To improve drug taste, smell and color or reduce its irritant action some correcting substance (**remedium corrīgens**) is used. In this function sugar, syrups, mint water or other aromatic substances may be used. So in our prescription mint water is used.

At the last place a substance is indicated that gives a physical constitution to our drug (**remedium constituens**) that is a solid, semisolid or liquid one (powder, ointment, solution etc.) In this function purified water, Vaseline, cocoa butter etc. may be used. In our prescription rectified water is used.

It should be taken into consideration that there may be different variants of this common prescription outline.

After indicating all the drug components formulas «Misce» or «Misceatur» are written, then formulas «Da» or «Detur». Formulas «Misce» and «Da» as usual are written beside (Misce. Da.). In the same way formulas «Misceatur» and «Detur» (Misceatur. Detur.) are written.

If it is necessary to determine that mixing is used for making some drug form so two verb forms are used: **fiat** for the nouns in the Singular and **fiant** for the nouns in the Plural:

Misce, fiat pulvis — Mix to get a powder

Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia — Mix to get vaginal suppositories.

Reciĥe:	Vikasoli 0,005	Take:	Vikazol 0.005
	Sacĥari 0,2		Sugar 0. 2
	Misce, fiat pulvis		Mix to get a powder
	Da tales doses numĥero 12		Give such a dose in the amount 12
	Signa:		Write on the label:

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

Da (Dentur) tales doses numĥero ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsulis etc) — Give (Let it be given) such a dose in the amount ... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.):

Reciĥe:	Paracetamoli 0, 3	Take:	Paracetamol 0. 3
	Da tales doses numero 6 in tabulettis		Give such a dose in the amount 6
	Signa:		Write on the label:

When making up the Latin part of a prescription the following rules are to be kept:

1. Every new prescription line begins with a capital letter.
2. Every first letter of a new line word is written strong under the initial letter of the previous line letter first word.
3. No one word may be written under the word *Recipe*.
4. If a prescription formulation can not be placed within a line, a necessary part of it is carried over to the next line moving back from the next line beginning for three letters.

5. With a capital letter within a Latin prescription line are written:

- a) Drug names (Aspirīnum, Corglycōnum etc.)
- b) Chemical elements (Cuprum, Hydrogenium etc.)
- c) Cation names (Natrii benzoas, Aethacidīni lactas etc.)
- d) Medicinal plant names ( Arnīca, Belladonna etc.)

With a small letter within a Latin prescription line are written:

- a) Parts of medicinal plants (Decoctum corīcis Quercus)\_
- b) Anion names (Natrii salicylas)
- c) Adjectives (Mentha piperīta)
- d) Prepositions and nouns determining rules of drug administration (ad usum internum, tales doses, in vitro nigro, pro narcōsi, contra tussim, pro roentgēno etc.)

6. Verb formulas *Misce/Misceātur* and *Signa/Signētur* have the same meaning, but they may not be used one instead another: their usage depends on the English text form.

**7. Spelling or grammar mistakes and any correction as well in any prescription text are not admitted!**

8. If necessary a physician writes at the top part of a prescription the following formulas:

- 8.1. **Cito!** (Quickly!) or **Statim!** (Immediately!)
- 8.2. **Repēte!** (Repeat!) or **Repetātur!** (Let it be repeated!)
- 8.3. **Pro me** (For me) or **Pro auctōre** (For the authori. e. for the prescription composer).

#### § 141. Methodical advices for prescription translating

Before translating a Latin or English prescription one should write down the dictionary form of every word beginning with «Recipe» (Take) and finishing by «Signa» (Write on the label) or «Signetur» (Let it be labelled). For example, you have to translate a prescription from Latin into English:

Recipe: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml

Da. Signa:

So you write down the dictionary forms:

Recipe: recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3 — to take

Extracti: extractum, i n — extract

Crataegi: Crataegus, i f — hawthorn

fluīdi: fluīdus, a, um — liquid

millilitrum, i n — milliliter

Da: do, dedi, datum, dare 1 — to give

Signa: signo, āvi, ātum, āre 1 — to write on the label

Now the translation follows:

Take:	Liquid extract of hawthorn 25 ml
	Give. Write on the label:

The second prescription you have to translate from the English into Latin:

Take:	Amidopyrin
	Phenacetin of each 0. 25
	Let it be given such a dose in the amount 12 in tablets
	Let it be labelled:

Dictionary forms:

to take — recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3;

amidopyrin — Amydopyrīnum, i n;

of each — ana;

to give — do, dedi, datum, dare 1;

such — talis, e;

dose — dosis, is f ;

amount — numĕrus, i m;

in — in (+Abl.);

tablet — tabuletta, ae f;

to write on the label — signo, āvi, ātum, āre 1.

Now the translation follows:

Recipe:	Amidopyrīni
	Phenacetīni ana 0, 25
	Dentur tales doses numēro 12 in tabulettis
	Signētur:

### § 142. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the prescriptions into English:

1. Recīpe:	Unguenti Xeroformii 3% — 10, 0 ml
	Detur. Signētur:
2. Recīpe:	Euphyllīni
	Dimedroli 0, 0, 0125
	Sacchāri 0, 2
	Da tales doses numēro 12 in capsūlis
	Signa:
3. Recīpe:	Chloroformii
	Spirītus aethylīci 95% ana 20 ml
	Aethēris aethylīci 10 ml
	Solutionis Ammonii caustīci guttas V
	Misce.Da.
	Signa:
4. Recīpe:	Herbae Millefolii
	Herbae Absinthii
	Florum Chamomillae
	Foliōrum Salviae
	Foliōrum Menthae piperītae ana 10, 0
	Misce, fiant species
	Da. Signa:
5. Recīpe:	Speciērum antiasthmaticārum 100, 0
	Detur. Signētur:

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the prescriptions into Latin:

1.Take:	Powder of foxglove leaves 0.05
	Sugar 0. 3
	Mix to get a powder
	Give. Write on the label:
2.Take:	Bark of buckhorn 30. 0
	Leaves of nettle 20. 0
	Herb of milfoil 10.0
	Mix to get a species
	Let it be given. Let it be labelled:

3.Take:	Theophylline 0. 2
	Cocoa butter 2. 0
	Mix to get a rectal suppository
	Let it be given such a dose in the amount 10
	Let it be labelled:
4.Take:	Potassium chloride 3 ml
	Insulin 8 IU
	Glucose solution 10% — 250 ml
	Let it be mixed. Let it be sterilized!
	Let it be given. Let it be labelled:
5.Take:	Laxative species 100. 0
	Give. Write on the label:
6.Take:	Emulsion of almond oil 100 ml
	Benzoic acid 0. 15
	Fennel oil VII drops
	Mix. Give.
	Write on the label:

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Radices Rauwolfiae serpentinae quantitatem magnam alcaloidorum continent, quae proprietates pharmacologicas pretiosas habent. 2. Succus Kalanchoes adjuvat purgationem vulnerum a textibus necrotisatis et sanationem eorum stimulat. 3. Herba Millefolii, quae sub florescentia colligitur et exsiccatur, provenit passim in pratis siccis.

4. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Fruits of medicinal fennel are used in the pharmaceutical practice as expectorant and carminative means. 2. Leaves of stinking nettle contain vitamin C, carotene, vitamin K, mineral salts and other useful matters. 3. Resorcinol powder is diluted very lightly in water and in spirit, relatively lightly in fatty oils and in glycerin.

## Dictionaries to the lesson 22

### Latin–English vocabulary

Absinthium, i n — wormwood	Millefolium, i n — milfoil
Ammonium, i n — ammonium	necrotisatus, a, um — necrotic
aethylicus, a, um — ethylic	passim — everywhere
ana — of each	pratium, i n — meadow
causticus, a, um — caustic	pretiosus, a, um — valuable
Chamomilla, ae f — chamomile	provenio, provēni, proventum, ire 4 — to meet
colligo, collēgi, collectum, ěre 3 — to gather	purgatio, ōnis f — cleaning , purification
	Rauwolfia, ae f — rauwolfia
Dimedrolum, i n — dimedrol	Salvia, ae f — sage
dioicus, a, um — stinking (nettle)	serpentinus, a, um — serpent like
exsicco, āvi, ātum, āre 1 — to dry	Solutio Ammonii caustici — spirit of ammonia
florescentia, ae f — flowering	such — talis, e
gutta, ae f — drop	Xeroformium, i n — xeroform

### English–Latin glossary

amount (anything countable) — numērus, i m	laxative — laxans, ntis
almond (fruit) — Amygdāla, ae f almond oil — Oleum Amygdalārum	lightly — facīle very lightly — facillīme
buckhorn — Frangūla, ae f	nettle — Urtīca, ae f stinking nettle — Urtīca dioīca
carminative — carminatīvus, a, um	practice — praxis, is f
carotene — Carotīnum, i n	rectal — rectālis, e
fatty — pinguis, e	relatively — relatīve
fennel — Foenicūlum, i n	resorcin — Resorcīnum, i n
insulin — Insulīnum, i n	stinking (nettle) — dioīcus, a, um

## LESSON 23

### THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE IN SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

#### § 143. General information on the use of the Accusative in the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms in the first prescription line is used only in a simple medical prescription. In this way tablets, drops, capsules, suppositories, ointments, liniments, creams, ophthalmic films, sponges of different medical destination, aerosols are prescribed. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is used in the Accusative Singular or Plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common constructions with preposition «of» or without it are used. The Accusative construction is used too, if the Latin drug name isn't enclosed in inverted commas. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated either in grams or in milliliters, but is expressed by the word numerus (number) in the Ablative form (numēro) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recīpe:	Tabulettas «Antistrumīnum» numēro 50	Take:	Antistrumin tablets number 50
	Detur.		Let it be given
	Signetur:		Let it be labelled:
Recīpe:	Tabulettas Aloës obductas 0,05 numēro 20	Take:	Coated tablets of aloe 0.05 number 20
	Da. Signa:		Give. Write on a label:

As in the English drug names inverted commas are not so widely used, it is not possible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That's why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out

if the drug name in the inverted commas is enclosed or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: psoriasis (ointment) — Unguentum «Psoriasinum»; antistrumin (tablets) — Tabulettae «Antistruminum»; Benspar (capsules) — Capsulae «Bensparum», then we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Take:	Capsules of benspar number 100	Reciĥpe:	Capsulas «Bensparum» numĥro 100
	Give. Write on the label:		Da. Signa:

Now let's examine in detail the use of different pharmaceutical forms in the Accusative. First of all let's consider prescribing drug form in the Accusative singular. In this case form balsams, gels, creams, liniments, ointments and aerosols are prescribed.

#### § 144. The prescription of balsams, gels, creams, liniments, ointments and aerosols in the Accusative

Aerosols, balsams, gels, creams, liniments and ointments are prescribed in the Accusative singular if not the weight but an amount of drug forms is specified. By such a prescribing way after «Reciĥpe» a drug form in the Accusative singular is written, then the drug name itself in the Nominative singular, then «numĥro» and the amount of drug forms. In the second line follow the standard verb formulas «Da. Signa:» or «Detur. Signĥtur:»):

Take:	Gold Star balsam number 2 Give. Write on the label:	Reciĥpe:	Balsamum «Stella auraria» numĥro 2 Da. Siga:
Take:	Fusidin gel 2% number 1 Give. Write on the label:	Reciĥpe:	Gelum «Fusidinum» 2% numĥro 1 Da. Signa:
Take:	Nicoflex cream number 2 Let it be given Let it be labelled:	Reciĥpe:	Cremorem «Nicoflexum» numĥro 2 Detur. Signĥtur:
Take:	Psoriasis ointment number 2 Give. Write on the label :	Reciĥpe:	Unguentum «Psoriasinum» numĥro 2 Da. Signa:
Take:	Sanitas liniment number 1 Let it be given Let it be labelled:	Reciĥpe:	Linimentum «Sanitas» numĥro 1 Detur. Signĥtur:
Take:	Aerosol of proposol number 2 Give. Write on the label:	Reciĥpe:	Aerosolum «Proposolum» numĥro 2 Da. Siga:

But if the weight of the drug is to be indicated then all the enumerated drug forms are prescribed in the Genitive singular. The amount of drug forms is introduced by the formula «Da (Detur) tales doses numĥro ...»):

Take:	Gold Star balsam 4. 0 Let it be given of such dose in the amount 2	Reciĥpe:	Balsami «Stella auraria» 4,0 Detur tales doses numĥro 2 Signĥtur:
-------	---	----------	---

	Let it be labelled:		
Take:	Fusidin gel 2% — 15.0 Give. Write on the label:	Reċiġe:	Geli «Fusidīnum» 2% — 15,0 Da. Signa:
Take:	Nicoflex cream 50.0 Give. Write on the label:	Reċiġe:	Cremōris «Nicoflexum» 50,0 Detur. Signētur:
Take:	Psoriasin ointment 25.0 Give. Write on the label:	Reċiġe:	Unguenti «Psoriasīnum» 25,0 Da. Signa:
Take:	Sanitas liniment 50.0 Let it be given Let it be labelled:	Reċiġe:	Linimenti «Sanītas» 50,0 Detur. Signētur:
Take:	Aerosol of proposol 50.0 Give such a dose in the amount 2 Write on the label:	Reċiġe:	Aērosoli «Proposōlum» 50,0 Da tales doses numēro 2 Signa:

### § 145. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative singular and plural form

The drug prescription in the tablets may take place in three forms.

In the first case after the «Reċiġe» the Accusative singular form «Tabulettam» is written, then follows the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction «Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro... in tabulettis» is written and after that the standard verb form Signa («Signetur»):

Reċiġe:	Tabulettam Paracetamoli 0,3	Take:	Tablet of paracetamol 0.3
	Da tales doses numero 6 in tabulettis		Give such a dose in the amount 6
	Signa:		Write on the label:

In the second case after the «Reċiġe» the Accusative plural form «Tabulettas» is written, then follows the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the «numero» and a figure:

Reċiġe:	Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3 numero 6	Take:	Tablets of paracetamol 0.3 number 6
	Da. Signa:		Give. Write on a label:

But the same drug can be prescribed in the traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablets form. In this case after the «Recipe» the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction «Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro 6 in tabulettis» and, finally, the standard form «Signa» («Signetur») are written:

Reċiġe:	Paracetamoli 0,3	Take:	Paracetamol 0.3
	Da tales doses numero 6 in tabulettis		Give such a dose in the amount 6 in tablets
	Signa:		Write on the label:

It goes without saying that every physician has to know all ways of writing out the medical prescriptions. Thus, the choice of a prescription way is up to him.

#### § 146. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form

Drops (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word «dragées» is used) are lately prescribed mainly in the Plural form that formally, from the grammar point of view, is as the Accusative considered depending on the word «Recipe» although the French word «dragées» has neither cases nor dictionary form.

The prescription regulations for drops are the following. After the «Recipe» follows the form «Dragées», the drug name in inverted commas or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case «numéro» with a figure indicating the dose:

Recipe:	Dragées «Undevitum» numero 30	Take:	Drops of undevit number 30
	Detur		Let it be given
	Signetur:		Let it be labelled:

It's necessary to note, that sometimes, the other order of drops prescription is used. In this case, after the «Recipe» the Singular form «Dragée» is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase «Da (Dentur tales doses) numero...»:

Recipe:	Dragée Diazolini 0,05	Take:	Dragée of diazolin 0.05
	Da tales doses numero 20		Give such a dose in the amount 20
	Signa:		Write on a label:

#### § 147. The prescription of ophthalmic films and medical sponges

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film behind the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed in the Accusative plural form with the preposition «cum». The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following.

After the «Recipe» follow the Accusative plural forms Lamellas (or Membranulas) ophthalmicas, the drug name in Genitive, the preposition «cum» with the acting pharmaceutical component and the form «numéro» with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases «Da» («Dentur») and «Signa» («Signetur») are written:

Recipe:	Lamellas ophthalmicas cum Novocaino numero 8	Take:	Ophthalmic films with novocain number 8
	Da		Give
	Signa:		Write on the label:

Films for another administration may be prescribed in the Accusative singular, too:

Take:	Fibrin isogenic film Give such a dose in the amount 3 in vitreous phial Write on the label:	Recīpe:	Membranūlam fibrinōsam isogēnam Da tales doses numēro 3 in vitro vitreo Signa:
-------	---	---------	---

A pharmaceutical sponge is a porous substance saturated with a drug. It is applied to the necessary site and has antiseptic, haemostatic and other pharmaceutical effects. Pharmaceutical sponges may be prescribed both in the singular and plural forms:

Take:	Collagen haemostatic sponge Give such a dose in the amount 3 in polyethylene packets Write on the label:	Recīpe:	Spongiam haemostatīcam collagenīcam Da tales doses numēro 4 in fascibus polyaethylenīcis Signa:
Recīpe:	Songias «Methuracōlum» numero 10	Take:	Sponges of methuracol number 10
	Da.		Give
	Signa:		Write on the label:

Recīpe:	Songias antiseptīcas cum Kanamycino numero 5	Take:	Antiseptic sponges with kanamycin number 5
	Detur.		Let it be given
	Signetur:		Let it be labelled:

#### § 148. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. We distinguish rectal suppositories and the vaginal ones. Suppositories are prescribed in the Accusative plural case form:

1. After the «Recipe» follow: the Accusative plural form «Suppositoria» with the adjective vaginalia (rectalia) or without these adjectives, then the drug name in inverted commas and the «numēro» with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases «Da» («Detur») and «Signa» («Signetur»):

Recīpe:	Suppositoria vaginalia «Osarbonum» numēro 10	Take:	Vaginal suppositories of osarbon number 10
	Da		Give
	Signa:		Write on the label:

2. After the «Recipe» follow the Accusative plural form «Suppositoria», the proposition «cum» and the acting pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form «numēro» with a figure. After that the standard forms «Da» («Detur») and «Signa» («Signetur») follow in the next lines:

Recīpe:	Suppositoria cum Diprophyllīno 0,5 numēro 30	Take:	Suppositories with diprophyllin 0.5 number 30
	Detur.		Let it be given
	Signetur:		Let it be labelled:

### § 149. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the prescriptions into the Latin:

1. Take:	Beviplex drops number 30
	Give
	Write on the label:
2. Take:	Tablets of sustac-forte number 25
	Let it be given
	Let it be written on the label:
3. Take:	Vaginal suppositories with synthomycine 0.25 number 10
	Let it be given
	Let it be written on the label:
4. Take:	Aerosol of orciprenaline sulphate 15% — 20 ml
	Give
	Write on the label:

5. Take:	Cream of dolgit
	Give such a dose in the amount 3
	Write on the label:
6. Take:	Ophthalmic films with neomycin number 8
	Let it be given
	Let it be written on the label:
7. Take:	Coated tablets of oleandomycin sulphate 0.125 number 30
	Give
	Write on the label:
8. Take:	Collagen haemostatic sponge Give such a dose in the amount 3 in polyethylene packet Write on the label:
9. Take	Naphthalgin liniment
	Let be given such a dose in the amount 2 in a small bottle
	Let it be written on the label:

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:

1. Feracrŷlum est Ferri sal in forma lamellae vitrei fragĭlis, quod concretiōnes cum sanguĭnis proteĭnis formāre potest. 2. Nomen «bacillus» in microbiologia genus microorganismōrum bacilliformium significat, qui endospōras formant. 3. Alcaloĭda, glycosĭda et alia remedia origĭnis vegetabilĭs nomen accipiunt a nomĭne plantārum, e quibus haec remedia conficiuntur.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into the Latin:

1. The composition of the naphthalgin liniment includes methyl salicylate, analgin, naphthalan petroleum, mixtures of fatty spirits and other components. 2. Prolonged injection drug forms (oily solutions, suspensions and the others) are introduced as a rule into muscles. 3. A film with cytisin that contains 0.015 grams of the drug is daily glued on the gum or on the mucosa of retrogingival region.

### Dictionaries to the lesson 23

#### Latin–English vocabulary

bacillus, i m — bacillus	microbiologia, ae f — microbiology
bacilliformis, e — bacilliform	microorganismus, i m — microorganism
concretio, ōnis f — concretion	orīgo, ĩnis f — origin
endospōra, ae f — endospore	potest — can, is able
Feracrȳlum, i n — feracryl	proteīnum, i n — protein
fragīlis, e — brittle	significo, āvi, ātum, āre1 — to signify
genus, ěris n — genus	vegetabīlis, e — vegetable

#### English–Latin glossary

beviplez — Beviplezum, i n	mucosa — mucōsa, ae f
collagen — Collagēnum, i n	naphthalan petroleum — Naphthalānum, i n
cream — cremor, ōris m	naphthalgin — Naphthalgīnum, i n
cytisin — Cytisīnum, i n	neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n
daily — quotidie	orciprenaline — Orciprenalīnum, i n
dolgit — Dolgītum, i n	polyethylene — polyaethylenīcus, a, um

film — lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f	retrogingival — retrogingivālis, e
to glue — inglutīno, āvi, ātum, āre1(+Dat.)	sponge — spongia, ae f
gum — gingīva, ae f	sustac-forte — Sustācum-forte, Sustāci-forte n

# LESSON 24

## SYSTEMATISAZION OF THE SOLID DRUG FORM NAMES AND THEIR PRESCRIPTION (PART 1)

### § 150. Drug form which are divided after their substance state and their rout of administration

All medicinal preparations are divided after their substance state in 4 main groups: solid (formae medicamentōrum durae), soft (formae medicamentōrum molles), liquid (formae medicamentōrum flūidae), and volatile (formae medicamentōrum volatiles).

Depending on route of introduction into the organism all the drug forms are divided in two main groups: 1) enteric forms (from the Greek *énteron* intestine) which are introduced through gastrointestinal tract — formae enterāles 2) parenteral forms (from the Greek *pará-* near, besides + *enteral*), which are introduced passing gastrointestinal tract — formae parenterāles.

## §151. Pharmaceutical proprieties of solid drug forms

To the most used solid drug forms belong powders, tablets, granules, granulates, briquettes, concentrates, lyophilisates, drops (dragées), caramels, pastilles, pills, capsules, sponges, films, ampoules, poultices, medicinal species, (lyophilisate) microspheres.

**1. Powders — Pulvėres (pulvis, ěris m)** — are a solid drug forms which may be poured.

**After their composition** powders are divided in:

1) Simple powders — pulvėres simplīces: Acīdum borīcum (boric acid), Kalii permangānas (potassium permanganate);

2) Complex powders — pulvėres compositi: Pulvis Glycyrrhizae compositum (complex powder of licorice)

Sal carolinum factitium (Carlsbad artificial salt).

**After their reduction grad** powders are divided in:

1) The finest powders — pulvėres subtilissīmi;

2) Fine powders— pulvėres subtilēs;

3) Coarse powders — pulvėres grossi

**After their rout of administration** powders are divided in:

1) Powders for internal use — pulvėres ad usum internum;

2) Powders for external use — pulvėres ad usum externum.

**After their dosage** powders are divided in:

1) Powders divided in doses— pulvėres divīsi;

2) Powders not divided in doses— pulvėres indivīsi.

**Powders are introduced:**

1) Orally, by mouth— per os;

2) Via aspersion — per aspersiōnem;

3) Via insufflations — per insufflatiōnem;

4) Via injections — per injectiōnes;

5) Rectally, per rectum — per rectum;

6) Via gargling — per gargarisma.

**2. Tablets — Tabulettae (tabletta, ae f)** are solid divided in doses drug forms which are produced in pharmaceutical plants via pressing powdered substances in the form of the plate, round, oval and convexo-convex discs or platelets.

Tablets are coated (tabulettae obductae) and tablets without a cover (tabulettae inobductae). For coating sugar, milk sugar, dextrin, starch etc. are used.

**After administration rout** tablets are divided in the following groups:

- 1) Tablets for sublingual resolving or glossettes — tabulettae sublinguāles seu glossēttae;
- 2) Tablets for retrobuccal resolving — tabulettae retrobuccāles;
- 3) Masticatory tablets — tabulettae masticatoriae;
- 4) Tablets soluble in the stomach — tabulettae gastrosolubīles;
- 5) Enteric soluble tablets — tabulettae enterosolubiles;
- 5) Tablets soluble in any liquid — tabulettae solubiles seu solvellae;
- 6) Spumant tablets (by dissolving in water) — tabulettae effervescentes seu spumantes.

Tablets are prescribed in the detailed or shortened ways. In a detailed way prescribing after all the drug components formulas «Da (Dentur) tales doses numero...in tabulettis» and Signa («Signetur») are written.

In a shortened way prescribing the form «tablet» in the first prescription line is written in the Accusative plural and after «numero « the dose amount is designed (see the orevious lesson). There is another mood of a shortened tablets prescription, too: tablet name and the dosage are written in the first prescription line and in the second line formulas «Da (Dentur) tales doses numero...in tabulettis» and «Signa» («Signetur») are written.

**3. Granules — Granūla (granūlum, i n)** are grains of different dimention containing medicinal and auxilary substances. Granules are prescribed in a shorted way.

**4. Briquettes — Brikēta (brikētum, i n)** are vegetable raw material pressed in the briquettes. Briquettes are prescribed in a shortened way.

**5. Concentrates — Concentrāta (concentrātum, i n)** are concentrated forms of the solid medicinal or auxiliar substances. Concentrates are prescribed in a shortened way.

**6. Lyophilisates — Lyophilisāta (lyophilisātum, i n)** are the lyophilisated powders obtained via lyophilisation that is a rapid freezing with following rapid dehydration in a high vacuum. Lyophilisates are prescribed in a shortened way.

**7. Dragées , singular form dragée (a not Latinized French name) , drops** are little sugar coated pills. They have more than one active compound, and to prevent unwanted pharmacological interaction we divide them by a layer of inert compound (sugar etc.). *Dragées* usually are prescribed in a shortened way.

**8. Caramels — Caramella (caramel, ellis n)** are solid drug forms which are similar to confectionary caramels after their form and taste and are resolved in the mouth cavity. Thay are usually prescribed for children in a shortened way.

**9. Pastilles — Pastilli (pastillus, i m)** are semisolid forms obtained as a result of a special processing mixture of a medicinal substance with sugare, flour and some other components. Pastilles are prescribed in a shortened way.

**10. Medicated pencils — Styli medicināles (stylus, i m)** are shaped rod with a pointed ending and are designed for external use. The dosage form of such pencils includes substances with astringent or cauterizing action.

### § 152. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into the English:

1. Take:	Theobromine sodium with sodium salicylate 0. 3
	Phenobarbital 0. 02
	Mix to get a powder
	Give such a dose in the amount 6 in the waxed paper
	Write on the label:
2. Take:	Ampicillin powder for suspension 5. 0
	Let it be given
	Let it be labeled:
3. Take:	Ascorbic acid 0.2
	Nicotinic acid
	Dimedrol of each 0. 01
	Riboflavin 0. 03
	Thiamin bromide
	Pyridoxine hydrochloride
	Rutin of each 0. 02
	Mix to get a powder
	Give such a dose in the amount 30
	Write on the label:
4. Take:	Acetylsalicylic acid
	Phenacetin of each 0. 02
	Phenobarbital 0. 025
	Caffeine 0. 05
	Codeine phosphate 0. 01
	Let it be given such a dose in the amount 10 in tablets
	Let it be labelled:
5. Take:	Coated tablets of reduced iron 0. 2 number 20
	Give
	Write on the label:
6. Take:	Caramels with dicain 0. 0015 number 20
	Give
	Write on the label:
7. Take:	Antistrumin tablets number 50
	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:
8. Take:	Strychnine nitrate
	Anhydric arsenous acid of each 0. 03
	Camphor bromide 3. 0

	Calcium glycerophosphate 6. 0
	Licorice extract and powder in sufficient amount
	Mix to get pills number 60
	Give
	Write on the label:
9. Take:	Aminazin dragée 0. 025 number 12
	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into the English:

briquettes of eucalyptus leaves; enteric soluble solizyme tablets; bethovenium hydronaphthoate or naphthammon in coated tablets; lyophilisated lysoamidaze powder divided in doses; ethazol sodium granules for children; human leucocytic interferon; soluble laevomycesin succinate; stomachic tablets with belladonna extract; lithium oxybutyrate and testosterone oenanthate in tablets; rhizomes with elfwort roots; tablets of ethacrynic acid; lyophilisate of thrombin powder for solutions; powder for inhalation in rotadiscs; 25% esmolol concentrate for infusion solutions in ampoules on 10 ml everyone; montelucast masticatory tablets number 7 on 0. 005 grams everyone; oraze granules for solution in packets on 10 grams everyone and in cupping glasses on 65 grams everyone; powder of adrenocorticotrophic hormone in packing 10 and 100 grams of each; a briquette of cowberry leaves for infusion.

**Dictionary to the lesson 24**

adrenocorticotrophic — adrenocorticotropicus, a. um	lithium — Lithium, i n
aminazin — Aminazinum, i n	lyophilisate — lyophilisatum, i n
antistrumin — «Antistruminum», i n	lyophilisated — lyophilisatus, a, um
arsenous — arsenicosus, a, um	lysoamidaze — Lysoamidazum, i n
bethovenium — Bethovenium, i n	masticatory — masticatorius, a, um
briquette — briketum, i n	montelucast — Montelucastum, i n
caramel — caramel, ellis n	naphthammon — Naphthammōnum, i n
codeine — Codeinum, i n	oenanthate — oenanthas, ātis m
concentrate — concentratum, i n	oraze — Orāzum, i n
cowberry — Vitis(is f) idaea (us, a, um)	packet — fascis, is m
cupping glass — olla, ae f	packing — devinculum, i n
elfwort — Inūla, ae f	rutin — Rutinum, i n
enteric soluble — enterosolubilis, e	paper — charta, ae f
esmolol — Esmololum, i n	pill — pilula, ae f
glycerophosphate — glycerophosphas, ātis m	pyridoxine — Pyridoxinum, i n
granule — granulum, i n	reduced — reductus, a, um
human — humanus, a, um	rotadisc — rotadiscus, i m
hydronaphthoate — hydronaphtoas, ātis m	solizyme — Solizymum, i n
interferon — Interferonum, i n	stomachic — stomachicus, a, um
in sufficient amount — quantum satis	strychnine — Strychninum, i n
iron — Ferrum, i n	succinate — succinas, ātis m
laevomycesin — Laevomycesinum, i n	thrombin — Thrombinum, i n

# LESSON 25

## SYSTEMATISAZION OF THE SOLID DRUG FORM NAMES AND THEIR PRESCRIPTION (PART 2)

### § 153. Solid and semisolid drug forms (continuation)

**1. Sponges — spongiae (spongia, ae f)** are dry porous matters of soft consistence in form of plates or peaces which contain medicinal substances and take haemostatic, antiseptic and gluing effect. Sponges are prescribed in the Accusative case in a shortened way.

**2. Films and platelets — lamellae et membranulae (lamella, ae f; membranula, ae f)** are made on a polymer base with medicinal substances and are put to a diseased place. Mostly ophthalmic films (lamellae/membranulae ophthalmicae) and stomatological platelets (lamellae) are used which are prescribed in the Accusative case in a shortened way.

**3. Poultices — cataplasmata (cataplasma, ātis n)** are soft substances which are put on the skin. They cause rush of blood, improve microcirculation, take anti-inflammatory and antiseptic effect. Poultices are prescribed in a shortened way.

**4. Napkins — mappulae (mappula, ae f)** are semisolid matters in napkin form which are saturated with an active medicinal agent and are meant for the hemorrhage stopping or liquids adsorption.

**5. Capsules — capsulae (capsula, ae f)** are gelatin or starch cover of divided medicines with different consistence. Into capsules the substances are comprised with unpleasant taste or irritating effect. Two main types of capsules are distinguished:

- 1) Hard-shelled capsules— capsulae gelatinosae durae
- 2) Soft- shelled capsules— capsulae gelatinosae molles

Capsules with drugs are prescribed in a shorted way in the Accusative plural or the drug is in the first line designed and in the second line the formula «Da (Dentur) tales doses numero... in capsulis» is given.

**6. Medicinal species — species (species, erum f)** are mixtures of cut or reduced vegetable row material. Species are prescribed both in a shortened and in detailed way.

### § 154. Exercises

*1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into English:*

1. Praeparatum Oblectolum producitur in forma lamellarum collagenicarum cum additioe olei Hippophaes. 2. Ad combustiones profundas ut aspersio Terrilytinum adhibetur et deinde

mappūla imponitur 0,25 % solutiōne Novocaīni umectāta. 3. Species antihaemorrhoidāles contñent ana 20 grammata foliōrum Sennae, corticis Frangūlae, herbae Millefolii, fructuum Coriandri, radicis Glycyrrhizae.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Poultices cause rush of blood, improve microcirculation, take anti-inflammatory and antiseptic effect. 2. The preparation «Methuracol» is produced from dry collagen in the form of small-porous plates of white color in a gram of which 0.05 grams of Methyluracyl are contained. 3. The preparation «Biostim» is produced in capsules on 0.001 gram everyone and is used for prophylaxis chronic recidivate infections of respiratory organs.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take:	Pine buds
	Leaves of colt's foot of each 30.0
	Mix to get a species
	Give in a box
	Write on the label:
2. Take:	Buckthorn bark
	Chamomile flowers
	Linden flowers
	Dry berries of guelder-rose of each 15.0
	Mix to get a species
	Write on the label:
3. Take:	Films with pilocarpin hydrochloride number 30
	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:
4. Take:	Polyvitaminous species 100.0
	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:
5. Take:	Poultices of white clay
	Give
	Write on the label:
6. Take:	Antiseptic sponge with gentamycin
	Let it be given of such a dose in the amount 4 in vitreous phial
	Let it be labelled:
7. Take:	Oletetrin capsules 0.25 number 8
	Give.
	Write on the label:
8. Take:	Oxacilline sodium 0.25
	Give such a dose in the amount 40 in gelatinous capsules
	Write on the label:
9. Take:	Diuretic species 50.0
	Give.
	Write on the label:

## Dictionaries to the lesson 25

### Latin-English vocabulary

additio, ōnis f — addition	Frangŭla, ae f — buckhorn
aspersio, ōnis f — aspersion	impōno, imposui, impositum, ěre 3(+Dat.) — to apply, to put on
collagenĭcus a, um — collagenic	mappŭla, ae f — napkin
combustio, ōnis f — combustion	Oblecōlum, i n — oblecol
Coriandrum, i n — coriander	profundus, a, um — deep
deinde — then	umectātus, a, um — wetted

### English-Latin glossary

biostim — <i>Bioſtĭmum</i> , i n	organ — <i>orgănum</i> , i n
to cause — <i>provōco</i> , āvi, ātum, āre l	oxacilline sodium — <i>Oxacillĭnum-natrium</i> , i n
clay— <i>bolus</i> , i f	pilocarpin — <i>Pilocarpĭnum</i> , i n
colt's foot — <i>Farfăra</i> , ae f	pine — <i>Pinus</i> , i f
diuretic — <i>diuretĭcus</i> , a, um	polyvitaminous — <i>polyvitaminōsus</i> , a, um
gelatinous — <i>gelatinōsus</i> , a, um	
guelder-rose — <i>Viburnum</i> , i n	poultice — <i>cataplasma</i> , ātis n
linden — <i>Tilia</i> , ae f	prophylaxis — <i>prophylaxis</i> , is f
methuracol — <i>Methuracōlum</i> , i n	recidivate — <i>recidĭvus</i> , a, um
methyluracyl — <i>Methyluracĭlum</i> , i n	rush — <i>affluxus</i> , us m
microcirculation — <i>microcirculatio</i> , ōnis f	small-porous — <i>microporōsus</i> , a, um
oletetrin — <i>Oletetrĭnum</i> , i n	sponge — <i>spongia</i> , ae f

## LESSON 26

# SYSTEMATIZATION OF LIQUID DRUG FORM NAMES AND THEIR PRESCRIPTION (PART 1)

### § 155. Common information on the liquid drug forms

Liquid drug forms are the most numerous and the most ancient among the medical means. Such medicines were widely used by Hippocrates (460–377 BC) and Claudius Galen (130–200 AD).

To the most used liquid drug forms belong solutions, suspensions, emulsions, liniments, decoctions, infusions, tinctures, drops, extracts, mucilages, mixtures, syrups, aromatic waters. They are administered orally through the digestive tract or in a parenteral way (via injections, putting into eyes or nose, gargling, lotions, compresses etc.).

### § 156. Pharmaceutical description of the liquid drug forms

**1. Solutions — solutiōnes (solutio, ōnis f)** — homogenous mixtures of medicinal substances and liquid dissolving agents.

**Depending on a dissolving agent** solutions are divided in:

- 1) Aqueous solutions — *solutiōnes aquōsae*
- 2) Spirituous solutions — *solutiōnes spirituōsae*
- 3) Oily solutions — *solutiōnes oleōsae*
- 4) Glyceric solutions — *solutiōnes glycerinōsae*.

**Depending on their administration** solutions are divided in:

- 1) Solutions for injections — solutiōnes pro injectionibus
- 2) Solutions for external use — solutiōnes ad usum externum:
  - Gargles — gargarismāta (gargarisma, ātis n)
  - Lotions (liquid means for the skin) — lotiōnes (lotio, ōnis f)
  - Mouth-wash (bathing for mouth) — collutoria (collutorium, i n)
  - Enemata or clysters — enemāta seu clysmāta (enēma, ātis n; clysmā, ātis n)
  - Syringing — perfontiōnes (perfontio, ōnis f)
  - Triturations — trituriōnes (trituriatio, ōnis f).
- 3) Solutions for enternal use — solutiōnes ad usum internum
- 4) Solutions for anesthesia — solutiōnes ad anaesthesiam
- 5) Plasma-substituting solutions — solutiōnes plasmosubstituentes

**2. Suspensions — suspensiōnes (suspensio, ōnis f)** are liquids containing insoluble powdered matters. There are dry suspensions (suspensiōnes siccae), from which ex tempore liquid ones are prepared.

**3. Emulsions — emulsa (emulsum, i n)** are mixtures of water and insoluble matters (ethereal and fatty oils, resins, balsams). Emulsions may be oily or not true (emulsa oleōsa seu non vera) and seed or true emulsions (emulsa seminalia seu vera).

**4. Liniments — linimenta (linimentum, i n)** are thick liquids or liquid ointments for rubbing into the skin vegetable oils (sunflower oil, almond oil, castor oil, etc.). The base of liniments is composed from vegetable oils (sunflower oil, almond oil, castor oil, etc).

**5. Infusions — infūsa (infūsum, i n)** are aqueous extractions from soft parts of vegetable row material (leaves, flowers, petals, herbs etc.), which are obtained by means of heating in a boiling water bath.

**6. Decoctions — decocta (decoctum, i n)** are aqueous extractions from the solid parts of medicinal plants (bark, roots, rhizomes etc.).

**7. Tinctures — tinctūrae (tinctūra, ae f)** are spirituous, spirituous-aqueous or spirituous-ethereal extractions from the vegetable or animal row materials received without heating and meant for internal and external use.

## § 157. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into English:

1. Solutiōnes Methylēni coerulei aquōsae seu glycerinōsae in venam intraducuntur sub intoxicationibus cyanīdis, Carbonei monox̄ido et Hydrogenii sulfīdo. 2. Tinctūra foliōrum Berberīdis vulgāris sumitur in quantitāte ab quindēcim ad viginti guttas bis seu ter in die. 3. Emulsa sunt mixtiōnes aquae cum materiis isolubilibus (oleis aetheris et pinguibus, picibus, balsāmis). 4. Ad morbos cavitātis oris saepe gargarismāta infūsi Chamomillae seu Salviae praescribuntur.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into Latin:

1. For treatment purulent wounds sterile gauze bandages are saturated with 30% aqueous polyethylenoxid-400 solution. 2. Liniments are thick liquids obtained on the base of vegetable oils which are rubbed into the skin. 3. In the intravenous introduction of nitroglycerin its solution in ampoules is diluted with isotonic solution of sodium chloride. 4. On the labels with emulsions the inscription «Before usage it is to be shaken! » is usually indicated.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the prescriptions into English:

1.Take	Wormwood tincture
	Rhubarb tincture of each 15 ml
	Mix
	Give
	Write on the label:
2.Take:	Castor oil emulsion 150.0
	Basic bismuth nitrate 0.1
	Sugar syrup 10 ml
	Mix
	Give
	Write on the label:
3.Take:	Chloral hydrate 1.0
	Starch mucilage 3.0
	Purified water 200 ml
	Mix
	Give
	Write on the label:
4.Take:	Cyanocobalamin 0.01% solution for injections — 1 ml
	Let it be given of such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules
	Let it be labelled:
5.Take:	Decoction of milkwort root from 20.0 — 200 ml
	Ammoniac and anise fluid 2 ml
	Simple syrup 20 ml
	Mix. Give
	Write on the label:
6.Take:	Suspension of amorphous zinc-insulin 5 ml
	Let it be given. Let it be labeled:
7.Take:	Microcid
	Cod-liver oil of each 100.0
	Mix to get an emulsion
	Give. Write on the label:

8.Take:	Glucose solution 20 % for injections 10 ml
	Add aseptically strophanthin solution 0.05 % for injections 0.5 ml
	Let it be mixed. Let it be given.
	Let it be labelled:
9.Take:	Spirituos iodine solution 5% - 2 ml
	Tannin 3.0
	Glycerin 10 ml
	Mix
	Give such a dose in the amount 2
	Write on the label:

## Dictionaries to the lesson 26

### Latin–English vocabulary

aquōsus, a, um — aqueous	insolubīlis, e — insoluble
Berbēris, īdis f — barberry	intoxicatio, ōnis f — intoxication
Carboneum, i n — carbon	monoxĭdum, i n — monoxide
coeruleus, a, um — blue	pix, picis f — resin
cyanīdum, i n — cyanide	quindĕcim — fifteen
gargarisma, ātis n — gargle	ter — trice, three times
glycerinōsus, a, um — glyceric	viginti — twenty
in die — daily	vulgāris, e — common

### English–Latin glossary

to add — addo, addīdi, addītum, ěre 3	isotonic — isotonīcus, a, um
ammoniac and anise fluid — Liquor Ammonii anisātus (ammoniac — Ammonium, i n anise — anisātus, a, um fluid — liquor, ōris m)	microcide — Microcīdum, i n milkwort — Polygāla, ae f mucilage — mucilāgo, ĩnis f to obtaine — elicio, elicui, elicītum, ěre 3 polyethylenoxid — Polyæthylenoxīdum, i n
amorphous — amorphus, a, um	purulent — purulentus, a, um
aseptically — asepticē	rhubarb — Rheum, i n
bandage — fascia, ae f	to saturate — satūro, āvi, ātum, āre 1
chloral — Chlorālum, i n	to shake — agĭto, āvi, ātum, āre 1
cod-liver oil — Oleum jecōris aselli cod — asellus, i m liver (of fishes) — jecur, ōris n	spirituous — spirituōsus, a, um starch — Amylum, i n suspension — suspensio, ōnis f
gauze — tela, ae f	tannin — Tannīnum, i n
hydrate — hydras, ātis m	thick — spissus, a, um
to indicate — indīco, āvi, ātum, āre 1	usually — plerumque
	wormwood — Absinthium, i n

# LESSON 27

## SYSTEMATIZATION OF LIQUID DRUG FORM NAMES AND THEIR PRESCRIPTION (PART 2)

### § 158. Pharmaceutical information on the liquid drug forms

**1. Drops — guttae (gutta, ae f)** are the aqueous or oily solutions of medicinal substances with a strong therapeutic action. These substances are dosed in the amount less than 1 milliliter, and an average weight of a drop is 0.05 ml. Drops for eyes are named *oculoguttae* (oculogutta, ae f), drops for nose — *nasoguttae* (nasogutta, ae f) seu *naristillae* (naristilla, ae f), drops for ears — *otoguttae* (otogutta, ae f) or *auristillae* (auristilla, ae f).

**2. Extracts — extracta (extractum, i n)** are the concentrated drawing out from a vegetable row material. After their consistence extracts are divided in:

- 1) liquid extracts — *extracta fluīda*;
- 2) thick extracts — *extracta spissa*;
- 3) dry extracts — *extracta sicca*.

**3. Mucilages — mucilagīnes (mucilāgo, īnis f)** are the liquid forms which are obtained by dissolving in water gums, starch or treated plant material comprising mucous substances (*Gummi arabīcum* — arabic gum, *Amŷlum* — starch, *Semīna Lini* — flax seeds, *Radīces Althaeae* — march-mallow roots etc.).

**4. Mixtures — mixtūrae (mixtura, ae f)** are mixtures of two or more medicinal substances being in a weighted or dissolved state in a liquid. Dry mixtures (*mixtūrae siccae*) are used, too.

**5. Injections — injectiōnes (injectio, ōnis f)** are ready-made sterile solutions of medicinal substances which are prepared for subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous and another introductions. They are produced in the plants in ampoules, but may be prepared after a medical prescription with the necessary indication «*Sterilisētur!*»(Let it be sterilized!) or «*Sterilīsa!*» (Sterilize!).

**6. Oils — olea (oleum, i n)** are oily drawing out from a vegetable or animal row material.

**7. Lemonades — limonāta (limonātum, i n)** — sweet and acidulated liquids including medicinal substances, syrups and acids (citric, lactic, tartaric etc.). Lemonades usually are prepared for children.

**8. Syrups — sirūpi (sirūpus, i m)** are mixtures of medicinal plants extracts with sugar syrup.

**9. Juices - succi (succus, i m)** are mixtures including 85% fresh vegetable juice and 15% ethylic alcohol.

**10. Aromatic waters — aquae aromaticae (aqua, ae f; aromaticus, a, um)** are solutions of distilled water with vegetable extracts and oils having a stable pleasant smell, for example, mint water (Aqua Menthae), fennel water (Aqua Foenicūli).

### § 159. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the English:

1. Methyldōpha producitur in forma injectabili ut 5% solutio in ampullis seu in flaconibus cum additiōe Natrii bisulfitis et conservantōrum. 2. Mixtura sicca contra tussim pro adultis continet extracti Thermopsidis sicci 0,6, extracti radīcis Glycyrrhizae sicci, Natrii hydrocarbonātis et Ammonii chlorīdi ana 2, 0, olei Anīsi 0.05, Sacchāri 10.0. 3. Duae seu tres guttae Amylii nitritis offae gossypii impositae pro inhalatiōne ut antidōtum adhibentur sub intoxicatiōne Acīdo hydrocyanīco et salibus ejus. 4. Oculoguttae Norfloxacinī adhibentur ad usum locālem ana 1 seu 2 guttas quarter in die, ut otoguttae autem ana 4 guttas ter in die.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the Latin:

1. 0. 2% hydroxyzin syrup is produced in little bottles on 200 ml everyone and is used as sedative, anxiolytic and antiemetic means. 2. Cordiamin or 25% solution of diethylamide of nicotinic acid is taken orally 15 drops for one intake 2 or 3 times a day or is induced subcutaneously, intramuscularly and intravenously 1–2 ml 3 times a day. 3. Bromhexin is the basic component of a combined preparation «Bronchosan» which is taken in drop form by mouth in the acute and chronic bronchitis of different etiology. 4. Wheat starch, Maize starch, rice starch and potato tuber starch make in the hot water a colloidal solution named «starched mucilage».

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the prescriptions into the Latin:

1. Take:	Chloral hydrate
	Starch mucilage
	Distilled water of each 25.0
	Mix
	Give
	Write on the label:
2. Take:	Ipecacuanha roots infusion from 0.4 — 180 ml
	Ammoniac and anise liquid 2.0
	March-mallow syrup 15.0
	Mix
	Give
	Write on the label:
3. Take:	Thick extract of male fern 6.0
	Divide into 6 equal parts
	Give in gelatinous capsules
	Write on the label:
4. Take:	Diluted pure hydrochloric acid 4.0
	Pepsin 2.0

	Simple syrup 50.0 Distilled water 150 ml Mix to get a mixture
	Give
	Write on the label:
5. Take:	Novocain 0.5
	Isotonic sodium chloride solution 200 ml
	Let it be mixed
	Let it be sterilized!
	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:
6. Take:	Oily testosterone oenanthate solution 2% – 1.0
	Let be given such a dose in the amount 6 in ampoules
	Let it be labelled:
7. Take:	Antiasthmatic mixture 200 ml
	Give
	Write on the label:
8. Take:	Flax seeds mucilage 150.0
	Give for a certain time
	Write on the label:
9. Take:	Seeds of sweet almond 5.0
	Castor oil 3.0
	Distilled water up to 50 ml
	Mix to get an emulsion
	Give
	Write on the label:

### Dictionaries to the lesson 27

#### Latin-English vocabulary

Amylium, i n — amyl	Methyldōpha, ae f — methyldopa
antidōtum, i n — antidote	nitris, itis m — nitrite
conservantum, i n — preservative	Norfloxacinum, i n — norfoxacin

gossypium, i n — cotton wool	oculogutta, ae f — drop for eyes
hydrocyanicus, a, um — hydrocyanic	offa, ae f — piece
impositus, a, um — put on	otogutta, ae f — drop for ears
injectabilis, e — for injections	quarter — four times
	Thermopsis, ĩdis f — thermopsis

### English-Latin glossary

anxiolytic — anxiolyticus, a, um	intramuscularly — intra musculos
basic — cardinālis, e; principālis, e	intravenously — intra venas
bromhexin — Bromhexinum, i n	ipecacuanha — Ipecacuanha, ae f
bronchitis — bronchĭtis, itĭdis f	maize — Mays, ŷdis f
bronchosan — Bronchosānum, i n	male — mas, maris
chronic — chronicus, a, um	marsh-mallow — Althaea, ae f
diethylamide — Diaethylamĭdum, i n	ipecacuanha — Ipecacuanha, ae f
etiology — aetiologia, ae f	named — nomĭne
fern — Filis, ĭcis f	oenanthate — oenanthas, ātis m
flax — Linum, i n	potato — Solānum (i, n) tuberōsum (us, a, um)
for a certain time — ex tempōre	
hot — calĭdus, a, um	rice — Orķza, ae f
hydroxyzin — Hydroxyzĭnum, i n	starched — amylaceus, a, um
to induce — indūco, induxi, inductum, ěre 3	to sterilize — sterilĭso, āvi, ātum, āre 1
intake (a drug dose to be taken	subcutaneously — sub cutem
for one intake) — dosis pro dosi	testosterone — Testosterōnum, i n
	wheat — Tritĭcum, i n

# LESSON 28

## SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE SOFT DRUG FORM NAMES AND THEIR PRESCRIPTION

### § 160. Pharmaceutical information on the soft drug forms

**1. Balsams — balsāma (balsāmum, i n)** are ointments which contain etheric oils or resins and are administered for external use. Balsams have antiseptic, heating up and deodorizing properties. Besides soft balsam forms, the liquid ones exist as well.

**2. Ointments — unguenta (unguentum, i n)** are drug forms of a sticky consistence containing powdery substances no less than 25%. Depending on the usage ointments are divided into auricular, nasal, rectal, vaginal and ophthalmic.

Depending on their content ointments are divided into simple and compound ones. Ointments may be produced in the plants or be prepared at a pharmacy after a doctors prescription.

**3. Liniments or liquid ointments — linimenta (linimentum, i n).** Depending on their viscosity or thickness grad the liniments belong to soft or liquid drug forms. Like ointments they can be simple and compound, can be produced at factories or be prepared at a pharmacy after a doctors prescription.

**4. Pastes — pastae (pasta, ae f)** are thick ointments containing more than 25% powdery substances. Like ointments and liniments they can be produced at factories or be prepared in drugstores after a doctor's prescription.

**5. Gels — gela (gelum, i n)** — are jelly-like forms being disperse systems with a liquid disperse surroundings. Gels are produced at factories only and are prescribed in a shortened way.

**6. Creams — cremōres (cremor, ōris m)** are ready-made drug forms being less stickly by their consistence than ointments. Like gels they are produced at factories only and are prescribed in a shortened way.

**7. Suppositories — suppositoria (suppositorium, i n)** are drug forms which are solid by the room temperature and melting by the body temperature. One may distinguish rectal suppositories (suppositoria rectalia), vaginal suppositories (suppositoria vaginalia) and small stick-bougies (bacilli) which are induced into fistulas, urethra and nasal cavity.

Suppositories may be produced at factories or be prepared in drugstores after a doctor's prescription.

**8. Plasters — emplastra (emplastrum, i n)** are plastic masses which get soft by the body temperature and stick to the skin. Plasters are produced at factories only and are prescribed in a shortened way.

### § 161. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the English:

1. Ad morbos cutis aetiologiae non microbicae 0,5% unguentum Prednisoloni cuti imponitur strato tenui ter in die. 2. Sub curatiōne colitidis ulcerosae non specificae oleum Rosae inducitur per clyisma ana 50 ml quotidie aut alternis diebus. 3. Unguentum contra congelationem includit Tincturae Capsici 7,4; Acidi formicici 0,3; 10% Solutiōnis Camphorae oleosae ad usum externum 6,2; Olei Ricini 1,0; Solutiōnis Ammonii caustici 1,4; Sapōnis viridis 1,9; Lanolini anhydrici 1,3; Adipis suilli 9,4; Vaselini medicinalis 71,0. 4. Benzylis benzoas medicinalis adhibetur ad curatiōnem scabiēi in forma 20% emulsi or 20% geli seu unguenti.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the Latin:

1. Aloe juice is prepared in bottles from the dark glass and is administered for external use in the form of eye-washes or irrigations. 2. The preparation «Bisacodil» in the form of rectal suppositories is administered in chronic constipations and for bowel content removal before a diagnostic exploration. 3. 5% ointment «Diaethon» has radioprotective properties and is used for protection of skin integuments of the patients in the ray therapy. 4. The preparation «Pimafucort» is produced in the form of ointments, creams and lotions, one gram or milliliter of which contains 0.01 gram both of natamycin and hydrocortisone and 0.5 grams of neomycin as well.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate the prescriptions into the Latin:

1.Take:	Menthol 1.0
	Anestasin 3.0
	Folliculin 300000 IU
	White streptocid 4,0
	Vaseline oil 40.0
	Mix to get an ointment
	Give
	Write on the label:
2.Take:	Belladonna extract 0.015
	Novocain 0.01
	Streptocid 0.1
	Collargol 0.01
	Adrenalin hydrotartrate 0.18% - IV drops
	Cocoa oil 3,0
	Mix to get a rectal suppository
	Give such a dose in the amount 10
	Write on the label:
3.Take:	Rectified oil of turpentine
	Xeroform of each 15. 0
	Methyl salicylate 10 ml
	Mix to get a liniment

	Give
	Write on the label:
4.Take:	Hydrocortisone suspension 2.5% – 0.01
	Tetracycline hydrochloride 0.1
	White clay 0.5
	Pitch oil as much as suffices
	Mix to get a paste
	Give
	Write on the label:
5.Take:	Capsicum plaster number 3
	Give. Write on the label:
6.Take:	Vaginal suppositories with synthomycine 0.25 number 10
	Let it be given. Let it be labelled:
7.Take:	Ammonium chloride
	Rectified licorice juice 5 ml
	Distilled water up to 200 ml
	Mix. Give.
	Write on the label:
8.Take	Salicylic acid 1.0
	Zinc oxide
	Wheat starch of each 12.5
	Vaseline up to 50.0
	Mix to get an ointment
	Give
	Write on the label:

## Dictionaries to the lesson 28

### Latin–English vocabulary

adeps (īpis m) suillus (a, um) — lard	Lanolīnum, i n — lanolin
alternis diēbus — each second day , every other day	microbīcus, a, um — microbic
anhydrīcus, a, um — anhydrous	Prednisolōnum, i n — prednisolon
Capsīcum, i n — pepper	quotidie — every day, daily
caustīcus, a, um — caustic	sapo, ōnis m — soap
clysmā, ātis n — enema, clyster	scabies, ēi f — scabies, itch
colītis, itīdis f — colitis, inflammation of colon	specificus, a, um — specific
congelatio, ōnis f — freezing, frost-bite	stratum, a, um — layer
gelum, i n — gel	suillus, a, um — of pork
impōno, imposui, imposītum, ěre 3 (+Dat.) — to put on, to apply	tenuis, e — thin
	ulcerōsus, a, um — ulcerous
	virīdis, e — green

### English–Latin glossary

adrenalin — Adrenalīnum, i n	to have — habeo, habui, habītum, ěre 2
anesthesin — Anaesthesīnum, i n	integument — integumentum, i n
as much as suffices — quantum satis	irrigation — irrigatio, ōnis f
bisacodil — Bisacodīlum, i n	natamycin — Natamycīnum, i n

bowel — intestīnum, i n	neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n
collargol — Collargōlum, i n	pimafucort — Pimafucortum, i n
constipation — constipatio, ōnis f	pitch — pix, picis f
cream — cremor, ōris m	protection — munimentum, i n
diaethon — Diaethōnum, i n	radioprotective — radioprotectīvus, a, um
eye-wash — collyrium, i n	ray therapy — radiotherapia, ae f
exploration — exploratio, ōnis, f	removal (some food substances from the stomach) — evacuatio, ōnis f
folliculin — Folliculīnum, i n	
	turpentine — Terebinthīna, ae f

## LESSON 29

# SYSTEMATIZATION OF NON STANDARO DRUG FORMS AND THEIR PRESCRIPTION

### § 162. The drug forms which differ from traditional solid, liquid and soft ones

**1. Aerosols — aërosōla (aërosōlum, i n)** are dispersion systems in which a drug is contained within a special cylinder and is extracted by spraying. Aerosols are administrated for a local action or for an inhalation. They are prescribed in a shortened way.

**2. Sprays — («spray»** is not translated into the Latin) are dispersion systems like aerosols. The term «spray» is used as a rule in the singular form and conditionally is considered to be a neutral gender noun when using with adjectives: *spray nasāle* — nasal spray, *spray cutaneum* — skin spray. Sprays are usually identified with aerosols, compare such a prescription:

Take: Aerosol of Beclomethazon dipropionate 10 ml

Give. Write on the label: Nasal spray–aerosol (a dosed one)

**3. Shampoos — lavatoria spumantia (lavatorium, i n washing means; spumans, ntis foaming)** are foaming washing means with addition of disinfecting, insecticide and another components).

**4. Lacquers or varnishes — lacca (laccum, i n)** are liquids with a medicinal component, after applying of which on any part of body a semisolid film appears.

**5. Implants — implantāta (implantātum, i n)** are special grafts or microcapsules with medicinal components which are introduced under the skin.

**6. Intrauterine polymer carriers — gestatōres intrauterāles polymēri (gestātor, ōris m; intrauterālis, e; polymērus, a, um)** are intrauterine systems for contraception.

**7. Transdermal therapeutical systems — systemāta transdermalia therapeutīca (systēma, ātis n; transdermālis, e; therapeutīcus, a, um)** are devices providing drug administration through the skin with the help of special plasters.

These entire enumerated above drug forms are produced at factories and are prescribed in a shortened way.

### § 163. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the Latin:

1) Six levonorgestrel capsules are implanted under the skin into the inner shoulder region. 2) The preparation «Amorolfīn» is administered for external use in a varnish form for treating and prophylaxis mucous skin diseases caused by dermatiphytes and actinomyces. 3) Varnish «Ciclopirox» is applied with a thin layer on the affected nail with the help of a special brush during the first month every other day. 4) Shampoo «Phenothrin» is administered in pediculosis of head hairs in children and adults. 5) The dosed aerosol inhacort in cylinders on 6 ml everyone contains 120 doses and is administered for treatment bronchial asthma. 6) Intrauterine polymer carriers on 50 micrograms with the controlled deliberation of drug component are used for contraception. 7) The polymer layer of the transdermal therapeutical system «Nitropercuten» contains 0.08 grams of nitroglycerin which gradually gets free from a polymer layer and comes into organism.

### Dictionary to the lesson 29

actinomyces — actinomŷces, ētis m	inhacort — Inhacortum, i n
amorolfīn — Amorolfīnum, i n	to implant — implanto, āvi, ātum, āre 1
asthma — asthma, ātis n	intrauterine — intrauterīnus, a, um
bronchial — bronchiālis, e	layer — stratum, i n
brush — penicillus, i m	levonorgestrel — Levonorgestrēlum, i n
carrier — gestātor, ōris m	microgram — microgramma, ātis n
ciclopirox — Ciclopirōxum, i n	month — mensis, is m
to come into — intro, āvi, ātum, āre 1 (+Acc.)	mucous disease, mycosis — mycōsis, is f
contraception — contraceptio, ōnis f	nail — unguis, is m
controlled — recensibilis, e	phenothrin — Phenothrīnum, i n
cylinder — cylindrus, i m	pediculosis — pediculōsis, is f
deliberation — deliberatio, ōnis f	polymer — polymērus, a, um
dermatiphytes — dermatophŷton, i n	shampoo — lavatorium spumans; (lavatorium, i n — washing means; spumans, ntis — foaming)
every other day — diēbus alternis (alternus, a, um — acting in turn)	shoulder — brachium, i n
to get free — libĕro, āvi, ātum, āre 1 (use in passive voice)	treatment — curatio, ōnis f
dosed — divīsus, a, um	transdermal — transdermālis, e
gradually — paulātim	varnish — laccum, i n
hair — pilus, i m	with the help — ope (+ Gen.)

# LESSON 30

## SHORTENED LATIN DESIGNATIONS IN PRESCRIPTIONS

### § 164. Rules of shortening designation

Shortened designations are used in the Latin part of prescription. First is shortened the word «Recipe» and then drug form names, plant parts, standard prescription formulas with verbs, names and adjectives. Such shortened designations include usually one, two-four, seldom five or six initial letters:

h., hb. — herba (herb); liq. — liquor (liquid); past. — pasta (paste); concentr. — concentrātus (concentrated).

If a word is shortened in a syllable which includes several consonants, then all of them are retained: cort. — cortex (bark); empl. — emplastrum (plaster).

**Never medical plant names, chemical elements names and drug names are shortened.** In full form always is written the verb formula «Sterilisētur!»

### § 165. Table of the shortened Latin designations

Abbreviation	Full form	Meaning
āā	ana	of each, equally
adult.	adultus	adult
ac., acid.	acīdum	acid
ad us. ext.	ad usum externum	for external use
ad us. int.	ad usum internum	for internal use
aēros.	aērosōlum	aerosol
amp.	ampulla	ampoule
antiasthm.	antiasthmaticus, a, um	antiasthmatic
aq.	aqua	water
aq. destill.	Aqua destillāta	distilled water
aq. purif.	Aqua purificāta	purified water
but.	butyrum	oil (solid)
cm	centimētrum	centimeter
comp., cps., cpt.	compositus, a, um	compound
concentr.	concentrātus, a, um	concentrated
cort.	cortex	bark
crem.	cremor	cream
D.	Da. Detur. Dentur	Give. Let it be given.
D. t. d.	Da (Dentur) tales doses	Give (Let be given) of such doses
dec., dct.	decoctum	decoction
dep.	depurātus, a, um	purified (of solid substances)
dil.	dilūtus, a, um	diluted
empl.	emplastrum	plaster

emuls.	emulsum	emulsion
extr.	extractum	extract
f.	fiat, fiant	to get
fl.	flos	flower
fluid.	fluīdus, a, um	liquid
fol.	folium	leaf
fr.	fructus	fruit
gran.	granūlum	granule
gtt., gtts.	guttam, guttas	drop, drops
h., hb.	herba	herb
in amp.	in ampullis	in ampoules
in caps. gel.	in capsūlis gelatinōsis	in gelatinous capsules
in ch. cer.	in charta cerāta	in waxed paper
inf.	infūsum	infusion
infant.	infantes	children
in flac.	in flaconībus	in bottles
in tab.	in tabulettis	in tablets
in vitr. nigr.	in vitro nigro	in dark phial
lin., linim.	linimentum	liniment
liq.	liquor	liquid, fluid
liquid.	liquīdus, a, um	liquid
M.	Misce. Misceātur.	Mix. Let it be mixed.
M. D. S.	Misce. Da. Signa. Misceātur. Detur. Signētur.	Mix. Give. Write on the label: Let it be mixed. Let it be given, Let it be written on the label:
ml	millilītrum	milliliter
mg	milligramma	milligram
mixt.	mixtūra	mixture
mucil.	mucilāgo	mucilage
N.	numēro	number
obd.	obductus, a, um	coated
ol.	oleum	oil (liquid)
past.	pasta	paste
pil.	pilūla	pill
piper.	piperītus, a, um	pepper
praec., pct., ppt.	praecipitātus, a, um	precipitated
pro inject.	pro injectionībus	for injections
pulv.	pulvis	powder
q. s.	quantum satis	the amount needed
r., rad.	radix	root
Rp.	Recīpe	Take
rectif.	rectificātus, a, um	rectified (of liquids)
Rep.	Repēte. Repetātur.	Repeat. Let it be repeated.
rhiz.	rhizōma	rhizome
sem.	semen	seed
sicc.	siccus, a, um	dry
simpl.	simplex	simple

sir.	sirūpus	syrup
sol.	solutio	solution
sp., spec.	species	species
spir.	spirītus	spirit, alcohol
Steril.	Sterilīsa! Sterilisētur!	Sterilize! Let it be sterilized!
steril.	sterīlis	sterile
supp.	suppositorium, suppositoria	suppository, suppositories
supp. rect.	suppositorium rectāle	rectal suppository
supp. vagin.	suppositorium vagināle	vaginal suppository
susp.	suspensio	suspension
tab.	tabuletta, tabulettae tabulettam, tabulettas	tablet, tablets
tr.	tritūs, a, um	grinded
t-ra, tinct.	tinctūra	tincture
ung.	unguentum	ointment

### § 166. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary forms of each word and translate the prescriptions into the English in the full form:

- 1) Rp.: Hb. Millefolii  
Hb. Absinthii  
Fl. Chamomillae  
Fol. Salviae  
Fol. Menthae piper. āā 10, 0  
M.f.sp.  
D.S.:
- 2) Rp.: Aethēris pro narcōsi 35, 0  
Chinīni hydrochlorīdi 0, 5  
Spir. aethylīci 95% – 3 ml  
Ol. Persicōrum ad 60, 0  
M.D.S.:
- 3) Rp.: Tab. Natrii phthorīdi pro infant. 0, 0011 N.12  
D.S.:
- 4) Rp.: Sol. Glucōsi 5% - 250 ml  
Sol. Novocaīni 0,5% - 100 ml  
M. Sterilisētur!  
D.S.:
- 5) Rp.: Sarcōlysīni 0, 01  
D.t.d. N. 25 in tab.  
S.:
- 6) Rp.: Extr. Belladonnae 0,015  
Novocaīni 0,1  
Streptocīdi 0,1  
Collargōli 0,1

- Sol. Adrenalīni hydrochlorīdi 0, 18% — gtts. IV  
 Ol. Cacáo 3,0  
 M.f. supp.rect.  
 D.t.d. N.12  
 S.:
- 7) Rp.: Aëros. «Camphomēnum» 30, 0  
 D. S.:
- 8) Rp.: Crem. «Acyclovir» 5% - 2, 0  
 D.S.:
- 9) Rp.: Mixt. antiasthm. Trascōvi 200 ml  
 D. S.:
- 10) Rp.: Ac. ascorbinīci 0, 2  
 Ac. nicotinīci  
 Riboflavīni āā 0, 25  
 Aq. dest. 100 ml  
 M.D.S.:
- 11) Rp.: Tab. «Mezimum-forte» N. 20  
 D.S.:
- 12) Rp.: Barii sulfātis pro roentgēno 30, 0  
 Aq. pro inject. 170 ml  
 M. Sterilisētur!  
 D.S.:
- 13) Rp.: Spasmolytīni 0, 05  
 Suprastīni 0, 025  
 Thiamīni bromīdi 0, 01  
 Sacchāri 0,3  
 Coffeīni-natrii benzoātis 0, 01  
 M. f. pulv.  
 D .t. d. N. 30  
 S.:
- 14) Rp.: Insulīni 10 IU  
 Methyluracīli 0, 001  
 Riboflavīni 0, 001  
 Sol. Natrii adenosintriphosphātis 0,1% — 10 ml  
 M.D.S.:

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate the prescriptions into the Latin in the full and shortened forms:

1. Take: Fennel fruits  
 Valerian rhizome with roots of each 30. 0  
 Mix to get a species  
 Give. Write on the label:
2. Take: Glucose solution 40% - 20 ml  
 Ascorbic acid solution 5% - 5 ml  
 Cocarboxylase 0,1  
 Calcium gluconate solution 10% - 10 ml

- Let it be mixed. Let it be given.  
Let it be written on the label:
3. Take: Benzylpenicilline sodium 300000 IU  
Laevomycesin 5. 0  
Peach oil  
Pyridoxine hydrochloride  
Riboflavin of each 0. 01  
Thiamine bromide 0. 05  
Cortisone emulsion 2. 5  
Lanolin  
Vaseline of each 50. 0  
Mix to get an ointment  
Give. Write on the label:
4. Take: Caffeine sodium benzoate 1. 0  
Sodium bromide 3. 0  
Chinese magnolia vine tincture 6 ml  
Distilled water 200 ml  
Let it be mixed. Let it be given.  
Let it be written on the label:
5. Take: Dog rose fruits  
Elder fruits and leaves  
Marigold flowers  
Hop cones  
Rhizomes with valerian roots of each 15.0  
Mix to get a species  
Give in paper sack  
Write on the label:
6. Take: Cholenzym tablets number 50  
Give. Write on the label:
7. Take: Bilberry fruits 100.0  
Give. Write on the label:
8. Take: Pilocarpin hydrochloride 0.1  
Physostigmine salicylate 0.03  
Distilled water 10 ml  
Let it be mixed. Let it be given in a dark phial.  
Let it be written on the label:
9. Take: Juniper berries infusion from 10.0 — 200 ml  
Give. Write on the label:
10. Take: Almond oil emulsion 100 ml  
Benzoic acid 0.15  
Fennel oil VII drops  
Mix. Give.  
Write on the label:
11. Take: Red bilberry leaves decoction from 20.0 — 200 ml  
Give. Write on the label:
12. Take: Novocain solution 0.25 % - 100 ml

- Euphylline solution 2.4 % - 5 ml  
 Hydrocortisone 0.025  
 Monomycin 0.75  
 Let it be mixed. Let it be sterilized!  
 Let it be given. Let it be written on the label:
13. Take: Thermopsis herb infusion from 0.6 — 130 ml  
 Pertussin 50 ml  
 Sodium bromide  
 Sodium benzoate of each 3.0  
 Elixir pectoral 6.0  
 Mix. Give.  
 Write on the label:
14. Take: Cowslip primrose bark from 5.0 — 100 ml  
 Garden violet herb infusion from 6.0 — 100 ml  
 Licorice root syrup 20.0  
 Give. Write on the label:

### Dictionaries to the lesson 30

#### Latin–English vocabulary

Acyclovirum, i n — acyclovir	Mezymum-forte, Mezymi-forte n — mezym-forte
adenosintriphosphas, ātis m — adenosintriphosphate	Millefolium, i n — milfoil
	Mixtura Trascōvi — Trascov mixture
Chinīnum, i n — quinine	phthorīdum, i n — phthoride
Coffeīnum-natrii benzos, Coffeini-natrii benzoātis m — caffeine sodium benzoate	Sarcolysīnum, i n — sarcolysin
	Spasmolytīnum, i n — spasmolytin
Methyluracīlum, i n — methyluracil	Suprastīnum, i n — suprastin

#### English–Latin glossary

Benzylpenicilline sodium – Benzylpenicillīnum-natrium, i n	garden violet — Viōla (ae f) tricōlor (ōris)
	hop — Humūlus, i m
bilberry — Myrtillus, i m	juniper — Junipērus, i f
Chinese magnolia vine — Schizandra (ae f) chinensis (is, e)	laevomycetīn — Laevomycetīnum, i n
	marigold — Calendūla, ae f
cholenzyme — Cholenzymum, i n	monomycin — Monomycīnum, i n
cone — strobīlus, i m	pectoral — pectorālis, e
cowslip primrose — Primūla, ae f	pertussin — Pertussīnum, i n
dog rose — Rosa, ae f	physostigmine — Physostigmīnum, i n
elder — Sambūcus, i f	pilocarpin — Pilocarpīnum, i n
elixir — elixir, īris n	red bilberry — Vitis (is f) idaea (us, a, um)
fennel — Foenicūlum, i n	

# LESSON 31

## SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE WORD BUILDING ELEMENTS AND THEIR ORTHOGRAPHY (PART 1)

### § 167. The alphabet list of learnt word building elements, part 1

The following two lessons aim to give the students a possibility to repeat the word building elements to get ready better to the resulting test in the learnt matter. To master it, students are recommended to make on their own the alphabet table of the learnt word building elements including all the exceptions and then to compare their table with that of the textbook one. Examples and exceptions are given in the Latin for the best orthography memorizing.

Word building elements	Example	Exceptions
-aesth-, -aesthes-, -asthes-, -esthes-,	Aesthocīnum i n Anaesthesīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum i n Pavesthesīnum, i n	Aestifānum, i n
-aeth-	Aethazōlum, i n aether, ěris m	etacrynīcus, a, um
-alg-	Analgīnum, i n Baralgīnum, i n	
-andr-	Methylandrostandiōlum, i n	
-angi-	Angiopīlum, i n	
-anth-	Helianthus, i m Strophanthīnum i n	Remantadīnum, i n
-api-	Apilācum, i n	
-as-	Ribonucleāsūm, i n	
-az-	Azaleptīnum i n	
-(a)zid-	Dichlothiazīdum, i n Saluzīdum i n	Adonisīdum, i n
-(a)zin-	Phthoracizīnum, i n Sulfadimezīnum i n	adenosintriphosphorīcus, a, um; Troxevasīnum, i n
-(a)zol-	Aethazōlum, i n Norsulfazōlum i n	aērosōlum, i n (and all the aerosol names with ending -sol in English variant: Chinosōlum, i n; Mycosolōnum, i, n; Oxycyclosōlum, i n; Prednisolōnum, i n
-(a)zon-	Oxyzōnum i n	Cortisōnum, i n

	Sibazōnum, i n	Hydrocortisōnum, i n Dexamethasōnum, i n
<b>-benz-</b>	benzoas, ātis m Benzylpenicillīnum, i n	
<b>-bil-, -bili-</b>	Bilimīnum, i n	
<b>-bol-</b>	Phenobolīnum, i n	
<b>-cain-</b>	Benzocainum, i n Novocainum, i n	
<b>-camph-</b>	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphonium, i n	
<b>-card-</b>	Cardiamīnum, i n	
<b>-chol-, -chole-</b>	Allochōlum, i n Cholenzymum, i n	
<b>-chon-, -chondr-</b>	Chonsurīnum, i n Chondrolōnum, i n	
<b>-cid-</b>	Streptocīdum, i n	
<b>-cillin-</b>	Ampicillīnum, i n Benzylpenicillīnum, i n	Furacilīnum, i n
<b>-cor-, cord-</b>	Corvalōlum, i n Cordānum, i n	
<b>-cort- -cortic-</b>	Cortisōnum, i n Corticotropīnum, i n	
<b>-cyan-</b>	cyanīdum, i n; Cyanocobalamīnum, i n	
<b>-cycl(o)-</b>	Cyclobarbitālum, i n Cyclopentālum, i n	
<b>-cyclin-</b>	Tetracyclīnum, i n Oxytetracyclīnum, i n	
<b>-cyst-</b>	Cystamīnum, i n	
<b>-cyt-</b>	Cytarabīnum, i n Cytochrōmum, i n	
<b>-digi-, digit-</b>	Digitōnum, i n Digitoxīnum, i n	
<b>-dol-</b>	Panadolūm, i n	
<b>-dorm-</b>	Novidormum, i n	
<b>-emes-, -emet-</b>	Emesēnum, i n Emetisānum, i n	
<b>-enter-</b>	Enterosorbentum, i n	
<b>-en(zym)- -en(zyn)-, -en(zy)-</b>	Solizymum, i n Panzynormum, i n Enzystalum, i n	
<b>-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-</b>	Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n	
<b>-ery- -erythr- -eryth-, -rythr-</b>	Erycyclīnum, i n Erythrānum, i n Erythrocyclīnum, i n Clarythromycīnum, i n	
<b>-febr-</b>	Febrinīlum, i n	
<b>-form-</b>	Formalīnum, i n Iodoformium, i n	
<b>-fung-, -fungi-, -fungin-</b>	Myfungārum, i n Fungilīnum, i n Nitrafungīnum, I n	
<b>-fura-</b>	Furagīnum, i n	
<b>-gastr-</b>	Alugastrīnum, i n	
<b>-gēnus, a, um</b>	Haematogēnum, i n	

	oestrogēna, ōrum n	
<b>-gest-</b>	Progesterōnum, i n	
<b>-glyc(y)-</b>	Glycerīnum, i n Glycīnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f	
<b>-gnost-</b>	Bilignostum, i n	
<b>-haem-</b>	Haemodēsum, i n haemostaticus, a, um	
<b>-helm-, -helmin(t)-,</b>	Helmexum, i n Helmintoxum, i n	
<b>-hist(o)-, -hista-, -histi-</b>	Histodīlum, i n Histamīnum, i n Histimēnum, i n	
<b>-hydr-, -hyd-</b>	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydum, i n	
<b>-hypn-</b>	Hypnodormum, i n	
<b>-ichthy-</b>	Ichthyōlum, i n Ichthyosulfōlum, i n	
<b>-lax-</b>	Regulaxum, i n	
<b>-leuc-, -leuk-</b>	Leucogēnum, i n Leukerīnum, i n	
<b>-lys-, -lysin-</b>	Lysoformium, i n Cerebrolysīnum, i n	
<b>-lyt-, -lytin-, -lyticus, a, um</b>	Broncholytīnum, i n Spasmolytīnum, i n broncholyticus, a, um	
<b>-menth-</b>	Boromenthōlum, i n	
<b>-meth-</b>	Methacyclīnum, i n Methylēnum, i n	
<b>-morph-</b>	Aethylmorphīnum, i n	
<b>-muco-</b>	Mucosānum, i n	
<b>-my(o)-</b>	Myolastānum, i n	
<b>-myc(o)-</b>	Mycoseptīnum, i n Mycosolōnum, i n	Gramicidīnum, i n
<b>-mycin-</b>	Erythromycīnum, i n Synthomycīnum, i	
<b>-naphth-</b>	Naphthalānum, i n	
<b>-nause-, -nausi-</b>	Nauseālum, i n Anausīnum, i n	
<b>-neo-</b>	Neomycīnum, i n	
<b>-neuro-</b>	Neurolaxum, i n	
<b>-noct-, -nox-</b>	Eunoctīnum, i n Normanoxum, i n	
<b>-normo-</b>	Normodipīnum, i n	

## § 168. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the English:

1. Preparatum «Aesthocinum» habet analgetīcam et antitussīcam activitātem, efficit moderātam myotrōpam, spasmolytīcam et cholinolyticam actiōnem. 2. Remantadīnum, quod adhibētur pro curatiōne praecōci et prophylaxi grippi in periōdo epidemiae, producitur in forma tabulettārum pro adultis et infantibus. 3. Aērosōlum «Oxycyclosolum», in 70 millilitris cujus continētur 0,35 Oxytetracyclīni hydrochlorīdi et 0,1 Prednisolōni, conjungit actiōnem antibacteriālem Oxytetracyclīni cum effectibus antiphlogisticis et antiallergicis Prednisolōni.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into the Latin:

- 1) 0.025% strophanthin solutions for injections in ampoules on 1 ml 2) 10% ichthyosulfol ointment in jars on 25 g 3) sodium adenosintriphosphate solution 1% for injections 4) amorphous powder of dry adonise for tablets preparation 5) lyophilised cyclophosphan powder for injection solutions in phials 6) rectal suppositories and microenemata with platyphyllin hydrotartrate 7) mixture of 36 parts of ethylic spirit with 64 parts of water 8) methocamphon methylsulphate injections under skin and into muscles 9) mycoheptin tablets on 100 000 IU 10) synthomycine liniment 1% with novocain 0.5% 11) sodium para-aminosalicylate granules for injection for internal use in packets on 100 grams 12) ophthalmic films with fibrolysine on 400 000 IU 13) benzofucaïn diluted with 5% glucose solution 14) 4% methylprednisolon suspension for injections in ampoules on 2 ml.

**Dictionaries to the lesson 31**

**Latin–English vocabulary**

Aesthocinum, i n — aesthocin	moderātus, a, um — moderate
antiallergicus, a, um — antiallergic	myotrōpus, a, um — myotropic
antiphlogisticus, a, um — antiphlogistic	Oxycyclosōlum, i n — oxycyclosol
cholinolyticus, a, um — cholinolitic	periōdus, i f — period
conjungo, conjunxi, conjunctum, ěre 3 — to join	praecox, ōcis — early
effectus, us m — effect	Prednisolōnum, i n — prednisolon
grippus, i m — influenza	Remantadīnum, i n — remantadin

### English–Latin glossary

adenosintriphosphate — adenosintriphosphas, ātis m	methylprednisolon — Methylprednisolōnum, i n
adoniside — Adonisīdum, i n	methylsulphate — methylsulfas, ātis m
benzofucain — Benzofucaīnum, i n	microenema — microēnēma, ātis n
cyclophosphan — Cyclophosphānum, i n	mycoheptin — Mycoheptīnum, i n
ichthyosulfol — Ichthyosulfōlum, i n	para-aminosalicylate — para-aminosalicylas, ātis m
jar — olla, ae f	
methocamphon — Methocamphonium, i n	platyphylline — Platyphyllīnum, i n

## LESSON 32

# SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE WORD BUILDING ELEMENTS AND THEIR ORTHOGRAPHY (PART 2)

### § 169. The alphabet list of learnt word building elements, part 2

<b>-oestr-</b>	Octoestrōlum, i n	
<b>-onco-</b>	Oncocristīnum, i n	
<b>-oss-</b>	Fluossēnum, i n	
<b>-oste-</b>	Osteogenōnum, i n	
<b>-oxy-</b>	Oxygenium, i n peroxydum, i n	<b>Benzoylperoxīdum, i n</b> <b>Digitoxīnum, i n</b> <b>Pyridoxīnum, i n</b> <b>Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n</b> <b>Sulfadimethoxīnum, i n</b>
<b>-ozo-</b>	Ozokerafīnum, i n	
<b>-pan-</b> <b>-pancre-</b> <b>-pancreat-</b>	Panhexavītum, i n Pancreoflātum, i n Pancreatīnum, i n	
<b>-peps-</b> <b>-pept-</b>	Pepsidīlum, i n Peptorānum, i n	
<b>-phen-</b>	Phenobarbitālum, i n	
<b>-phosph-</b>	phosphas, ātis m	
<b>-phtha(l)-</b>	Phthazōlum, i n Phthalazōlum, i n	
<b>-phthor-</b>	Phthoracizīnum, i n	
<b>-phyll-</b>	Euphyllīnum, i n	
<b>-phyt-</b>	Phytoferōlum, i n	
<b>-platin-</b>	Carboplatīnum, i n	
<b>-poly-</b>	Polyamīnum, i n	

<b>-prosta-</b>	Prostaglandīnum, i n	
<b>-pur-</b>	Pursennīdum, i n	
<b>-purg-</b>	Purgēnum, i n	
<b>-py(o)-</b>	Pyocīdum, i n	
<b>-pyr-</b>	Amidopyrīnum, i n Pyromecaīnum, i n	<b>Aspirīnum, i n</b>

<b>-rheo-</b>	Rheoglumānum, i n Rheopolyglucīnum, i n	<b>Remantadīnum, i n Resorcīnum, i n Revītum, i n</b>
<b>-rhythm-</b> <b>-rhythm-</b>	Rhythmiodarōnum, i n Rythmodānum, i n	
<b>-rifa-</b>	Rifamycīnum, i n	
<b>-sed-</b>	Sedonālum, i n	
<b>-sen-,</b> <b>-senn-</b>	Senadexīnum, i n Antrasennīnum, i n	
<b>-sept-</b>	Pantoseptum, i n	
<b>-somm-</b>	Isomnium, i n	
<b>-spasm-</b>	Spasmalgōnum, i n	
<b>-spast-,</b> <b>-spastic-</b>	Spastīnum, i n antispastīcus, a, um	
<b>-stat-,</b> <b>-stati-</b>	Lovostatīnum, i n haemostatīcus, a, um	
<b>-ster-</b>	Testosterōnum, i n	
<b>-strept-</b>	Streptocīdum, i n	
<b>-stroph-</b>	Strophanthīnum, i n	
<b>-sulf(a)-</b>	Norsulfazōlum, i n	
<b>-test-</b>	Testoenātum, i n	
<b>-the(o)-</b>	Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n	<b>Terebinthīna, ae f</b> <b>Terrilytīnum, i n</b>
<b>-thi(o)-</b>	Thiopentālum-natrium, i n Thiamīnum, i n	<b>Tritīcum, i n;</b> words with the stressed second syllable <b>-ti-</b> from the word end ( <b>Rutīnum</b> ); words with the Latin root <b>-corti(c) - (Cortisōnum, i n ;</b> <b>Hydrocortisōnum, i n;</b> <b>Desoxycorticosterōnum, i n)</b>
<b>-thromb-</b>	Thrombīnum, i n	
<b>-thym-</b>	Thymalīnum, i n	
<b>-thyr(e)o-</b>	Rifathyroīnum, i n Thyreoidīnum, i n	
<b>-tranqui-,</b> <b>-tranquil-,</b> <b>-tranquill-</b>	Tranquisānum, i n Tranquīlum, i n Tranquillīnum, i n	
<b>-trips(īn)-,</b> <b>-ps(īn)-</b>	Tripsīnum, i n Chimopsīnum, i n	
<b>-trōpus, a, um</b>	myotrōpus, a, um	
<b>-tuss-</b>	Tussiglaucīnum, i n	
<b>-ulc-,</b> <b>-ulcer-</b>	Ulcosānum, i n Ulcerānum, i n	
<b>-uro-</b>	Urolesānum, i n	
<b>-val-,</b> <b>-vale-</b>	Valocormīdum, i n Cardiovalēnum, i n	
<b>-vas-</b>	Vasoprēnum, i n	

<b>-verm-</b>	Vermitoxum, i n	
<b>-vir-</b>	Acyclovīrum, i n	
<b>-vit-</b>	Hendevītum, i n	
<b>-yl-</b>	Aethylmorphīnum, i n Feracrŷlum, i n Paphencŷlum, i n Sulfacŷlum, i n Thrombotŷlum, i, n	Words with ending — <b>uracilum</b> <b>(Methyluracilum, i n</b> <b>Phthoruracilum, i n) ;</b> <b>Pepsidilum, i n</b>
<b>-zep-, zepam-</b>	Chlozepīdum, i n Nozepāmum, i n	

### § 170. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the sentences into the Latin:

1. As for chemical structure synoestrol differs from steroid estrogen preparations, but by the biological and curative properties it is similar to them. 2. Rythmodan or the other disopyramid has a negative inotropic effect and dimensions going potassium ions through cellular membranes. 3. Thrombotyl or the other phenylin is taken orally in view of prothrombin grad concentration in the blood and other coagulation agents. 4. Sulphadimethoxin belongs to sulphanilamide preparations of prolong action and relatively slowly is adsorbed into the gastrointestinal tract. 5. Phthazin (its synonym is phthaly- sulphapyridazin) is efficacious in treatment of hard forms of intestine infections with a complete intoxication of organism.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into the Latin:

1) erythromycin phosphate in 5% solution of glucose 2) recently prepared polyaethylenoxid solution 3) powder of crystal tripsin in hermetic corked up ampoules and phials 4) 10% oily phytomenadion solution in capsules 5) pyridoxalphosphate tablets on 0.01 and 0.02 grams 6) 0.025% ointment and liniment of synaflan 7) 0,1% naphthyzin solutions in tube-droppers on 1.5 ml 8) acelysin powder in little packets for solution for internal use on 0.2 gram 9) 10% sulphocamphocain solution for subcutaneous administration in cardiac and respiratory insufficiency 10) polyglucine solution with glucose for infusions 11) 15% polyvinylpyrrolidon solution for intraarticular induction 12) erythrophosphatide emulsion for intramuscular induction in ampoules on 5 ml 13) echinacea purple drops containing 80 ml of echinacea juice in 20% ethanol solution 14) phenoxymethylpenicillin granules in phials for suspension

### Dictionary to the lesson 32

to absorb — absorbeo, absorpsi, absorptum, ēre 2	packet — fascis, is m
acelysin — Acelysīnum, i n	phenoxymethylpenicillin — Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n
as for — quoad (+Acc.)	phenylin — Phenylinum. i n
biological — biologīcus, a, um	phthalylsulphapyridazin — Phthalylsulfapyridazīnum, i n
coagulation — coagulatio, ōnis f	phthazin — Phthazīnum, i n
complete — totus, a, um	phytomenadion – Phytomenadōnum, i n
concentration — concentratio, ōnis f	
curative — medicālis, e	

to dimension — deminuo, deminui, deminūtum, ěre 3	polyaethylenoxid — Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
disopyramid — Dysopyramīdum, i n	polyglucine — Polyglucinum, i n
echinacea — Echinacea, ae f	polyvinylpyrrolidon — Polyvinylpyrrolidōnum, i n
efficacious — efficax, ācis	prothrombin — Prothrombīnum, i n
erythrophosphatide — Erythrophosphatīdum, i n	purple — purpureus, a, um
ethanol — Aethanōlum, i n	pyridoxalphosphate — Pyridoxalphosphātum, i n
grade — gradus, us m	relatively — relatīve
hard — difficīlis, e	subcutaneous — subcutaneus, a, um
inotropic — inotropīcus, a, um	sulphadimethoxin — Sulfadimethoxīnum, i n
insufficiency — insufficientia, ae f	sulphanilamide — Sulfanilamīdum, i n
intraaricular — intraarticulāris, e	sulphocamphocain — Sulfocamphocaīnum, i n
in view of — ex ratiōne (ratio, ōnis f — view)	synaflan — Synaflānum, i n
ion — iōnum, i n	the other — alīter
intramuscular — intramusculāris, e	thrombotyl — Thrombotýlum, i n
naphthyzyn — Naphthyzīnum, i n	tube-dropper — tubūlus-guttātor, tubūli- guttatōris m
negative — negatīvus, a, um	
orally — per os	

## LESSON 33

# SYSTEMATIZATION OF SPECIAL SPELLING CASES IN THE PHARMACEUTICAL NOUNS

### § 171. Peculiarities of using letters «s», «z», «k»

There exists the problem of choosing letters «s» or «z» in the Latin variant of a term, because the letter «s» between vowels is pronounced similar to «z».

That is why every student is suggested to make the whole list of terms which include elements **sal/zal, san/ zan, sid/zid, sil/zil, sin/zin, sim/ zym, sol/zol, son/zon** with the aim to determine some regularities in using «s» or «z» :

Oxyzōnum — but: Cortisōnum

Phthivazīdum — but: Adonisīdum

Orāzum — but: Penicillināsum etc.

One should also know all the words in which the Latin letter «к» is used instead the letter «с»:

brikētum, Kalanchoë, Kalium, Kanamycīnum, Ozokerafinum, Ozokeralīnum, Vikasōlum.

### § 172. Vowel and consonant combinations which are not considered to belong to the word building elements

It is very useful to fix in mind words in which a difficult orthographically letter combination is met once only:

**laev** — Laevomycetīnum

**platy** — Platyphyllīnum

**phthi** — Phthivazīdum

**-ae-**: adhaesīvus, Aestifānum, Althaea, Crataegus, idaeus, praecipitātus, praeparātum, Praegoestrōlum, Praegnīnum

**-oe-**: coeruleus, Foenicūlum, oenanthas, Testoenātum

**-y-**: Amygdāla, cylindrīcus, etacrynīcus, Eucalyptus, Hydrargyrum, Hyoscīnum, Hyoscyāmus, Lydāsum, lyophilisātus, Naphthyzīnum, Nystatīnum, Physostigmīnum, stylus

**-ph-**: lyophilisātus, Phthivazīdum, Physostigmīnum, Tocopherōlum

**-rh-**: antihaemorrhoidālis, Glycyrrhīza, Rheum, rhizōma

**-th-**: Absinthium, Althaea, Bismūthum, pantothēnas, Phthorothānum, Synthomycīnum, Terebinthīna, therapeutīcus, Thermopsis.

It is useful to remember words with a double consonant: Coffeīnum, Naphthammōnum, raffinātus, Tannīnum.

It is also useful to remember that from the all words with ending — **ferōlum** (Ergocalciferōlum, Phytoferōlum etc.) the only noun **Tocopherōlum** differs with its ending -**pherōlum**.

If the word building element **-oxy-** meets in the second syllable from the end of a word suffixes **-īn-** and **-īd-**, then its vowel «y» is transformed into «ī»: **Benzoylperoxīdum, Digitoxīnum**.

The ending «**at**» in drug names is to be differ from this ending in anion names, compare:

nitras, ātis m – nitrate sulfas, ātis m - sulphate, but:

Cerebrolysātum, i n – cerebrolysat

Pyridoxalphosphātum, i n – pyridoxalphosphate

Testoenātum, i n – testoenat

The element **-at-** occurs also in common names indicating some medicinal substances originating from the Latin participles of past tense:

granulātum, i n < granulātus, a, um granulated

concentrātum, i n < concentrātus, a, um concentrated

lyophilisātum, i n < lyophilisātus, a, um lyophilised

### § 173. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into the Latin:

1. Along with 0.25 % aqueous scopolamine solution the prolonged preparation 0.25% scopolamine hydrobromide solution with methylcellulose is used which is produced in phials on 5 and 10 ml. 2. Phthivazid is a yellow small-crystal powder with a slight smell of vanillin and without taste which is diluted in water very hard, very slightly in spirit, and lightly in the non organic acids and alkalis. 3. Phthorothan is a colorless, transparent, mobile and volatile liquid with chloroform smell, sweet and burning taste, which is used for narcosis in a mixture with oxygen and air. 4. Platyphyllin is administered in form of platyphyllin hydrotartrate for internal, subcutaneous and rectal use in form of tablets on 0.005 gram, 0.2 % solution in ampoules on 1ml and rectal suppositories on 0.01gram.

2. Give the dictionary form and translate the terms into the Latin:

1) compound turpentine oil liniment for triturating 2) solutions of caffeine sodium benzoate in syringe-tubes on 1 ml 3) methuracil ointment in tubes on 80 grams 4) granulated powder of the mixture of dry immortelle extract with milk sugar 5) oily and spirituous ergocalciferol solutions 6) bethovenium hydroxynaphthoate or naphthammon in coated tablets 7) tablets of lithium oxyburate and testosterone oenanthate 8) ophthalmic laevomyctin drops in phials on 5 and 10 ml 9) carminative (bitter, pectoral, stomachic, cholagogue, diuretic, polyvitaminous, antihemorrhoidal, laxative) species 10) pyridoxalphosphate lyophilised powder for injection solutions in ampoules on 0.005 or 0.01 grams 11) ointment with physostigmine salicylate for keratitis treatment

### Dictionary to the lesson 33

along with – juxta (+Dat.)	naphthammon – Naphthammōnum, i n
bitter – amārus, a, um	phthivazid – Phthivazīdum, i n
bethovenium – Bethovenium, i n	phthorothan – Phthorothānum, i n
burning – urens, ntis	physostigmine – Physostigmīnum, i n
colorless – decolor, ōris	pyridoxalphosphate – Pyridoxalphosphātum, i n
ergocalciferol – Ergocalciferolum, i n	
granulated – granulātus, a, um	polyvitaminous – polyvitaminōsus, a, um
hydrobromide – hydrobromīdum, i n	scopolamine – Scopolamīnum, i n
hydroxynaphthoate – hydroxynaphthoas, ātis m	small - crystal – microcrystallīnus, a, um

immortelle – Helichrysum, i n	smell – odor, ōris m
keratitis, inflammation of cornea – keratītis, itīdis f	syringe-tube – spritz-tubūlus, i m
	transparent – perspicuus, a, um
lightly– facīle	tritulating – trituriatio, ōnis f
	turpentine – Terebinthīna, ae f
methylcellulose – Methylcellulōsum, i n	vanillin – Vanilīnum, i n
	very hard – difficillīme
methyluracyl – Methuluracylum, i n	very slightly – levissīme
mobile – mobīlis, e	volatile – volatīlis, e

## /A

- Absinthium, i n** wormwood  
**absorbeo, absorpsi, absorptum,**  
**ēre 2** to absorb  
**accēdo, accessi, accessum, ěre 3** to come (in)  
**acceptus, a, um** received  
**accipio, accēpi, acceptum, ěre 3**  
 to get  
**acetylsalicylicus, a, um** acetylsalicylic  
**aciditas, ātis f** acidity  
**acidum, i n** acid  
**actio, ōnis f** effect  
**activātus, a, um** activated  
**Acyclovīrum, i n** acyclovir  
**ad (+Acc.)** in  
**additio, ōnis f** addition  
**addo, addīdi, addītum ěre 3** to add  
**adenosintriphosphas, ātis m**  
 adenosintriphosphate  
**adeps (īpis m) suillus (a, um)** lard  
**adhibeo, adhibui, adhibītum, ěre 2** to use  
**adjunctus, a, um (effectus)** side (effect)  
**adjūvo, adjūvi, adjūtum, āre 1**  
 to promote  
**Adonis, īdis m, f** adonis, pheasant's eye  
**Adonis (īdis m, f) vernālis (e)** spring adonis  
**aegrōtus, i m** patient  
**aequālis** equal  
**Aesthocīnum, i n** aesthocin  
**aether, ěris m** ether  
**aethereus, a, um** etheric  
**aethylicus a, um** ethylic  
**albus, a, um** white  
**alcaloīdum, i n** alkaloid  
**alius, a, ud** other  
**Almagēlum, i n** almagel  
**Aloë, ěs f** aloe  
**alternis diēbus** each second day, every other day  
**alternus, a, um** acting in turn  
**Althaea, ae f** march-mallow, sweatweed  
**Aluminium, i n** aluminium  
**amārus, a, um** bitter  
**Ambroxōlum, i n** ambroxol  
**aminoacidum, i n** amino acid  
**Ammonium, i n** ammonium  
**ampulla, ae f** ampoule  
**Amygdāla, ae f** almond (fruit)  
**Amylium, i n** amyli  
**ana** of each  
**Anaesthesōlum, i n** anaesthesol  
**analgesic** analgeticus, a, um  
**analgeticus, a, um** analgesic  
**Analginum, i, n** analgin  
**analogicus, a, um** analogous  
**analýsis, is f** analysis  
**anhydricus, a, um** anhydrous  
**anīmal, ālis n** animal  
**Anīsum, i n** anise  
**antacidum, i n** antacid  
**antacidus, a, um** antacid  
**antepōno, anteposui, antepositum,**  
**ěre 3** to prefer  
**antiallergicus, a, um** aniallergic  
**antiasthmaticus, a, um** antiasthmatic  
**antibacteriālis, e** antibacterial  
**anticoagulans, ntis** anticoagulant  
**anticoagulantum, i n** anticoagulant  
**antidōtum, i n** antidote  
**antihaemorrhoidālis, e**  
 antihaemorrhoidal  
**antihistaminicus, a, um** antihista-  
 minic  
**antiphlogisticus, a, um** antiphlogistic  
**antitetanicus, a, um** antitetanic,  
 relaxing muscular contraction  
 in tetanus  
**antitussicus, a, um** antitussive  
**Apomorphīnum, i n** apomorphin  
**aquōsus, a, um** aqueous  
**arbor, ōris f** tree  
**arteriālis, e** arterial  
**articulatio, ōnis f** joint  
**Asellus, i m** cod  
**aspersio, ōnis f** aspersion  
**Aspirīnum, i n** aspirin  
**assūmo, assumpsi, assumptum,**

ēre 3 to take in  
**assumptio, ōnis f** reception, intake  
**Atropīnum, i n** atropine  
**augeo, auxi, auctum, ēre 2** to raise  
**aurarius, a, um** golden

## B

**bacca, ae f** berry  
**bacilliformis, e** bacilliform  
**bacillus, i m** bacillus  
**balsamicus, a, um** balsamic  
**balsānum, i n** balsam  
**Belladonna, ae f** belladonna  
**benzoas, ātis m** benzoate  
**Benzylum, i n** benzyl  
**Benzylpenicillīnum-natrium i n**  
benzylpenicillin sodium  
**Berbēris, īdis f** barberry  
**Betūla, ae f** birch  
**bibo, bibi, -, ēre 3** to drink  
**bis** twice  
**bisulfas, ātis m** bisulphate  
**bolus, i f** 1) bolus, a large pill by  
weight of 0,5 g 2) clay  
**Bromisovālum, i n** bromisoval  
**bronchītis, itīdis f** bronchitis, inflam-  
mation of bronchi  
**bucca, ae f** cheek  
**Bursa (ae f) pastōris (ōris m)** shepherd's purse

## C

**Cacāo (indecl.)** cocoa  
**Capsicum, i n** pepper  
**capsūla, ae f ae f** capsule  
**carbo, ōnis m** coal  
**carbōnas, ātis m** carbonate  
**Carboneum, i n** carbon  
**cardinālis, e** basic  
**causticus, a, um** caustic  
**celer, ēris, ēre** fast, quick, rapid  
**centum** hundred  
**ceriformis, e** cereous  
**Cestōda, ōrum n** Cestoda,  
the typical tapeworms, a subclass  
of the Cestoidea  
**Chamomilla, ae f** chamomile

**Chinīnum, i n** quinine  
**Chloroformium, i n** chloroform  
**Cholecalciferōlum, i n** cholecalciferol  
**cholinolyticus, a, um** cholinolytic  
**chronicus, a, um** chronic  
**cibus, i m** meal  
**cito** quickly  
**citricus, a, um** citric  
**clyσμα, ātis n** enema, clyster  
**coeruleus, a, um** blue  
**Coffeinum, i n** caffeine  
**Coffeīnum-natrii, Coffeīni-natrii n**  
caffeine sodium  
**Coffeīnum-natrii benzos, Coffeīni-**  
**natrii benzoātis m** – caffeine  
sodium benzoate  
**colītis, itīdis f** colitis, inflammation  
of colon  
**collagenicus a, um** collagenic  
**Collargōlum, i n** collargol  
**colligo, collēgi, collectum, ēre 3**  
to collect, to gather  
**color, ōris m** color  
**combustio, ōnis f** combustion  
**comīto, āvi, ātum, āre 1**  
to accompany  
**commendo, āvi, ātum, āre 1**  
to recommend  
**comparatio, ōnis f** comparison  
**complēte** completely  
**complicatio, ōnis f** complication  
**compositus, a, um** compound  
**concentrātus, a, um** concentrated  
**concretio, ōnis f** concretion  
**conficio, confēci, confectum,**  
ēre 3 to produce  
**congelatio, ōnis f** freezing, frost-bite  
**conjungo, conjunxi, conjunctum ēre 3**  
to join  
**conservantum, i n** preservative  
**constringens, entis** constringent  
**contagiōsus, a, um** contagious  
**contemporaneus, a, um** modern  
**contineo, continui, contentum,**

**ēre 2** to contain  
**contra (+ Acc.) 1)** against 2) for (a disease)  
**Convallaria, ae f** lily of the valley  
**Cordigītum, i n** cordigit  
**Coriandrum, i n** coriander  
**cortex, ĩcis m** bark  
**critĭcus, a, um** critical  
**crystallisātus, a, um** crystalline  
**Cucurbĭta, ae f** pumpkin  
**Cucurbĭta major** winter squash  
**cum (+Abl.)** with  
**curatio, ōnis f** treatment  
**curo, āvi, ātum, āre 1** to treat  
**cutis, is f** skin  
**cyanĭdum, i n** cyanide  
**Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n** cyanocobalamin  
**Cysteĭnum, i n** cystein  
**Cytisĭnum, i n** cytisin

## D

**decigramma, ātis n** decigram  
**decoctum, i n** decoction  
**dedūco, deduxi, deductum, ěre 3** to take out  
**deinde** then  
**deminutio, ōnis f** diminution  
**dens, dentis m** tooth  
**densĭtas, ātis f** density  
**depurātus, a, um** purified  
**destillātus, a, um** distilled  
**destruo, destruxi, destructum, ěre 3** to destroy  
**dies, ěi m, f** day  
**Digitālis, is f** foxglove  
**Dimedrŏlum, i n** dimedrol  
**dimidium, i n** half  
**dioĭcus, a, um** stinking (nettle)  
**directus, a, um** direct  
**distinguo, distinxi, distinctum, ěre 3**  
 to distinguish  
**do, dedi, datum, are 1** to give  
**domestĭcus, a, um** domestic  
**dosis, is f** dose  
**duo, duae, duo** two

## E

**effectus, us m** effect  
**efficax, ācis** effective  
**efficĕre actiŏnem** to take effect  
**elicio, elicui, elicĭtum, ěre 3** to extract  
**emo, empsi, emptum, ěre 3** to buy  
**emulsum, i n** emulsion  
**endospŏra, ae f** endospore  
**enterosorbentum, i n** enterosorbent  
**epidemia, ae f** epidemy  
**Ergocalciferŏlum, i n** ergocalciferol  
**essentia, ae f** essence  
**et** and  
**Eucalyptus, i f** eucalyptus  
**Euphyllĭnum, i n** euphylline  
**evocatio, ōnis f (any food from the stomach)** removal  
**ex (+Abl.)** from  
**ex tempŏre** in case of need  
**exemplum, i n** example  
**exempli gratia (e.g.)** for example  
**exprĭmo, expressi, expressum, ěre 3**  
 to squeeze out  
**exsiccātus, a, um** dried  
**exsicco, āvi, ātum, āre 1** to dry  
**extractum, i n** extraction

## F

**fascia, ae f** bandage  
**Feracrĭlum, i n** feracryl  
**Ferrum, i n** iron  
**fĭo, fĭĕri** to get  
**florescentia, ae f** flowering  
**fluĭdus, a, um** liquid  
**Foenicŭlum, i n (medicinal)** fennel  
**folium, i n** leaf  
**forma, ae f** form  
**Formaldehĭdum, i n** formaldehyde  
**Formalĭnum, i n** formalin  
**formatio, ōnis f** formation  
**formo, āvi, ātum, āre 1** to form  
**fragĭlis, e** brittle  
**Frangŭla, ae f** buckhorn  
**frigĭdus, a, um** cold  
**fructus, us m** fruit  
**fungicĭdum, i n** fungicide

**Fungilīnum, i n** fungilin  
**fungus, i m** fungus  
**Furacilīnum, i n** furacilin

## G

**Galanthamīnum, i n** galanthamine  
**Galanthus, i m** snowdrop  
**Galanthus** Woronōwi, Woronow's snowdrop  
**gargarisma, ātis n** gargle  
**gaster, tris f** stomach  
**gastrīcus, a, um** gastric  
**gastrointestinālis, e** gastrointestinal  
**gelatinōsus, a, um** gelatinous  
**gelum, i n** gel  
**genus, ěris n** genus  
**Ginseng (indecl.)** ginseng  
**glycerinōsus, a, um** glyceric  
**glycosīdum, i n** glycoside  
**Glycyrrhiza, ae f** licorice  
**gossypium, i n** cotton wool  
**Graecus, a, um** Greek  
**grippus, i m** influenza  
**gutta, ae f** drop

## H

**habeo, habui, habītum, ěre 2** to have  
**hepar, ātis n** liver  
**Heparīnum, i n** heparin  
**herba, ae f** herb  
**hic, haec, hoc** this  
**Hippophaë, ěs f** sea buckhorn  
**hirudo, ĩnis f** leech  
**homo, ĩnis m** a men  
**hydrochlorīcus, a, um** hydrochloric  
**hydrochlorīdum, i n** hydrochloride  
**hydrocyanīcus, a, um** hydrocyanic  
**Hydrogenium, i n** hydrogen  
**hydroxĭdum, i n** hydroxide  
**Hyoscyāmus, i m** henbane  
**hypertensio, ōnis f** hypertension  
**hypnotīcus, a, um** hypnotic, soporific  
**hypoxia, ae f** hypoxia, an insufficient supply of O<sub>2</sub> to the tissues

## I

**idaeus, a, um** belonging to mountain  
Ida in west-north of the Turkey  
**immunocorrector, ōris m** immuno-  
corrector  
**immunodeficientia, ae f** immunodeficiency  
**immunomodulātor, ōris m** immunomodulator  
**impōno, imposui, imposītum, ěre 3**  
(+ **Dat.**) to apply, to put on  
**imposītus, a, um** put on  
**in (+ Abl.)** in  
**in die** daily  
**inclūdo, inclūsi, inclusum, ěre 3**  
to include  
**infans, ntis m, f** child  
**infūsum, i n** infusion  
**inhalatio, ōnis f** inhalation  
**injectabilis, e** for injections  
**insolubīlis, e** insoluble  
**insomnia, ae f** insomnia  
**inter (+Acc.)** among, between  
**interdum** sometimes  
**intoxicatio, ōnis f** intoxication  
**intramusculāris, e** intramuscular  
**introdūco, introduxi, introductum,**  
**ěre 3** to induce into  
**inunctio, ōnis f** a medicine to  
be rubbed in  
**irritans, ntis** irritant  
**is, ea, id** that  
**insolubīlis, e** insoluble  
**intoxicatio, ōnis f** intoxication

## J

**jecur, ōris n** liver (of fishes)  
**juvo, juvi, jutum, āre 1 (+Acc.)**  
to promote

## K

**Kalanchoë, ěs f** kalanchoe  
**Kanamycīnum, i n** kanamycin

## L

**laesus, a, um** damaged, hurted  
**lagēna, ae f** bottle  
**Lanolīnum, i n** lanolin

late wide, widely  
**Latīnus, a, um** Latin  
**laxatīvus, a, um** laxative  
**Leonūrus, i, m** motherwort  
**Leucogēnum, i, n** leucogen  
**leucopoēsis, is, f** leucocytopoiesis,  
 formation of leucocytes  
**lingua, ae, f** tongue  
**linimentum, i, n** liniment  
**Linimentum Wischnevsky**  
 Wischnevsky liniment  
**liquidus, a, um** liquid (tar)  
**localis, e** local  
**locus, i, m** place

### M

**major, majus** greater, major  
**mappūla, ae, f** napkin  
**massa, ae, f** mass  
**materia, ae, f** matter, substance  
**medicamentum, i, n** drug  
**medicinālis, e** medical  
**medicus, i, m** doctor  
**melius** better  
**membranūla, ae, f** film  
**Methyldōpha, ae, f** methyldopa  
**Methylēnum, i, n** methylen  
**Methylium, i, n** methyl  
**Methyluracilum, i, n** methyluracil  
**Mezȳmum-forte, Mezȳmi-forte, n**  
 mezȳm-forte  
**microbīcus, a, um** microbic  
**microbiologia, ae, f** microbiology  
**microorganismus, i, m** microorganism  
**Millefolium, i, n** milfoil  
**minerālis, e** mineral  
**minuo, minui, minūtum, ěre 3**  
 to decrease, to diminish  
**mixtio, ōnis, f** mixture  
**mixtura, ae, f** mixture  
**Mixtura Trascōvi** Trascov's mixture  
**mixtus, a, um** mixed  
**moderātus, a, um** moderate  
**monoxȳdum, i, n** monoxide  
**Mucosānum, i, n** mucosan

**multus, a, um** many, numerous  
**Myorelaxīnum, i, n** myorelaxin  
**myotrōpus, a, um** myotropic  
**Myrtillus, i, m** blueberry

### N

**Natrium, i, n** sodium  
**naturālis, e** natural  
**necessarius, a, um** necessary  
**necrotisātus, a, um** necrotic  
**nitras, ātis, m** nitrate  
**nitris, ītis, m** nitrite  
**nomen, ĩnis, n** name  
**nonnullus, a, um** some  
**Norfloxacīnum, i, n** norfoxacin  
**noster, tra, trum** our  
**notus, a, um** known  
**nox, noctis, f** night  
**numerāle, is, n** numeral  
**numērus, i, m** number

### O

**obductus, a, um** coated  
**Oblecōlum, i, n** oblecol  
**obturātus, a, um** closed  
**obvolvens, ntis** enveloping  
**oculogutta, ae, f** drop for eyes  
**odor, ōris, m** odor, smell  
**oenanthas, ātis, m** oenanthate  
**Oestradiolum, i, n** oestradiol  
**offa, ae, f** piece  
**officīna, ae, f** a chemist's; drugstore  
**officinālis, e** officinal  
**oleōsus, a, um** oily  
**oleum, i, n** oil  
**Oleum Amygdalārum** almond oil  
**Oleum Persicōrum** peach oil  
**Oleum Ricīni** castor oil  
**Oleum Olivārum** olive oil  
**oligotoxīcus, um** of low toxicity  
**Olīva, ae, f** olive  
**organismus, i, m** organism  
**orīgo, ĩnis, f** origin  
**os, oris, n** mouth  
**os, ossis, n** bone  
**Osteogenōnum, i, n** osteogenon

**osteoporōsis, is f** osteoporosis  
**otogutta, ae f** drop for ears  
**Oxycoccus, i m** cranberry  
**Oxycyclosolum, i n** oxycyclosol  
**Oxygenium, i n** oxygen  
**Oxytetracyclīnum, i n** oxytetracyclin  
**Ozokeritum, i n** ozokerite

## P

**Pancreatīnum, i n** pancreatin  
**pantothēnas, ātis m** pantothenate  
**Papāver, ěris n** poppy  
**Papaverīnum, i n** papaverin  
**Paracetamolum, i n** paracetamol  
**Paraffinum, i n** paraffin  
**parasitīcus, a, um** parasitical  
**paro, āvi, ātum, āre 1** to prepare  
**passim** everywhere  
**Pepsīnum, i n** pepsin  
**per** 1) during, per 2) through  
3) by means of, via  
**per se** in natural state, non purified  
**pericūlum, i n** danger, risk  
**periōdus, i f** period  
**permutatio, ōnis f** exchange  
**Persicum, i n** peach (fruit)  
**pertussis, is f** pertussis  
**pharmacologīcus, a, um** pharmacologic  
**pharmacopōla, ae m** pharmacist  
**Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n**  
phenoxymethylpenicillin  
**Phenylum, i n** phenyl  
**phthorīdum, i n** phthoride  
**pilūla, ae f** pill  
**pinguis, e** fat  
**Pinus, i f** pine  
**pix, picis f** resin  
**pix, picis f (liquīda)** pitch  
**Pix liquīda** tar  
**planta, ae f** plant  
**Plantaglucīdum, i n** plantaglicid  
**Plantāgo, ĩnis f** plantain  
**Plantāgo major** common plantain  
**Polysorbum, i n** polysorb

**potest** can, is able  
**practīce** practically  
**praecox, ōcis** early  
**praeparātum, in** preparation  
**praeparātus, a, um** prepared  
**praepāro, āvi, ātum, āre 1** to prepare  
**praescrībo, praescrīpsi, praescrīp-**  
**tum, ěre 3** to prescribe  
**praescriptum, i n** instruction  
**pratun, i n** meadow  
**Prednisolōnum, i n** prednisolon  
**pretiōsus, a, um** valuable  
**Primūla, ae f** primrose  
**primus, a, um** first  
**pro (+ Abl.)** for  
**prodūco, produxi, productun, ěre 3**  
to produce  
**profundus, a, um** deep  
**prophylaxis, is f** prophylaxis  
**propiōnas, ātis m** propionate  
**proteīnum, i n** protein  
**provenio, provēni, proventum, ĩre 4**  
to meet  
**provōco, āvi, ātum, āre 1** to cause  
**puer, ěri m** boy  
**pulvis, ěris m** powder  
**purgatio, ōnis f** cleaning, purification  
**Pursennīdum, i n** pursennid  
**purus, a, um** pure  
**Pyocīdum, i n** pyocid  
**Pyriditolum, i n** pyriditol

## Q

**quantitas, ātis f** amount, quantity  
**quantum satis** the amount needed  
(= in sufficient amount =  
as much as suffices)  
**quarter** four times  
**Quercus, us f** oak  
**qui, quae, quod** which  
**quindēcim** fifteen  
**quinque** five  
**quotidie** every day

## R

**Rauwolfia**, ae rauwolfia  
**recens**, ntis fresh  
**recipio**, recēpi, **receptum**, ěre 3 to take  
**regeneratio**, ōnis f regeneration  
**regio**, ōnis f region  
**Remantadīnum**, i n remantadin  
**remedium**, i n medicine  
**remōtio**, ōnis f removal  
**remotus**, a, um remote  
**res**, rei f matter, thing  
**res rudes** raw materials  
**retro** (+ Acc.) behind  
**Rheopyrīnum**, i n rheopyrin  
**Ricīnus**, i m castor oil plant  
**Oleum Ricīni** castor oil  
**Rubus**, i m blackberry

### S

**Sacchārum**, i n sugar  
**saepe** frequently, often  
**salicylas**, ātis m salicylate  
**Salvia**, ae f sage  
**sanatio**, ōnis f healing  
**sanguis**, ĩnis m blood  
**sapo**, ōnis m soap  
**Sarcolysin**, i n sarcolysin  
**scabies**, ēi f scabies, itch  
**secundum** (+Acc.) according  
**semel** once  
**semen**, ĩnis n seed  
**seminālis**, e seminal  
**Senna**, ae f senna  
**septīmus**, a, um seventh  
**Septocīdum**, i n septocide  
**serpentīnus**, a, um serpent like  
**serum**, i n serum  
**servo**, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to keep  
**seu** or  
**siccus**, a, um dry  
**significo**, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to signify  
**signo**, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to label,  
to write on the label  
**silvester**, tris, tre forest

**sirūpus**, i m syrup

**solutio**, ōnis f solution  
**Solutio Ammonii caustīci**  
spirit of ammonia  
**Somnibrōmum**, i n somnibrom  
**somnīter**, ěra, ěrum soporific  
**somnum**, i n sleep  
**Spasmolytīnum**, i n spasmolytin  
**spasmolyticus**, a, um spasmolytic  
**species**, ēi f species (in biology)  
**species**, ěrum f species  
(in pharmaceuticals)  
**specificus**, a, um specific  
**stella**, ae f star  
**sterīlis**, e sterile  
**sterilisātus**, a, um sterilized  
**sterilīso**, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to sterilize  
**stimulātor**, ōris m stimulator  
**stimūlo**, āvi, ātum, āre 1 to stimulate  
**stomachīcus**, a, um stomachic  
**stomatologīcus**, a, um stomatologic  
**Stramonium** i n thorn apple  
**stratum**, a, um layer  
**Streptocīdum**, i n streptocid  
**sub** (+Abl.) 1. during 2. under  
**succus**, i m juice  
**such** talis, e  
**suillus**, a, um of pork  
**sulfas**, ātis m sulphate  
**sulfidum** i n sulphide  
**Sulfur**, ūris n sulphur  
**sum**, fui, esse to be  
**sumo**, sumpsi, **sumptum**, ěre 3  
to take in  
**Suprastīnum**, i n suprastin  
**syntheticus**, a, um synthetic  
**Synthomycīum**, i n synthomycin

### T

**tabuleta**, ae f tablet  
**tempus**, ōris n time (ex tempore – in  
case of need)  
**tenuis**, e thin  
**ter** three times, thrice  
**Terebinthīna**, ae f turpentine

**Terrilytīnum, i n** terrilytin  
**Testoenatum, i n** testoenat  
**Testosterōnum, i n** testosterone  
**Testosterōnum-depot,**  
    **Testosterōni-depo n**  
    testosterone-depot  
**Testosterōnum-retard,**  
    **Testosterōni-retard n**  
    testosterone-retard  
**Tetracyclīnum, i n** tetracycline  
**textus, us m** tissue  
**therapeutīcus, a, um** therapeutic  
**Thermopsis, ĩdis f** thermopsis  
**Thromboliquīnum, i n** thromboliquin  
**tinctūra, ae f** tincture  
**toxīcus, a, um** toxic  
**tractus, us m** tract  
**trado, tradīdi, tradītum, ěre 3**  
    to communicate (a disease)  
**translator, ōris m** carrier  
**triginta** thirty  
**Trypsīnum, i n** trypsin  
**tuber, ěris n** tuber  
**tubūla, ae f** tube  
**turio, ōnis m** bud (of pine)  
**tussis, is f** cough

**Ulcerānum, i n** ulceran  
**ulcerōsus, a, um** ulcerous  
**umectātus, a, um** weted  
**unguentum, i n** ointment  
**unus, a, um** one  
**usus, us m** usage, use  
**utilis, e** useful

#### V

**valde** greatly  
**Validōlum, i n** validol  
**varius, a, um** various  
**vas, vasis n** vessel  
**Vaselīnum, i n** vaseline  
**Vasoprēnum, i n** vasopren  
**vipĕra, ae f** viper  
**virīdis, e** green  
**vegetabilis, e** vegetable  
**vena, ae f** vein  
**venenātus, a, um** poisonous  
**vitrum, i n** phial  
**vomīcus, a, um** vomitive  
**vulgāris, e** common  
**vulnus, ěris n** wound

#### X

**Xeroformium, i n** xeroform

## /A

**to absorb** absorbeo, absorpsi, absorptum, ěre 2

**acelysin** Acelysīnum, i n

**acetate** acētas, ātis m

**acetylsalicylic** acetylsalicylīcus, a, um

**acid** acīdum, i n

**acidic** acīdus, a, um

**actinomyces** actinomýces, ětis m

**to act** ago, egi, actum, ěre 3

**activated** activātus, a, um

**activities** activītas, ātis f

**activity** activītas, ātis f

**acute** acūtus, a, um

**acyclovir** Acyclovīrum, i n

**to add** addo, addīdi, addītum, ěre 3

**adenosintriphosphate**

adenosintriphosphas, ātis m

**to administer** assūmo, assumpsi, assumptum, ěre 3

**adonise** Adonisīdum, i n

**adrenalin** Adrenalīnum, i n

**adrenocorticotropic** adrenocorticotropīcus, a. um

**adult** adultus, i m

**aerosol** aērosōlum, i n

**aesthocin** Aesthocīnum, i n

**affected** laesus, a, um

**after** post (+Acc.)

**agent** agens, ntis m

**all** omnis, e

**allergic** allergīcus, a, um

**allergy, heightened reactivity to an allergen** allergia, ae f

**allochol** Allochōlum, i n

**almond** (fruit) Amygdāla, ae f

**alodor** Alodōrum, i n

**aloe** Aloë, ěs f

**always** semper

**aminazin** Aminazīnum, i n

**ammoniac and anise fluid** Liquor Ammonii anisātus (**ammoniac** Ammonium, i n **anise** anisātus, a, um; **fluid** liquor, ōris m)

**amorolfin** Amorolfinum, i n

**amorphous** amorphus, a, um

**amount (anything countable)** numērus, i m

**amount** quantītas, ātis f

(**in sufficient amount** quantum satis)

**ampicillin** Ampicillīnum, i n

**ampoule** ampulla, ae f

**amyl** Amylium, i n

**analgesic** analgetīcus, a, um

**analgin** Analgīnum, i n

**analogue** analōgus, i m

**and** et

**anesthesin** Anaesthesīnum, i n  
**anesthesol** Anaesthesōlum, i n  
**angiopril** Angiopriļum, i n  
**angisem** Angisēmum, i n  
**anhydrous** anhydricus, a, um  
**animal** aņmal, ālis n  
**anthelminthic** antihelminthicus, a, um  
**antiasthmatic** antiasthmaticus, a, um  
**antibiotic** antibioticum, i n  
**anticoagulant** anticoahūlans, ntis  
**antiemetic** antivomicus, a, um  
**anti-inflammatory** antiphlogisticus, a, um  
**antihistaminic** antihistaminicus, a, um  
**antipyridin** Antipyridinum, i n  
**antirabic** antirabicus, a, um  
**antiseptic** antisepticum, i n  
**antistrumin** Antistrumīnum, i n  
**antitussive** antitussivus, a, um  
**anxiolytic** anxiolyticus, a, um  
**application** applicatio, ōnis f  
**to apply** impōno, imposui, impositum, ěre 3(+Dat.)  
**approximately** circiter  
**apressin** Apressīnum, i n  
**aqueous** aquōsus, a, um  
**arsenite** arsēnis, itis m  
**arsenous** arsenicōsus, a, um

**as** ut  
**aseptically** asepticę  
**as for** quoad (+Acc.)  
**as much as suffices** quantum satis  
**ascorbic** ascorbinicus, a, um  
**aspirin** Aspirīnum, i n  
**asthma** asthma, ātis n

## B

**bag (a little one)** saccūlus, i m  
**bandage** fascia, ae f  
**bark** cortex, icis m  
**basic** cardinālis, e, principālis, e  
**basic acetate** subacētas, ātis m  
**basic nitrate** subnitras, ātis m  
**bath** balneum, i n  
**before** ante (+Acc.)  
**belladonna** Belladonna, ae f  
**bellasthesin** Bellasthesīnum, i n  
**to belong** – pertineo, pertinui, -, ěre 2 (ad + Acc.)  
**benzoate** benzoas, ātis m  
**benzofuain** Benzofucaīnum, i n  
**benzoic** benzoicus, a, um  
**benzyl** Benzylum, i n  
**benzylpenicilline sodium** Benzylpenicillīnum-natrium, i n  
**bephenium** Bephenium, i n  
**berry** bacca, ae f

<b>beviplek</b> Beviplexum, i n	<b>bronchial</b> bronchiālis, e
<b>bicillin</b> Bicillīnum, i n	<b>bronchitis</b> bronchītis, itīdis f
<b>big</b> magnus, a, um	<b>bronchodilator</b> bronchodilatātor, ōris m
<b>bilberry</b> Myrtillus, i m	<b>broncholytin</b> Broncholytīnum, i n
<b>bile</b> bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	<b>bronchopulmonary</b> bronchopulmonālis, e
<b>bilignost</b> Bilignostum, i n	<b>bronchosan</b> Bronchosānum, i n
<b>bilimin</b> Bilimīnum, i n	<b>brush</b> penicillus, i m
<b>biological</b> biologīcus, a, um	<b>buckhorn</b> Frangŭla, ae f
<b>biostim</b> Biostīnum, i n	<b>bud</b> gemma, ae f
<b>bisacodil</b> Bisacodīlum, i n	<b>bud (of Pine)</b> turio, ōnis m
<b>bismuth</b> Bismŭthum, i n	<b>bur-marigold</b> Bidens, ntis f
<b>bisulphate</b> bisulfas, ātis m	<b>burn</b> combustio, ōnis f
<b>bite</b> morsus, us m	<b>burning</b> urens, ntis
<b>bitter</b> amārus, a, um	<b>Burow's liquid</b> liquor (ōris m) Burōwi
<b>black</b> niger, gra, grum	<b>butter (thick oil)</b> butŷrum, i n
<b>blackcurrant</b> Ribes (i, n) nigrum (niger, gra, grum)	<b>to buy</b> emo, empsi, emptum, ěre 3
<b>bladder</b> vesīca, ae f	<b>by</b> ope (+ Gen.)
<b>blood</b> sanguis, ĩnis m	
<b>boromentol</b> Borobenthōlum, i n	<b>C</b>
<b>bottle</b> lagēna, aef	<b>caffeine</b> Coffeīnum, i n
<b>bowel</b> intestīnum, i n	<b>chamomile</b> Chamomilla, ae f
<b>box</b> scatŭla ae f	<b>calcium</b> Calcium, i n
<b>briquette</b> brikētum, i n	<b>camphor</b> Camphōra, ae f
<b>bromhexin</b> Bromhexīnum, i n	<b>capsule</b> capsŭla, ae f
<b>bromide</b> bromīdum, i n	<b>caramel</b> carāmel, ellis n
<b>bromisoval</b> Bromisovālum, i n	<b>carbolic</b> carbolīcus, a, um
	<b>carbonate</b> carbōnas, ātis m
	<b>cardiovalen</b> Cardiovalēnum, in

<b>caries, ěi f</b> caries	<b>citral</b> Citralum, i n
<b>carminative</b> carminatīvus, a, um	<b>citrate</b> citras, ātis m
<b>carotene</b> Carotīnum, i n	<b>citric</b> citricus, a, um
<b>carrier</b> gestātor, ōris m	<b>clay</b> bolus, i f
<b>case</b> casus, us m	<b>closed</b> obturātus, a, um
<b>castor bean</b> Ricīnus, i m	<b>coagulation</b> coagulatio, ōnis f
<b>castor oil</b> Oleum Ricīni	<b>coal</b> carbo, ōnis m
<b>to cause</b> provōco, āvi, ātum, āre 1	<b>coated</b> obductus, a, um
<b>cell</b> cellŭla, ae f	<b>cocoa</b> Cacāo (indecl.)
<b>central</b> centrālis, e	<b>cod</b> asellus, i m
<b>the chemist's</b> officīna, ae f	<b>codeine</b> Codeīnum, in
<b>child</b> infans, ntis m, f	<b>cod-liver oil</b> Oleum jecōris āselli
<b>Chinese</b> chinensis, e	<b>liver (of fishes)</b> jecur, ōris n
<b>Chinese magnolia vine</b> Schizandra (ae f) chinensis (is, e)	<b>colargol</b> Collargōlum, i n
<b>chloral</b> Chlorālum, i n	<b>collagen</b> Collagēnum, i n
<b>chloride</b> chlorīdum, i n	<b>collagenic</b> collagenīcus, a, um
<b>chloroform</b> Chloroformium, i n	<b>colloidal</b> colloidālis, e
<b>chlortetracycline</b> Chlotetracyclīnum, i n	<b>color</b> color, ōris m
<b>cholagog</b> Cholagōgum, i n	<b>coloration</b> coloratio, ōnis f
<b>cholenzyme</b> Cholenzŷmum, i n	<b>colorless</b> decōlor, ōris
<b>choline</b> Cholīnum, i n	<b>colt's foot</b> Farfāra, ae f
<b>chronic</b> chronīcus, a, um	<b>combined</b> combinātus, a, um
<b>ciclopirox</b> Ciclopirōxum, i n	<b>to come in</b> accēdo, accessi, accessum, ěre 3
<b>circulation</b> circulatio, ōnis f	<b>common</b> commūnis, e
<b>citidon</b> Citidōnum, i n	<b>complete</b> totus, a, um
	<b>component</b> componentum, i n

<b>composition</b> contentus, us m	<b>cream</b> cremor, ōris m
<b>compound</b> compositus, a, um	<b>crystal</b> crystallus, i f
<b>to compress</b> comprīmo, compressi, compressum, ěre 3	<b>crystalline</b> crystallisātus, a, um
<b>concentrate</b> concentrātum, i n	<b>cupping glass</b> olla, ae f
<b>concentrated</b> concentrātus, a, um	<b>curative</b> curatīvus, a, um, medicālis, e
<b>concentration</b> concentratio, ōnis f	<b>cure</b> remedium, i n
<b>cone</b> strobīlus, i m	<b>cyanide</b> cyanīdum, i n
<b>conjugated</b> conjugātus, a, um	<b>cyclophosphan</b> Cyclophosphānum, i n
<b>conserving</b> conservans, ntis	<b>cycloserin</b> Cycloserīnum, i n
<b>constipation</b> constipatio, ōnis f	<b>cylinder</b> (a device for drug containing) cylindrus, i m
<b>content</b> compositio, ōnis f	<b>cystein</b> Cysteīnum, i n
<b>content</b> contentus, us m	<b>cytisin</b> Cytisīnum, i n
<b>contraception</b> contraceptio, ōnis f	<b>cytiton</b> Cytitōnum, i n
<b>controlled</b> recensibīlis, e	
<b>copper</b> Cuprum, i n	<b>D</b>
<b>cordiamin</b> Cordiamīnum, i n	<b>daily</b> quotidie
<b>cordigit</b> Cordigītum, i n	<b>dark</b> fuscus, a, um
<b>to cork</b> obtūro, āvi, ātum, āre 1	<b>decoction</b> decoctum, i n
<b>corked</b> obturātus, a, um	<b>deficiency</b> deficientia, ae f
<b>cortex</b> (in anatomical sense) cortex, ěcis m; bark (as a part of a medicine)	<b>dehydrate</b> dihýdras, ātis m
<b>corticosteroid</b> corticosteroīdum, i n	<b>deliberation</b> deliberatio, ōnis f deminui, deminūtum, ěre 3
<b>cortisone</b> Cortisōnum, i n	<b>dense</b> densus, a, um
<b>course</b> cursus, us m	<b>dermatiphytes</b> dermatophýton, i n
<b>cowberry</b> Vitis(is f) idaea (us, a, um)	<b>dermatitis, inflammation of the skin</b> dermatītis, itědis f
<b>cowslip primrose</b> Primŭla, ae f	

**diaethon** Diaethōnum, i n

**dicaïne** Dicaīnum, i n

**diethylamide** Diaethylamīdum, i n

**different** varius, a, um

**diffuse** diffūsus, a, um

**digestive** digestorius, a, um

**digitoxin** Digitoxīnum, i n

**dihydrate** dihyd̄dras, ātis m

**diluted** dilūtus, a, um

**dimedrol** Dimedrōlum, i n

**direct** directus, a, um

**disease** morbus, i m

**disopyramid** Disopyramīdum, i n

**disposable** uniusuālis, e

**distractive** distractīvus, a, um

**diuretic** diuretīcus, a, um

**dog rose** Rosa, ae f

**dolgit** Dolgītum, i n

**dormic** Dormīcum, i n

**dose** dosis, is f

**dosed** divīsus, a, um

**dried off** exsiccātus, a, um

**drop** 1) gutta, ae f 2) dragée

**dropper** guttātor, ōris m

**drug** medicamentum, i n

**during** tempōre (+Gen.)

**to destroy** destruo, destruxi, destructum,  
ěre 3

**to differ** distingo, distinxi, distinctum, ěre 3 (+  
Abl.)

**to dimension** deminuo,

**to diminish** deminuo, deminui, deminūtum, ěre 3

**to dissolve** solvo, dissolvi, dissolūtum, ěre 3,  
solvo, solvi, solūtum, ěre 3

## E

**each** quisque, quaeque, quodque

**(of each)** ana (+Acc.)

**echinacea** Echinacea, ae f

**edema** oedēma, ātis n

**effect** effectus, us m

**effective** effīcax, ācis

**effervescent** effervescens, ntis

**efficacious** effīcax, ācis

**eight** octo

**eighty** octoginta

**to elaborate** elabōro, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**elder** Sambūcus, i f

**elfwort** Inŭla, ae f

**elixir** elixir, īris n

**enteric soluble** enterosolubīlis, e

**envelopment** involucrum, i n

**environment** circumjacentia, ium n (plur.)

**ephedrine** Ephedrīnum, i n

**epidermal** epidermālis, e

**equal** aequālis, e

**ergocalciferol** Ergocalciferōlum, i n

**eryhaem** Eryhaemum, i n

**erythrocytes** erythrocytus, i m

**erythromycin** Erythromycīnum, i n

**erythrophosphatide**

Erythrophosphatīdum, i n

**esmolol** Esmolōlum, i n

**estrogen** oestrogēnum, i n

**etacrynic** etacrynicus, a, um

**ethacridine** Aethacridīnum, i n

**ethanol** Aethanōlum, i n

**ethazol sodium** Aethazōlum-natrium, i n

**ether** aether, ěris m

**ethylmorphin** Aethylmorphīnum, i n

**etiology** aetiologia, ae f

**eucalyptus** Eucalyptus, i f

**eunoctin** Eunoctīnum, i n

**euphylline** Euphyllīnum, i n

**every other day** diēbus alternis

**elixir** elixir, īris n

**everyone** quisque (m), quaeque (f)  
quodque (n)

**excitability** excitabilitās, ātis f

**expectorant** expectōrans, ntis

**exploration** exploratio, ōnis f

**external** externus, a, um

**extract** extractum, i n

**eye** ocūlus, i m

**eye-wash** collyrium, i n

**to elaborate** elabōro, āvi, ātum, āre 1

## F

**to fall asleep** dormīto, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**fatty** pinguis, e

**febricet** Febricētum, i n

**febrinil** Febrinīlum, i n

**feminine** feminīnus, a, um

**fennel** Foenicūlum, i n

**fern** Filis, ěcis f

**fibrolysin** Fibrolysīnum, i n

**fifteen** quindĕcim

**film** lamella, ae f ; membranŭla, ae f

**fine** subtīlis, e

**firmly** firmīter

**first** primus

**five** quinque

**flax** Linum, i n

**flow** secretio, ōnis f

**flower** flos, floris m

**fluid** liquor, ōris m

**fluossen** Fluossēnum, i n

**folic** folīcus, a, um

**folliculin** Folliculīnum, i n

**for** pro (+Abl.)

**for a certain time** ex tempōre

**formaldehyde** Formaldehydum, i n

**formalin** Formalīnum, i n

**foxglove** Digitālis, is f

**from** ex (+Abl.)

**full** complētus, a, um

**fungicide** fungicīdum, i n

**fungilin** Fungilīnum, i n

**furacilin** Furacilīnum, i n

**furazolidon** Furazolidōnum, i n

**furoplast** Furoplastum, i n

## G

**gall bladder** vesīca fellea (bilīaris)

**garden violet** Viōla (ae f) tricōlor (ōris)

**gastrosol** Gastrosōlum, i n

**gauze** tela, ae f

**gelatinous** gelatinōsus, a, um

**gender** genus, ěris n

**gentamycin** Gentamycīnum, i n

**to get** fio, fiěri

**to get free** liběro, āvi, ātum, āre 1(use in passive voice)

**to give** do, dedi, datum, are 1

**gland** glandŭla, ae f

**glucose** Glucosum, i n

**to glue** inglutīno, āvi, ātum, āre1 (+Dat.)

**glyceric** glycerinōsus, a, um

**glycerophosphate** glycerophosphas, ātis m

**glycoside** glycosīdum, i n

**good** bonus, a, um

**grade** gradus, us m

**gradually** paulātīm

**gram** gramma, ātis n

**gramicidin** Gramicidīnum, i n

**granulated** granulātus, a, um

**granule** granŭlum, i n

**grass** herba, ae f

**great** magnus, a, um

**green** virīdis, e

**grub** larva, ae f

**guelder-rose** Viburnum, i n

**gum** gingīva, ae f

## H

**hair** pilus, i m

**half** dimidium, i n

**hard** difficīlis, e

**to have** habeo, habui, habītum, ěre 2

**heart** cor, cordis n

**helmex** Helmexum, i n

**helmitox** Helmitoxum, i n

<b>herb</b> herba, ae f	<b>to indicate</b> indīco, āvi, ātum, āre 1
<b>hermetīce</b> hermetically	<b>an individual</b> individuūm, i n
<b>hollow stem</b> Calāmus, i m	<b>to induce</b> indūco, induxi, inductum, ěre 3
<b>honey</b> mel, mellis n	<b>infection</b> infectio, ōnis f
<b>hop</b> Humūlus, i m	<b>inflammatory</b> inflammatorius, a, um
<b>hormone</b> hormōnum, i n	<b>infusion</b> infusio, ōnis f
<b>hot</b> calīdus, a, um	<b>inhacort</b> In hacortum, i n
<b>human</b> humānus, a, um	<b>inhalation</b> inhalatio, ōnis f
<b>a human</b> homo, ĩnis m	<b>injection</b> injectio, ōnis f
<b>hydrate</b> hydras, ātis m	<b>injury</b> laesio, ōnis f
<b>hydrobromide</b> hydrobromīdum, i n	<b>inotropic</b> inotropīcus, a, um
<b>hydrocortisone</b> Hydrocortisōnum, i n	<b>insufficiency</b> insufficientia, ae f
<b>hydronaphthoate</b> hydronaphthoas, ātis m	<b>insulin</b> Insulīnum, i n
<b>hydrotartrate</b> hydrotartras, ātis m	<b>intake, a drug dose to be taken</b>
<b>hydroxide</b> hydroxīdum, i n	<b>for one intake</b> dosis pro dosi
<b>hydroxyzin</b> Hydroxyzīnum, i n	<b>integument</b> integumentum, i n
<b>hypnodorm</b> Hypnodormum, i n	<b>interferon</b> Interferōnum, i n
<b>hypnotic, soporific</b> hypnotīcus, a, um	<b>internal</b> internus, a, um
<b>I</b>	<b>international</b> internationālis, e
<b>ichthyosulfol</b> Ichthyosulfōlum, i n	<b>into</b> in (+Acc.)
<b>idaeus, a, um</b> belonging to mountain Ida in west-north of the Turkey	<b>intraaricular</b> intraarticulāris, e
<b>immortelle</b> Helichrīsum, i n	<b>intramuscular</b> intramusculāris, e
<b>immunity</b> immunitas, ātis f	<b>intramuscularly</b> intra musculos
<b>to implant</b> implanto, āvi, ātum, āre 1	<b>intranasal</b> intranasālis, e
<b>to improve</b> emendo, āvi, ātum, āre 1	<b>intrauterine</b> intrauterīnus, a, um
<b>to include</b> inclūdo, incūsi, inclūsum, ěre 3	<b>intravenous</b> intravenōsus, a, um

**intravenously** intra venas

**invasion** invasio, ōnis f

**in view of** ex ratiōne (ratio, ōnis f – view)

**iodine** Iōdum, i n

**iodoform** Iodoformium, i n

**ion** iōnum, i n

**ippecacuanha** Ipecacuanha, ae f

**iron** Ferrum, i n

**irrigation** irrigatio, ōnis f

**irritant** irritans, ntis

**isocard** Isocardum i n

**isotonic** isotinīcus, a, um

**its** ejus (is, ea, id)

## J

**jar** olla, ae f

**juice** succus, i m

**juniper** Junipērus, i f

## K

**kanamycin** Kamycīnum, i n

**to keep** contineo, continui, contentum,  
ēre 2

**keratitis, inflammation of cornea** keratītis, itīdis f

## L

**to label** signo, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**lactate** lactas, ātis m

**laevomycetin** Laevomycetīnum, i n

**language** lingua, ae f

**lanolin** Lanolīnum, i n

**Latin** Latīnus, a, um

**laxative** laxans, ntis

**layer** stratum, i n

**lead** Plumbum, i n

**leaf** folium, i n

**leucocytic** leucocytīcus, a, um

**levonorgestrel** Levonorgestrēlum, i n

**licorice** Glycyrrhiza, ae f

**lidocaine** Lidocaīnum, i n

**lightly** facīle

**lily-of-the-valley** Convallaria, ae f

**lincomycin** Lincomycīnum, i n

**linden** Tilia, ae f

**a liquid** liquor, ōris m

**lithium** Lithium, i n

**little** parvus, a, um

**a little packet** fascicūlus, i m

**lotion** lotio, ōnis f

**low** humīlis, e

**to lubricate** lino, livi, litum, ěre 3

**lydaze** Lydāzum, i n

**lyophilisate** lyophilisātum, i n

**lyophilisated** lyophilisātus, a, um

**lysoamidaze** Lysoamidāzum, i n

**lysocim** Lysocīmum, i n

## M

**maalox** Maaloxum, i n

<b>magnium</b> Magnium, i n; Magnesium, i n	<b>microcrystalline</b> microcristallīnus, a, um
<b>magnolia vine</b> Schizandra, ae f	<b>microenema</b> microēnēma, ātis n
<b>maize</b> Mays, ŷdis f	<b>microgram</b> microgramma, ātis n
<b>to make (to be maid)</b> fio, fiēri	<b>milfoil</b> Millefolium, i n
<b>male</b> mas, maris	<b>milk</b> lac, lactis n
<b>marigold</b> Calendūla, ae f	<b>milk sugar</b> Sacchārum lactis
<b>marsh-mallow</b> Althaea, ae f	<b>milkwort</b> Polygāla, ae f
<b>masticatory</b> masticatorius, a, um	<b>milliliter</b> millilitrum, i n
<b>meal</b> cibus, i m	<b>mineral</b> minerālis, e
<b>means</b> remedium, i n	<b>mint</b> Mentha, ae f
<b>medical</b> medicātus, a, um	<b>mite</b> acārus, i m
<b>membrane</b> membrāna, ae f	<b>to mix</b> misceo, miscui, mixtum, ēre 2
<b>mercury</b> Hydrargŷrum, i n	<b>mixture</b> mixtūra, ae f
<b>methocamphon</b> Methocamphōnum, i n	<b>mobile</b> mobīlis, e
<b>methuracol</b> Methuracōlum, i n	<b>monomycin</b> Monomycīnum, i n
<b>methyl</b> Methylium, i n	<b>montelukast</b> Montelukastum, i n
<b>methylcellulose</b> Methylcellulōsum, i n	<b>month</b> mensis, is m
<b>methylidopa</b> Methylidōpha, ae f	<b>motherwort</b> Leonūrus, i m
<b>methylprednisolon</b> Methylprednisolōnum, i n	<b>mucilage</b> mucilāgo, īnis f
<b>methylsulphate</b> methylsulfas, ātis m	<b>mucosa</b> mucōsa, ae f
<b>methyltestosteron</b> Methyltestosterōnum, i n	<b>muscle</b> muscūlus, i m
<b>methyluracil</b> Methyluracŷlum, i n	<b>mustard</b> Synāpis, is f
<b>mucilage</b> mucilāgo, īnis f	<b>mycoheptin</b> Mycoheptīnum, i n
<b>microbical</b> microbīcus, a, um	<b>mycous disease, mycosis</b> mycōsis, is f
<b>microcide</b> Microcīdum, i n	<b>myocardium</b> myocardium, i n
<b>microcirculation</b> microcirculatio, ōnis f	<b>myorelaxin</b> Myorelaxīnum, i n

## N

**nail** unguis, is m  
**name** nomen, ĩnis n  
**to name** nomĭno, āvi, ātum, āre 1  
**named** nomĭne  
**naphthalan petroleum** Naphthalānum, i n  
**naphthalgin** Naphthalgĭnum, i n  
**naphthammon** Naphthammōnum, i n  
**naphthyzin** Naphthyzĭnum, i n  
**narcosis** narcōsis, is f  
**natamycin** Natamycĭnum, i n  
**negative** negatĭvus, a, um  
**neomycin** Neomycĭnum, i n  
**nervous** nervōsus, a, um  
**nettle** Urtĭca, ae f  
**(stinking nettle** Urtĭca dioĭca)  
**neviramin** Neviramĭnum, i n  
**nevizapin** Nevizapĭnum, i n  
**new** novus, a, um  
**nicotinic** nicotinĭcus, a, um  
**nitrite** nitris, ĩtis m  
**nitroglycerin** Nitroglycerĭnum, i n  
**nitropercuten** Nitropercutēnum, i n  
**normanox** Normatoxum, i n  
**novidorm** Novidormum, i n  
**novocaine** Novocaĭnum, i n

## O

**oak** Quercus, us f  
**oblecol** Oblecōlum, i n  
**to obtaine** elicio, elicui, elicĭtum, ěre 3  
**odor** odor, ōris m  
**oenanthate** oenanthas, ātis m  
**of each** ana (+Acc.)  
**oil** oleum, i n  
**oily** oleōsus, a, um  
**ointment** unguentum, i n  
**oleandomycin** Oleandomycĭnum, i n  
**oletetrin** Oletetrĭnum, i n  
**on 3ml everyone** ana 3 ml  
**operation** operatio, ōnis f  
**ophthalmic** ophthalmĭcus, a, um  
**orally** by mouth  
**oraze** Orāzum, i n  
**orciprenaline** Orciprenalĭnum, i n  
**organ** orgānum, i n  
**organic** organĭcus, a, um  
**origin** orĭgo, ĩnis f  
**ossin** Ossĭnum, i n  
**ostechin** Osteochĭnum, i n  
**osteogenon** Osteogenōnum, i n  
**other** alius, a, ud  
**otherwise** alĭter  
**oxacilline** Oxacillĭnum, i n

**oxacilline sodium** Oxacillinum-natrium, i n

**oxybutyrate** oxybutýras, ātis m

**oxygen** Oxygenium, i n

**oxytetracyclin** Oxytetracyclīnum, i n

**ozokeratin** Ozokeratīnum, i n

## P

**packet** fascis, is m

**packing** devincŭlum, i n

**palmitate** palmitas, ātis m

**panadol** Panadŏlum, i n

**pantosept** Pantoseptum, i n

**pantothenate** pantothēnas, ātis m

**papaverin** Papaverīnum, i n

**paper** charta, ae f

**paper sack** fascis (is m) chartaceus (us, a, um)

**para-aminosalicylate**

para-aminosalicylas, ātis m

**parasitical** parasitarius, a, um

**parenteral** parenterālis, e

**parietal** parietālis, e

**part** pars, partis f

**paste** pasta, ae f

**patient** aegrŏtus, i m

**peach (fruit)** Persīcum, i n

**peach oil** Oleum Persicŏrum

**pectoral** pectorālis, e

**pediculosis** pediculŏsis, is f

**to penetrate** penĕtro, āvi, ātum āre 1

**pepper** piperītus, a, um

**peppermint** Mentha piperīta

**perhydrol** Perhydrŏlum, i n

**to perish** pereo, perii, perītum, īre

**peroxide** peroxydum, i n

**a person** homo, ĩnis m

**pertussin** Pertussīnum, i n

**pharmacy** officīna, ae f

**phenacetin** Phenacetīnum, i n

**phenobarbital** Phenobarbitālum, i n

**phenomenon** phenomĕnon, i n

**phenothrin** Phenothrīnum, i n

**phenoxymethylpenicillin**

Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n

**phenylin** Phenylinum, i n

**phial** vitrum, i n

**phial-dropper** flaco- guttātor, flacŏnis - guttatŏris m

**phosphate** phosphas, ātis m

**phosphorus** Phosphŏrus, i m

**phosphothiamine** Phosphotiamīnum, i n

**phthalylsulphapyridazin**

Phthalylsulfapyridazīnum, i n

**phthazin** Phthazīnum, i n

**phthivazid** Phthivazīdum, i n **phthorothan** Phthorothānum, i n

**physostigmine** Physostigmīnum, i n

**phytin** Phytīnum, i n

**phytomenadion** Phytomenadiōnum, i n

**pill** pilūla, ae f

**pilocarpin** Pilocarpīnum, i n

**pimafucort** Pimafucortum, i n

**pine** Pinus, i f

**pitch** pix, picis f

**plaster** emplastrum, i n

**plate** lamīna, ae f

**platyphyllin** Platyphyllīnum, i n

**polyaethylenoxid** Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n

**polybiolin** Polybiolīnum, i n

**polyethylene** polyaethylenīcus, a, um

**polyethylenoxid** Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n

**polyglucine** Polyglucinum, i n

**polymer** polymērus, a, um

**polysaccharide** polysaccharīdum, i n

**polyvinylpyrrolidon**  
Polyvinylpyrrolidōnum, i n

**polyvitamin** polyvitamīnum, i n

**polyvitaminous** polyvitaminōsus, a, um

**poppy** Papāver, ěris n

**potato** Solānum ( i, n) tuberōsum (us, a, um)

**poultice** cataplasma, ātis n

**powder** pulvis, ěris m

**powdery** pulverātus, a, um

**practice** praxis, is f

**preparation** praeparatio, ōnis f

**prepared** praeparātus, a, um

**present** praesens, ntis

**process** processus, us m

**to produce** prodūco, produxi, productum ěre 3

**prolonged** prolongātus, a, um

**to promote** promoveo, promōvi, promōtum, ěre 2

**prophylaxis** prophylaxis, is f

**propionate** propiōnas, ātis m

**to propose** propōno, proposui, propositum ěre 3

**propriety** propriētas, ātis f

**protecting** protēgens, entis

**protection** munimentum, i n

**prothrombin** Prothrombīnum, i n

**pure** purus, a, um

**purgative** purgatīvus, a, um

**purified** purificātus, a, um

**purple** purpureus, a, um

**purulent** purulentus, a, um

**pyridoxalphosphate** Pyridoxalphosphā-tum, i n

**pyridoxin** Pyridoxīnum, i n

## Q

**quickly** cito

**quinine** Chinīnum, i n

## R

**rabies** rabies, ēi f

**radioactive** radioactīvus, a, um

**radioprotective** radioprotectīvus, a, um

**raspberry** Rubus (i, m) idaeus  
(us, a, um)

**ray therapy** radiotherapia, ae f

**reaction** reactio, ōnis f

**recently** recenter

**recidivate** recidīvus, a, um

**rectal** rectālis, e

**rectified** rectificātus, a, um

**red** ruber, bra, rum

**red bilberry** Vitis (is f) idaea (us, a, um)

**reduced** reductus, a, um

**region** regio, ōnis f

**relatively** relaiīve

**relaxation** relaxatio, ōnis f

**removal (some food substances  
from the stomach)** evacuatio, ōnis f

**resorcin** Resorcīnum, i n

**resorcinol** Resorcinōlum i n

**respiratory** respiratorius, a, um

**retinol** Retinōlum, i n

**retrogingival** retrogingivālis, e

**rheopolyglucine** Rheopolyglucīnum, i n

**rheopyrin** Rheopyrīnum, i n

**rhizome** rhizōma, ātis n

**rhubarb** Rheum, i n

**rhythmotan** Rhythmodānum, i n

**riboflavin** Riboflavīnum, i n

**rice** Orĳza, ae f

**rifamycin** Rifamycīnum, i n

**root** radix, ĩcis f

**rotadisc** rotadiscus, i m

**rush** affluxus, us m

**rutin** Rutīnum, i n

## S

**salicylate** salicylas, ātis m

**salt** sal, salis m, n

**to saturate** satŭro, āvi, ātum āre 1

**scabies** scabies, ēi f

**scopolamine** Scopolamīnum, i n

**sea buckthorn** Hippophaë, ěs f

**sedative** sedatīvus, a, um

**sedimentary** praecipitātus, a, um

**sedonal** Sedonālum, i n

**seed** semen, ĩnis n

**septocide** Septocīdum, i n

**severe** gravis, e

**to shake** agĳto, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**shampoo** lavatorium spumans

(lavatorium, i n washing means;

spumans, ntis fuming)

**shoulder** brachium, i n

**similar** simīlis, e (+Dat.)

**simple** simplex, ĩcis

**sixty** sexaginta

**skin** cutis, is f

**to sleep** dormio, ĩvi, ĩtum, ĩre 4

**sleeplessness** insomnia, ae f

**slight** levis, e

**slightly** facĭle

**small-crystal** microcrystallĭnus, a, um

**small-porous** microporōsus, a, um

**smell** odor, ōris m

**soap** sapo, ōnis m

**sodium** Natrium, i n

**solizyme** Solizĭyum, i n

**soluble** solubĭlis, e

**solution** solutio, ōnis f

**solvent** dissolūtor, ōris m

**some** nonnullus, a, um

**somnibrom** Somnibrōmum, i n

**soporific** somnĭfer, ěra, ěrum

**sort, species** species, ěi f

**sound** sanus, a, um

**spasmolytic** spasmolytĭcus, a, um

**species** species, ei f (in biology)

**species** species, ěrum f (as a drug form only plural!)

**spirituous** spirituōsus, a, um

**sponge** spongia, ae f

**starch** Amĭlum, i n

**starched** amylaceus, a, um

**state** status, us m

**steptocide** Streptocĭdum, i n

**sterile** sterĭlis, e

**to sterilize** sterilĭso, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**sterilized** sterilisātus, a, um

**steroid** steroĭdum, i n

**stigma** stigma ātis n

**to stimulate** stimŭlo, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**stimulation** stimulatio, ōnis f

**stinking (nettle)** dioĭcus, a, um

**stinking nettle** Urtĭca dioĭca

**stomach** gaster, tris f

**stomachic** stomachĭcus, a, um

**streptocide** Streptocĭdum, i n

**streptodecase** Streptodecāsum, i n

**strophanthin** Strophanthĭnum, i n

**strophanthus** Straphanthus, i m

**structure** structŭra, ae f

**strychnine** Strychnĭnum, i n

**subcutaneous** subcutaneus, a, um

**subcutaneously** sub cutem

**substance** substantia, ae f

**succinate** succīnas, ātis m

**such** talis, e

**sugar** Sacchārum, i n

**sulphacyl** Sulfacŷlum, i n

**sulphadimethoxin** Sulfadimethoxīnum, i n

**sulphanilamide** Sulfanilamidum, i n

**sulphate** sulfas, ātis m

**sulphocamphocain** Sulfocamphocāinum i n

**sulphur** Sulfur, ŷris n

**sulphuric** sulfurīcus, a, um

**sum, fui, esse** to be

**sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, ěre 3**

to take in

**suppository** suppositorium, i n

**to suppress** supprīmo, supressi, supressum, ěre 3

**suprarenal** suprarenālis, e

**suspension** suspensio, ōnis f

**sustac-forte** Sustācum-forte, Sustāci-forte n

**swallowwort** Chelidonium (i, n) majus (major, jus)

**swamp ledum** Ledum (Ledum, i n)

palustre (paluster, tris, tre)

**swamp** palus, ŷdis f

**sweet** dulcis, e

**symptom** symptōma, ātis n

**synaflan** Synaflānum, i n

**synoestrol** Synoestrolum, i n

**synonym** synonymum, i n

**synthetic** synthetīcus, a, um

**synthomycine** Synthomycīnum, i n

**syringe** injector, ōris m

**syringe-tube** spritz-tubŷlus, i m

**syrup** sirŷpus, i m

**system** systēma, ātis n

## T

**table-spoon** cochlear escāle

(cochlear, āris n spoon;

escālis, e used for having dinner)

**tablet** tabuletta, ae f

**to take** recipio, recēpi, receptum, ěre 3

**to treat** curo, āvi, ātum, are 1

**tannin** Tannīnum, i n

**taste** sapor, ōris m

**ten** decem

**testosterone** Testosterōnum, i n

**tetracycline** Tertracyclīnum, i n

**that** is, ea, id

**the other** alīter

**then** deinde

**theobromine** Theobromīnum, i n

**theophylline** Theophyllīnum, i n

**therapeutical** therapeutīcus, a, um

**thiamin** Thiamīnum, i n

**thick** spissus, a, um

**thiopental sodium** Thiopentālum-natrium, i n

**third** tertius, a, um

**this** hic, haec, hoc

**three times** ter

**thrombin** Thrombīnum, i n

**thrombotyl** Thrombotylum, i n

**thymalin** Thymalīnum, i n

**thyreocomb** Thyreocombum, i n

**thyroxin** Thyroxīnum, i n

**time** tempus, ōris n

**tincture** tinctūra, ae f

**to take effect** efficio effēci, effectum, ěre 3

**tocopherol** Tocopherolum, i n

**together** una cum (+Abl.)

**tongue** lingua, ae f

**tranquillin** Tranquillīnum, i n

**tranquisan** Tranquisānum, i n

**transdermal** transdermālis, e

**transparent** perspicuus, a, um

**treatment** curatio, ōnis f

**to treat** curo, āvi, ātum, āre 1

**tree** arbor, ōris f

**triiodthyronin** Triiodthyronīnum, i n

**trypsin** Trypsīnum, i n

**tritulating** trituratō, ōnis f

**tube** tubūla, ae f

**tube-dropper** tubūlus-guttator, tubūli-guttatōris m

**turpentine** Terebinthīna, ae f

**tussamag** Tussamāgum, i n

**tussiglaucin** Tussiglaucīnum, i n

**twenty** viginti

**two** duo, duae, duo

## U

**ulceran** Ulcerānum, i n

**ultracaine** Ultracānum, i n

**under** sub (+Abl.)

**unit** unītas, ātis f

**useful** utilis, e

**usually** plerumque

**urinary** urinarius, a, um

**urolesan** Urolesānum, i n

**usage** usus, us m

**to use** adhibeo, adhibui, adhibītum, ěre 2

## V

**vaccine** vaccīnum, i n

**vaginal** vaginālis, e

**valerian** Valeriāna, ae f

**valocardin** Valocardīnum, i n  
**valocormid** Valocormīdum, i n  
**valosedan** Valosedānum, i n  
**vanillin** Vanilīnum, i n  
**varnish** laccum, i n  
**vaseline** Vaselīnum, i n  
**vasopren** Vasoprēnum, i n  
**very lightly** facillīme  
**varnish** laccum, i n  
**vasotrast** Vasotrastum, i n

**vermitox** Vermitoxum, i n  
**vermolfin** Vermolfīnum, i n  
**very lightly** facillīme  
**victim** victīma, ae f  
**virus** virus, i n  
**vitamin** vitamīnum, i n  
**vitreous** vitreus, a, um  
**volatile** volatīlis, e

## W

**warmed** tepefactus, a, um  
**water** aqua, ae f  
**waxed** cerātus, a, um  
**wheat** Tritīcum, i n  
**white** albus, a, um  
**Wilkinson ointment** Ungentum Wilkinsoni  
**with** cum (+Abl.)  
**with the help** ope (+ Gen.)  
**without** sine (+Abl.)  
**worm** vermis, is m  
**wormed** tepefactus, a, um  
**wormwood** Absinthium, i n

## X

**xeroform** Xeroformium, i n

## Y

**yellow** flavus, a, um

**LESSON 34**  
**INTRODUCTION INTO THE LATIN**  
**CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY.**  
**ONE - WORD TERMS AND THEIR**  
**MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE.**  
**INITIAL AND FINAL**  
**MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS**  
**USED FOR WORD BUILDING.**  
**NAMES OF MEDICAL BRANCHES**  
**AND SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF**  
**MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS**

**§ 174. General remarks on Latin clinical terminology**

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify a huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50% of English medical terms are of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly evident in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (*klinike* means bed) and it is the acknowledgement of the important role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became a part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the basis of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or some European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is followed in English. For example:

Latin	English	Meaning
adenitis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteoma	osteoma	tumor made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable that clinical terms composed on the basis of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand for a large clinical definition. That is why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and both doctor and pharmacist must know the rules of word building of medical terms and learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

### § 175. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms

The most numerous among the clinical terms are the one-word ones. From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be 1) simple, containing only one stem and 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15% clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, *ātis n* — *asthma*; *cancer*, *cri m* — *cancer*; *herpes*, *ētis m* — *herpes*; *ulcus*, *ēris n* — *ulcer*. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiāle* — *bronchial asthma*; *ulcus gastris* — *ulcer of the stomach*.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

I. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

I.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly -*ia*, -*ēma*, -*ismus*, -*ītis*, -*ōma*, -*ōsis*):

**parametrītis, īdis f** — parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near) b) the root **metr-** (uterus) c) the suffix -**ītis** (combination of suffix -**it-** and ending -**is**) with the constant meaning of «inflammation»;

I.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

**atrichia, ae f** — atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root **trich-** (hair) c) the ending -**ia**;

**hypermetropia, ae f** — hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excessive function) b) the root -**metr-** (measurement) c) the final root -**opia** (sight);

I.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending): **chondrōma, ātis n** — chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage) b) the suffix -**ōma** with the meaning «tumour» (= tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings -*ia*, -*ēma*, -*ismus*, -*ītis*, -*ōma*, -*ōsis*, -*us*. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel -*o-*:

**rhinopathia, ae f** — rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose) 2) the connecting vowel -**o-** 3) the root **path-** (disease);

**otorhinolaryngológus, i m** — otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear) b) the root **rhin-** (nose) c) the root **laryng-** (larynx) d) the final root **-logus** (a medical specialist).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** is usually omitted:

**pelvimetria, ae f** — pelvimetry (pelvis measurement);

**tachycardia, ae f** — tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria, ae f** — hematuria (blood in the urine);

odont + algia → **odontalgia, ae f** — odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).

Though there are some exceptions from this rule: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never loses their final vowels: **bronchiectasia, ae f** (=bronchoectasia) — bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); **bronchoadenitis, itidis f** — bronchoadenitis (inflammation of lymphatic glands). The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting **-o-**: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

#### § 176. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel «**i**» is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule «vowel before vowel is short»: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The noun **anatómia** (anatomy) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), neurológia (neurology), fisiológia (physiology).

### § 177. Initial and final root elements

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel -o- or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form 3) English meaning 4) English clinical word element:

ger-, geront-	senex, is m	1) old man 2) old age	ger-, geront-
---------------	-------------	-----------------------	---------------

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old man or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element comes first in the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term *nephrographia, ae f* consists of the initial root **neph-** (kidney) and the final root -**graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is «X-ray examination of the kidneys», nephrography.

The term *myōma, ātis n* consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final root -**oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is «tumor of muscular tissue», myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: -**gēnus, a, um** in the term *biogēnus, a, um* — biogenic (caused by a living organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-**logus** — a specialist in a branch of science or medicine

-**iāter** — a doctor, specialist in a brunch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. Final roots have common endings, mostly the ending -**ia**. For example: the initial root **ophthalm-** and the final root -**ophthalmia** have the same meaning «eye». In these cases, both roots are placed in the same cell of the table.

### § 178. Names of the main branches of clinical medicine

Names of the main branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element -**logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + logia → ophthalmologia, ae f — ophthalmology, a branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + logia → proctologia, ae f — proctology, a branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare as well:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, a science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, a science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, a science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-patho-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -patho- + logia → neuropathologia, ae f — neuropathology, clinical neurology, a branch of clinical medicine treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -patho- + logia → sexopathologia, ae f — sexopathology, a branch of medicine dealing with sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, a particular branch of medicine treating diseases of older age;

paediatrica, ae f — pediatrics, a branch of medicine treating children's diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatics, a branch of medicine treating disorders of voice production ;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, a branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), a branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

### § 179. Names of medical specialists

Most names of medical specialists are composed of the final root element

**-logus** and the appropriate initial root building element which specifies the cardinal sense of the term. In this way the names of most biological and medical specialists are formed:

**anthropolōgus, i m** — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

**biolōgus, i m** — biologist, a specialist studying forms of life and living organisms;

**diaetolōgus, i m** — dietitian, a specialist in the dietary nutrition;

**haematolōgus, i m** — hematologist, a specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-pathologia**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → **neuropatholōgus, i m** — neuropathologist, a specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → **sexopatholōgus, i m** — sexopathologist, a specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-iatria**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-iāter**:

paediatrica → **paediāter, tri m** — pediatrician (= paediatrist), a specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix **-ista** and the initial root element:

**oculista, ae m** — oculist, a specialist treating eye diseases;

**therapeutista, ae m** — physician, therapist, a specialist treating inner organs.

### § 180. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (phtisiāter, tri m — phtisiologist), — sometimes the lexical units don't correspond to each other. For example, the name otorhinolaryngologist is not quite common for English or American medical vocabulary; instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term otolaryngologist is used as well. That is why it is more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term otorhinolaryngologist, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to use the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical language.

### § 181. Names of medical examinations and methods of treatment

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia, -metria, -scopia, -diagnostīca**:

**cystographia, ae f** — **cystography**, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

**pelvimetria, ae f** — **pelvimetry**, measuring of pelvis size in women;

**proctoscopia, ae f** — **proctoscopy**, internal examination of the rectum;

**thermodiagnostīca, ae f** — **thermodiagnostics**, a diagnosis via infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element indicating a method of treatment:

**physiotherapia, ae f** — **physiatrics**, treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors;

**phytotherapia, ae f** — **phytotherapy**, treatment by means of medicinal herbs.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

**haemogramma, ātis n** — hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

**mammogramma, ātis n** — mammogram, an X-ray film of breast.

#### § 182. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
<b>anthrop-</b>	homo, ĩnis m	man	anthrop-
<b>bi-</b>	vita, ae f	life	bi-
<b>cardi-</b>	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-
<b>ger-, geront-</b>	senex, senis m	old man or old age	ger-, geront-
<b>gynaec-</b>	femīna, ae f	woman	gynaec-
<b>haem-, haemat-</b>	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	hem-, hemat-
<b>mast-, mamm-</b>	mamma, ae f	breast	mast-, mamm-
<b>neur-</b>	nervus, i m	nerve	neur-
<b>ophthalm-, -ophthalmia</b>	ocūlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
<b>ot-</b>	auris, is f	ear	ot-
<b>paed-</b>	infans, ntis m, f	child	ped-
<b>path-</b>	morbus, i m	disease	path-
<b>pharmac-</b>	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
<b>phthisi-</b>	tuberculōsis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-
<b>physi-</b>	natūra, ae f	nature	physi-
<b>phyt-</b>	planta, ae f	plant, herb	phyt-
<b>proct-</b>	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
<b>psych-</b>	anĭmus, i m	psyche	psych-
<b>rhin-</b>	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
<b>somat-</b>	corpus, ōris n	body	somat-
<b>stom-, stomat-</b>	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-

#### § 183. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-diagnostĭca</b>	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
<b>-gĕnus, a, um</b>	caused by any factor
<b>-graphia</b>	1) X-ray examination 2) examination by means of electricity 3) recording of the result of some examination
<b>-gramma</b>	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
<b>-iāter</b>	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
<b>-iatria</b>	any definite branch of clinical medicine
<b>-logia</b>	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
<b>-lŏgus</b>	a specialist in a branch of science or medicine
<b>-metria</b>	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
<b>-scopia</b>	visual or instrumental visual examination

Final root elements	English meaning
-therapia	method of treatment

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

### § 184. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

cardi-, neur-, ot-, paed-, path-, pharmac-, physi-, phyt-, proct-, psych-

2. Give the Greek morphological elements corresponding to the following Latin nouns:

anĭmus, i m; auris, is f; corpus, ōris n; femĭna, ae f; homo, ĩnis m;

medicamentum, i n; morbus, i m; oculus, i m; sanguis, ĩnis m; senex, senis m; tuberculōsis, is f; vita, ae f

3. Determine orally the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots, write down the full definition:

anthropologia; anthropogĕnus; biolŏgia; cardiolŏgus; cardiogĕnus; craniometria; geriāter; gynaecolŏgus; haematologia; iatrogĕnus; mastogramma; neuropatholŏgus; ophthalmoscopia; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytoterapia; proctolŏgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; somatologia; stomatoscopia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of medicine treating diseases of children; giving diagnosis via examination of iris; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating inner organs; measurement of pelvis in women; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and living organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; treatment by means of medical herbs; the X-ray examination of mamma

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition in English of the terms:

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; gerontology; hematology; hemogram; iatrogenic; iridodiagnosics; mammogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otolaryngologist; pediatrician; pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnosics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; somatology; stomatology; therapist; thoracometry

**Dictionaries to lesson 34**  
**Latin-English vocabulary**

anthropologia, ae f	anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
anthropogēnus, a, um	– anthropogenic, caused by human activities
anthropolōgus, i m	– anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
biologia, ae f	– biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms
cardiolōgus, i m	– cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases
cardiogēnus, a, um	– cardiogenic, happening because of the heart
craniometria, ae f	– craniometry, measurement size of the skull
geriāter, tri m	– geriatrician, medical specialist treating diseases of the aged
gynaecolōgus, i m	– gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women
haematologia, ae f	– hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases
iatrogēnus, a, um	– iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks
mastogramma, ātis n	– mastogram, result of breast X-ray examination
neuropatholōgus, i m	– neuropathologist, specialist treating diseases of the nervous system
ophthalmoscopia, ae f	– ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f	– otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx
physiologia, ae f	– physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body
phthisiāter, tri m	– phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis
phytotherapia, ae f	– phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal herb
proctolōgus, i m	– proctologist, specialist treating diseases of rectum
psychiatria, ae f	– psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases
rhinogramma, ātis n	— rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose
somatologia, ae f	– somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of the human body
stomatoscopia, ae f	– stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity

**English-Latin glossary**

anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution	– anthropolōgus, i m
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances	– biopharmaceutīca, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology	– proctologia, ae f
branch of medicine treating diseases of children, pediatrics	– paediatra, ae f
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart action	– cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart action	– cardiographia, ae f
gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged	– gerontologia, ae f

giving diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics	– iridodiagnostīca, ae f
hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood	– haemogramma, ātis n
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks	– iatrogēnus, a, um
iridodiagnostics, giving diagnosis via examination of iris	– iridodiagnostīca, ae f
measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry	– pelvimetria, ae f
medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist	– haematolōgus, i m
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders	– neurogēnus, a, um
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye	– ophthalmoscopia, ae f
otogenic, happening because of the ear	– otogēnus, a, um
otolaryngologist, specialist treating ear and larynx diseases	– otolaryngolōgus, i
pediatrician, specialist treating children's diseases	– paediāter, tri m
pharmacotherapy, the treatment of disease with drugs	– pharmacotherapia, ae f
phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis	– phthisiāter, tri m
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs	– phytotherapia, aef
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum	– proctodiagnostica, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum	– proctoscopia, ae f
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases	– psychiāter, tri m
psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes	– psychogēnus, a, um
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality	– psycholōgus, i m
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram	– haemogramma, ātis n
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose	– rhinoscopia, ae f
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology	– pharmacologia, ae f
stomatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body	– somatologia, ae f
specialist studying forms of life and living organisms, biologist	– biolōgus, i m
specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist	– anthropolōgus, i m
specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)	– therapeutista, ae m
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity	– stomatologia, ae f
therapist, medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs	– therapeutista, ae m
thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax	– thoracometria, ae f
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy	– physiotherapia, ae f
treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy	– phytotherapia, ae f
the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography	– mammographia, ae f

# LESSON 35

## ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

### § 185. One-word names of functional disorders

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

**adentia, ae f** — lack of teeth, adentia;

**anuria, ae f** — complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;

**aphagia, ae f** — a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia;

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

**incontinentia, ae f** — lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine, incontinence;

**insufficiētia, ae f** — state of being inadequate to perform normal functions, insufficiency;

**immobilitas, ātis f** — lack of mobility, immobility;

**insensibilis, e** — lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

**dysgeusia, ae f** — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;

**dysthyreōsis, is f** — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;

**dysuria, ae f** — condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

**empyēma, ātis n** — accumulation of pus in a cavity;

**enophthalmus, i m** — recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
<b>auto-</b>	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolýsis, is f)	the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)
<b>mono-</b>	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia
<b>di-</b>	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia
<b>hemi-</b>	half	hemialgia, ae f	neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia

### § 186. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
<b>-ismus</b> (suffix <b>-ism-</b> + <b>-us</b> , ending of the 2nd declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
<b>-ōsis</b> (suffix <b>-os-</b> + <b>-is</b> , ending of the 3rd declension)	pathological condition or process	dermatōsis, is f	dermatosis	any skin disease

**Attention!** The final suffix **-ōsis** may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

symbiōsis, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3-rd declension:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
<b>-ēma</b>	different pathological	enanthēma, ātis n	enanthema	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue

	conditions			
<b>-iāsis</b>	different pathological conditions	psoriāsis, is f	psoriasis	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the ending **-ia** is used:

**arthropathia, ae f** — any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy;

**nephropathia, ae f** — a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;

**rhinopathia, ae f** — any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

**angiorrhagia, ae f** — a hemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;

**arthralgia, ae f** — any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;

**cancerophobia, ae f** — unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20% of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

**coma, ātis n** — the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

**infarctus, us m** — an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

**insultus, us m** — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

**sepsis, is f** — infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis.

#### § 187. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
<b>angi-</b>	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-
<b>arthr-</b>	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
<b>brady-</b>	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
<b>cephal-</b>	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-
<b>chondr-</b>	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
<b>dactyl-, -dactylia</b>	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
<b>derm-, dermat-, -dermia</b>	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia
<b>encephal-</b>	cerēbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
<b>my-</b>	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
neph-	ren, renis m	kidney	neph-
oste-	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
phon-, -phonia	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia
phot-	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
phleb-	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
pseud-	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
spasm-, -spasmus	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
tox-, toxic-	venēnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
tachy-	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
trich-, -trichia	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
xer-	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

### § 188. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-algia	pain in any part of the body
-geusia	different pathological conditions of taste
-kinesia	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-mania	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
-mycōsis	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus
-opia, -opsia	any condition of vision
-pathia	a general name of a disease of any organ due to various causes
-pepsia	any condition of digestion
-phagia	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing
-philia	predisposition to any morbid condition
-phobia	a pathological fear
-plegia	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
-pnoĕ	a pathological condition of breathing
-trophia	nutrition

### § 189. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

angi-, arthr-, chondr-, nephr-, phon-, phot-, phleb-, pseud-, tachy-, trich-

2. Give the Greek roots corresponding to the following Latin nouns or adjectives:

caput, ĩtis n; cutis, is f; digĭtus, i m; lentus, a, um; os, ossis n; siccus, a, um; vena, ae f; venēnum, i n.

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

angiopathia; arthromalacia; autohaemotherapia; autopepsia; bradyphagia; bradypnoë; chondropathia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemianopsia; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; osteomalacia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; photophobia; pseudoarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected; impairment of the voice; any kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma

5. *Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:*

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; autolaryngoscopy; autopsy; biopsy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; encephalomalacia; enophthalmus; hemiatrophy; hemophilia; mastopathy; monopathophobia; myopia; nephrogenic; nephropathy; ophthalmoplegia; osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; toxicosis; xerostomia

**Dictionaries to lesson 35**

**Latin — English vocabulary**

angiopathia, ae f	– any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
arthromalacia, ae f	– softening of joints, arthromalacia
autohaemotherapia, ae f	– a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy
autopepsia, ae f	– the process of a spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia
bradyphagia, ae f	– slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
bradypnoë, es f	– an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea
chondropathia, ae f	– any disease affecting a cartilage, chondroathy
dysgeusia, ae f	– impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
dermatomycōsis, is f	– a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi, dermatomycosis
encephalogramma, ātis n	– any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram
gastrospasmus, i m	– an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm
hemicrania, ae f	– a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania
hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f)	– loss of half the vision in each eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)
hemiplegia, ae f	– paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia
monodactylismus, i m	– a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present

	on the hand or the foot, monodactylism
myoplegia, ae f	– paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased, myoplegia
osteomalacia, ae f	– softening of bones, osteomalacia
osteopathia, ae f	– disease of bones, osteopathy
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n	– a malignant epithelial tumor affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma
photophobia, ae f	– abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
pseudoarthrōsis, is f	– a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudoarthrosis
spasmophilia, ae f	– a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm, spasmophilia
stomatomycōsis, is f	– any morbid condition caused by a microscopic fungus, stomatomycosis
tachycardia, ae f	– a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
toxicomania, ae f	– an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
xerophthalmia, ae f	– a morbid condition of eyes, characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (= xeroma)

### English–Latin glossary

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia	– tachyphagia, ae f
angiology, the science of blood vessels	– angiologia, ae f
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis	– psoriāsis, is f
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia	– aphagia, ae f
any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy	– arthropathia, ae f
any disease of the skin, dermatosis	– dermatōsis, is f
any kind of pain, affecting a joint, arthralgia	– arthralgia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy	– rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy	– trichopathia, ae f
a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia	– monoplegia, ae f
apnoea, the cessation of breathing	– apnoë, ës f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint	– arthralgia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause	– atrophia, ae f
atrachia, not having hair	– atrichia, ae f
autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one's own larynx with a laryngoscope	– autolaryngoscopia, ae f
autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of death	– autopsia, ae f
biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of tissue cut from the living body	– biopsia, ae f
bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate	– bradycardia, ae f
cephalalgia, pain in the head	– cephalalgia, ae f
didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot	– didactylismus, i m
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ	

or tissue due to perverted nutrition	– dystrophia, ae f
encephalomalacia, softening of the brain	– encephalomalacia, ae f
impairment of the voice, dysphonia	– dysphonia, ae f
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of an organ	– hemiatrophia, ae f
hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females	– haemophilia, ae f
enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit	– enophthalmus, i m
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland	– mastopathia, ae f
monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease –	– monopathophobia, ae f
myopia, short sight	– myopia, ae f
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney	– nephrogēnus, a um
nephropathy, a disease of the kidney	– nephropathia, ae f
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles	– ophthalmoplegia, ae f
osteocondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues	– osteochondrōsis, is f
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition	– osteodystrophia, ae f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia	– diplegia, ae f
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines	– pharmacophobia, ae f
phoniatics (= phoniatory), the treatment of disorders of speech	– phoniatria, ae f
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph	– phlebographia, ae f
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds	– phonocardiogramma, ātis n
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light	– photophobia, ae f
proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum	– proctospasmus, i m
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose	– rhinopathia, ae f
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating,	– tachyphagia, ae f
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema	– enanthēma, ātis n
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology	– angiocardigraphia, ae f
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons	– toxicōsis, is f
unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma	– cancerophobia, ae f
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland	– xerostomia, ae f

# LESSON 36

## NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

### § 190. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

**hyperaesthesia, ae f** — excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperesthesia;

**hyperkinesia, ae f** — a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesia;

**hyperplasia, ae f** — any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body's part, hyperplasia;

**hypodynamia, ae f** — diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;

**hypogalactia, ae f** — the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;

**hypopepsia, ae f** — abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

**tachypnoë, ës f** — abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea

**bradykinesia, ae f** — abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesis.

### § 191. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures

Increase in size of anatomical or histological structures is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

**dolichocōlon, i n** — an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

**macrocytus, i m** — a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte

**megaduodēnum, i n** — duodenum of abnormally large size, megaduodenum (megaloduodenum)

**megalosplenja, ae f** — enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenja

**hepatomegalia, ae f** — a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

**brachydactylia ae f** — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

**microcephalus, i m** — a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots: **-ectasia, -ectasis, -dilatatio, sten-, -stenosis**:

**bronchiectasis, is f** — a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis

**gastrectasia, ae f** — dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia

**vasodilatatio, onis f** — dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation

**stenostomia, ae f** — abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy

**oesophagostenosis, is f** — narrowing of the esophagus, oesophagostenosis.

#### § 192. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-, poly-, -penia**:

**oligodontia (=oligodentia), ae f** — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia

**polyarthropathia, ae f** — a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy

**erythropenia, ae f** — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia.

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix **-osis**:

**leucocytosis, is f** — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

**papillomatosis, is f** — the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis.

#### § 193. Table of initial root elements

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word -building equivalents
<b>aesthes-, -aesthesia</b>	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
<b>brachy-</b>	brevis, e	short	brachy-
<b>cheil-, -cheilia</b>	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
<b>cyt-, -cŷtus</b>	cellŭla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
<b>dolich-</b>	longus, a, um	long	dolich-
<b>erythr-</b>	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word -building equivalents
<b>gloss-, -glossia</b>	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
<b>glyc-</b>	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
<b>gnath-, -gnathia</b>	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
<b>leuc-</b>	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
<b>macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia</b>	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia
<b>melan-</b>	niger, gra, grum	black	melan-
<b>micr-</b>	parvus, a, um	small	micr-
<b>myel-, -myelia</b>	1) medulla ossium 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow 2) spinal cord	myel-, -myelia
<b>odont-, -odontia, -dentia</b>	dens, dentis, m	tooth	odont-, -odontia -dentia
<b>olig-</b>	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
<b>pod-, -podia</b>	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
<b>poly-</b>	multus, a, um	many	poly-
<b>splen-, -splenia</b>	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
<b>sphygm-, -sphygmia</b>	pulsus, us m	pulse	sphygm-, -sphygmia
<b>therm-, -thermia</b>	1) calor, ōris m 2) temperaturā, ae f	1) heat 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
<b>thyre-</b>	glandūla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyro-

**Attention!** 1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocyt-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia.

#### § 194. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-aemia</b>	any condition of the blood
<b>-genēsis</b>	the origin and (formative) development
<b>-genia</b>	any condition of mandible
<b>-mnesia</b>	any condition of the memory
<b>-penia</b>	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
<b>-phrenia</b>	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
<b>-plasia</b>	the development of tissues
<b>-poēsis</b>	the formation 1) of cells present in the blood 2) of lymph 3) of urine

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-sthenia</b>	any condition of strength, vigor or forcefulness
<b>-tensio</b>	a condition of arterial blood pressure
<b>-tonia</b>	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

**Attention!** In the English term **cythaemia** and different compositions with this term the spelling **-haemia** is remained: myelocythaemia, oligocythaemia.

### §195. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

brachy-, dolich-, erythr-, glyc-, leuc-, melan-, micr-, olig-, poly-, thyre-

2. Write the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents and then give:

1) Greek equivalents corresponding to every Latin equivalent 2) English meaning of every pair of equivalents:

calor; cellŭla; dens; labium; lingua; lien; magnus; maxilla; medulla ossium; pes; pulsus; sensus

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:

amnesia; anaesthesiolŏgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycephălus; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreŏsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytŏsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogeněsis; oligocytaemia; oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; sphygmogramma; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoěsis; thyreotoxicŏsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowing of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a person with an unusually small size of head; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing

5. Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

aglossia; anemia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; hepatomegalia; hyperesthesia; hyperglycemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; micromastia; microsphygmy; monocytopenia; myelocytosis; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly

**Dictionaries to lesson 36**  
**Latin–English vocabulary**

amnesia, ae f	– loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia
anaesthesiologus, i m	– a specialist in the administration of anesthetics, anesthesiologist
apodia, ae f	– congenital absence of feet, apodia
asthenia, ae f	– loss of vital forces, asthenia
brachycephalus, i m	– an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic
brachydactylia, ae f	– a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia
dolichocephalia, ae f	– the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia
dysthyreosis, is f	– imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis
erythropenia, ae f	– a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia
glossoplegia, ae f	– paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia
glycaemia, ae f	– a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia
hyperaemia, ae f	– an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperemia
hyperthermia, ae f	– very high body temperature, hyperthermia
hypotonia, ae f	– lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia
leucocytosis, is f	– an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis
melanoderma, ātis n	– a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma
microgenia, ae f	– a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia
micromyelia, ae f	– general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia
odontogenesis, is f	– the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis
oligocytaemia, ae f	– a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia
oligophrenia, ae f	– congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia
polymastia, ae f	– a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
prognathia, ae f	– a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognathism
sphygmogram, ātis n	– a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram
splenomegalia, ae f	– enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia
thermotherapia, ae f	– the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapy
thrombocytopenia, is f	– the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopenia
thyreotoxicosis, is f	– any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

### English–Latin glossary

abnormal narrowing of the month, stenostomy	– stenostomia, ae f
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea	– taccypnoë, ës f
abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia	– hypopepsia, ae f
abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesis	– bradykinesia, ae f
an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon	– dolichocōlon, i n
aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue	– aglossia, ae f
anemia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood	– anaemia, ae f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short esophagus	– brachyoesophāgus, i m
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia	– brachydactylia, ae f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells	– cytologia, ae f
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia	– gastrectasia, ae f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter	– dolichocōlon, i n

dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity	– dystonia, ae f
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperesthesia	– hyperaesthesia, ae f
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea	– tachypnoë, ës f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws	– gnathalgia, ae f
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord	– haematomyelia, ae f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver	–hepatomegalia, ae f
hyperesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body	– hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood	– hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure	– hypertensio, ònis f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory	– hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind	– hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part	– hypoplasia, ae f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat	– leucocytòsis, is f
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis	– leucocytòsis, is f
macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal	– macrocýtus, i m
megaduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size	– megaduodēnum, i n
megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on	– megalomania, ae f
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor	– melanocarcinòma, ätis n
micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands	– micromastia, ae f
microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse	– microsphygmia, ae f
monocytopenia, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow	– monocytopenia, is f
myelocytæmia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood	– myelocetaemia, ae f
oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers	– oligodactylia, ae f
the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis	– pathogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis	– myelogenēsis, is f
pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy	– erythēma, ätis n
a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus	– microcephālus, i m
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid	– podāgra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot or toes	– podalgia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins	– polyavitaminòsis, is f
a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte	– macrocýtus, i m
splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen	– splenohepatomegalia ae f
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia	– oligodontia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia	– erythropenia, ae f

# LESSON 37

## NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

### § 196. Names of inflammatory conditions

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element **-ītis** which is transformed into **-itīdis** in the Genitive form. The suffix **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix **-ītis** are nouns of the 3rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + ītis → **arthrītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of a joint, arthritis

hepat- (liver) + ītis → **hepatītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of the liver, hepatitis

The suffix **-ītis** may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

neph- (Greek *nephros kidney*) + ītis → **nephītis, itīdis f** — an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis.

tonsill- (Latin *tonsilla, ae f tonsil*) + ītis → **tonsillītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the tonsil, tonsillitis.

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo + metr- (*utērus, i m*) + ītis → **endometrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst (urinary bladder) + ītis → **paracystītis, itīdis f** — a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (heart) + ĩtis → pericardĳtis, itĳdis f — an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix -ĳtis, e. g.:

**panarĳtium, i n** — an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (= panarĳtium);

**pneumonia, ae f** — an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia

### § 197. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids

Due to inflammatory processes some specific fluids may accumulate or be produced in cavities and tissues:

**exsudĳtum, i n** — a fluid extravasated into a cavity, exudate;

**transsudĳtum, i n** — any fluid that has passed through a membrane or the skin, transudate.

The abnormal accumulation of fluid in a tissue or cavity space is generally called **hydrops, ōpis m** — hydrops, dropsy. This noun is used with adjectives and any other noun:

**hydrops vesicae felleae** — fluid swelling in the gall bladder.

The presence of excessive fluid in the cavity of a definite part of the body is expressed by the prefix **hydro-** and a final root with the ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

**hydromeētra, ae f** — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra;

**hydropericardium, i n** — excessive accumulation of serous fluid in the pericardium, hydropericardium;

**hydrarthrōsis, is f** — a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis.

Pus also refers to the fluids accumulated due to the inflammatory processes. The presence of pus is expressed in one-word terms by the initial root **py-** (Greek pus) and the final roots together with the grammar ending:

**pyopericardium, i n** — an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium;

**pyuria, ae f** — a condition in which pus is present in the urine, pyuria.

The meaning «lymph» is denoted by the initial roots **chyl-** and **lymph-**.

The root **chyl-** is used if lymph is present in a cavity, in the blood or urine:

**chylothōrax, ācis m** — a condition in which there is an effusion of lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax;

**chyluria, ae f** — a condition in which the urine contains lymph, chyluria.

The root **lymph-** is used if lymph is considered as a part of lymphatic cells, glands and vessels:

**lymphocytōsis, is f** — an increase in the number of lymphocytes present in the blood, lymphocytosis;

**lymphadenopahia, ae f** — any morbid condition of the lymph gland, lymphadenopathy;

**lymphangiītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of lymphatic vessels, lymphangiitis.

Abnormal presence of blood in a cavity is expressed by the initial root **haem-** or **haemat-** which is added to a root and the final suffix **-ōsis** as well as any grammar ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

**haemarthrōsis, is f** — an extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis;

**haematomētra, ae f** — an accumulation of blood or menstrual fluid in the cavity of uterus, haematometra;

**haemotympānum, i n** — the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum.

An abnormal state of blood circulation is mostly caused by embolaemia — a condition in which emboli are present in the blood. As a result, there occurs a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli — fragments of a blood clot, clumps of bacteria or other foreign bodies introduced into the circulation. Such a condition is named thromboembolism (thromboëmbolismus, i m or thromboëmbolia, ae f).

An abnormal cessation of the flow of blood, lymph or other physiological fluid is marked by the final root **-stāsis**:

**galactostāsis, is f** — an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk, galactostasis;

**lymphostāsis, is f** — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis.

### § 198. Table of initial roots

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
<b>aden-</b>	1) glandūla, ae f 2) adenoīdes, um f 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
<b>aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-</b>	aēr, is m	air or a gas	aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-
<b>chole-</b>	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
<b>cholecyst-</b>	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
<b>1) chyl-, 2) lymph-</b>	lymp̄ha, ae f	chyle or lymph	chyl-, lymph-
<b>col-, -colon</b>	1) intestīnum crassum 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-. -colon

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
<b>cyst-</b>	1) saccus, i m 2) vesīca, ae f 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac 2) bladder 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
<b>dacry-</b>	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-
<b>dacryocyst-</b>	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
<b>enter-</b>	1) intestīnum tenue 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine 2) intestine	enter-
<b>galact-, -galactia</b>	lac, lactis n	milk	galact-, -galactia
<b>hidr-</b>	sudor, ōris m	sweat	hidr-
<b>hydr-</b>	1) aqua, ae f 2) liquor cerebrospinālis 3) exsudātum, i n 4) transsudātum, i n	1) water 2) cerebrospinal fluid 3) exudate 4) transudate	hydr-
<b>lip-, seb-</b>	1) adeps, ĩpis m 2) sebum, i n	1) fatty tissue of the body 2) the fatty secretion of the sebaceous glands	lip-, seb-
<b>men-</b>	mensis, is m	menses, the monthly discharge of blood from the uterus	men-
<b>pan-, pant-</b>	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
<b>poli-</b>	griseus, a, um	grey	poli-
<b>py-</b>	pus, puris n	pus	py-
<b>sial-, -sialia</b>	1) salīva, ae f 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
<b>ur-, -uria</b>	1) urea, ae f  2) urīna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine 2) urine	ur-, -uria
<b>xanth-</b>	flavus, a, um	yellow	xanth-

### § 199. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-chlorhydria</b>	any state of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice
<b>-chylia</b>	secretion of the gastric juice
<b>-menorrhoea</b>	any condition of menses
<b>-metra</b>	any condition of the uterus
<b>-rrhagia</b>	hemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
<b>-rrhoea</b>	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance

<b>-salivatio</b>	secretion of saliva
<b>-salpinx</b>	any condition of the uterine tube
<b>-stāsis</b>	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
<b>-thōrax</b>	any condition of the thorax
<b>-uria</b>	any condition of the urine

## § 200. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

aden-, chole-, col-, cyst-, dacry-, enter-, hidr-, lip-, men-, poli-, py-, xanth-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

adepts, aër, aqua, flavus, griseus, lac, lacrima, liquor cerebrospinalis, salīva, sudor, vesīca urinaria

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

achlorhydria; adenalgia; adenasthenia; aerobion; amenorrhoea; anaerobion; chylothōrax; cholecystitis; cystorrhagia; dacryostenōsis; empyēma; enterocolitis; galactorrhoea; haemarthrosis; hidradenitis; hydromētra; hypochylia; hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostāsis; menalgia; megacolon; pantalgia; poliomyelitis; pyogēnus; pyopneumothōrax; pyosalpinx; uraemia; xanthopsia; xanthōsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened; acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain; an accumulation of pus in the pericardium; a discharge of pus; a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow; an excessive flow of milk; any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin; a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint; inflammation in the nail fold; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lachrymal gland; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of air or gas within a thorax; the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity; a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli; the presence of blood in the urine

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

achylia; aerobic; anaerobic; chyluria; colonorrhagia; cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dysmenorrhoea; dropsy; embolaemia; endometritis; enteromegalia; enterogastritis; galactostasis; haematosalpinx; hydrarthrosis; hidrosis; hydrometra; hypersalivation; hypogalactia; lymphangiitis; lymphocytosis; menalgia; panaris; paranephritis; pericystitis; pneumonia; pneumohemothorax; polioencephalopathy; pyuria; thromboembolism; tonsillitis

**Dictionaries to lesson 38**  
**Latin–English vocabulary**

achlorhydria, ae f	– a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria
adenalgia, ae f	– a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia
adenasthenia, ae f	– functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia
aërobion, i n	– a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen, aerobe (aerobion)
amenorrhoea, ae f	– the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhea
anaërobion, i n	– a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe
chylothōrax, ācis m	– the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax
cystorrhagia, ae f	– hemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia
cholecystītis, itīdis f	– inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis
dacryostenōsis, is f	– narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
empyēma, ātis n	– an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema
enterocolītis, itīdis f	– an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis
galactorrhoea, ae f	– an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea
haemarthrōsis, ōsis f	– extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis
hidradenitis, itīdis f	– inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
hydrometra, ae f	– an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra
hypochylia, ae f	– a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia
hyposalivatio, ōnis f	– a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation
lipuria, ae f	– the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria
lymphostāsis, is f	– cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis
megacōlon, i n	– a condition in which there is a great dilatation of the large intestine, megacolon
menalgia, ae f	– painful menstruation, menalgia
pantalgia, ae f	– pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
poliomyelītis, itīdis f	– an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, poliomyelitis
pyogēnus, a, um	– forming or producing pus, pyogenic
pyopneumothōrax, ācis m	– an inflammatory condition characterized by the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax

pyosalpinx, ngis f	– inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed to pus formation, pyosalpinx
uraemia, ae f	– the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uremia
xanthopsia, ae f	– a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia
xanthōsis, is f	– yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

### English–Latin glossary

an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium	– pyopericardium, i n
achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice	– achylia, ae f
a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypoachylia	– hypoachylia, ae f
acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis	– polioencephalitis, itīdis f
a discharge of pus, pyorrhea	– pyorrhoea, ae f
a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia	– xanthopsia, ae f
aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen	– aërobion, i n
aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live	– aërobīcus, a, um
anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air	– anaërobion, i n
anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen	– anaërobīcus, a, um
any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate	– transsudātum, i n
chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph	– chyluria, ae f
colonorrhagia, hemorrhage from the colon	– colonorrhagia, ae f
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder	– cystītis, itīdis f
dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears	– dacryorrhoea, ae f
dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space	– hydrops, ōpis m
dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about the time of menses	– dysmenorrhoea, ae f
embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood	– embolaemia, ae f
endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus	– endometrītis, itīdis f
enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach	– enterogastrītis, itīdis f
enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine	– enteromegalia, ae f
an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea	– galactorrhoea, ae f
galactostasis, an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk	– galactostāsīs, is f
hematosalpinx, a collection and retention of blood in an uterine tube	– haematosalalpinx, ngis f
hidrosis 1) a process of secreting sweat	

2) abnormally profuse sweating	– hidrōsis, is f
hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint	– hydrarthrōsis, is f
hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus	– hydromētra, ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva	– hypersalivatio, ōnis f
hypogalactia, secretion of too small a quantity of milk	– hypogalactia, ae f
inflammation in the nail fold, panaris	– dacryostenōsis, is f
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis	– endometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis	– hepatītis, itīdis f
lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels	– lymphangītis, itīdis f
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes	– lymphocytōsis, is f
menalgia, painful menstruation	– menalgia, ae f
a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis	– dacryostenōsis, is f
panaris, an inflammation in the nail fold	– panaritium, i n
paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney	– paranephritis, itīdis f
pericystitis, an inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected	– pericystītis, itīdis f
pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung	– pneumonia, ae f
pneumohemothorax, an accumulation of gas or air and blood in the cavity of the thorax	– pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m
polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain	– polioencephalopathia, ae f
the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax	– pneumothōrax, ācis m
the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum	– haemotympānum, i n
the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria	– haematuria, ae f
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhea	– rhinorrhoea, ae f
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine	– pyuria, ae f
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli, thromboembolia (thromboembolism)	– thromboēmbolia, ae f (thromboēmbolismus, i m)
thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli	– thromboembolismus, i m
tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil	– tonsillītis, itīdis f
a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis	– hydrarthrōsis, is f

# LESSON 38

## NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

### § 201. Names of abnormal adhesions and fissures

Conditions of abnormal adhesions of tissues are signified by means of the prefix **sym-** or **syn-** (before the consonants **d, p, t** or vowels) and the final roots defining the place of malformation:

**symblepharon, i n** — an adhesion of eyelid to the eyeball, symblepharon

**syndactylia, ae f** — a condition in which two or more fingers or toes are fused, syndactylia.

One-word names of fissures are formed by means of the final root **-schĭsis**:

**cystoschĭsis, is f** — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis

**gnathoschĭsis, is f** — a congenital fissure in the maxilla, gnathoschisis.

### § 202. Names of pathological cavities

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

**abscessus apicalis** — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth

**abscessus tonsillāris** — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

**cysta choledōchi** — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct

**cysta pancreatīca** — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

**hernia cerēbri** — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull

**hernia inguinālis** — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal.

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:

**gastrocēle, es f** — hernia of the stomach, gasrocele

**myocēle, es f** — hernia of a muscle, myocele.

### § 203. Names of tumors

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3rd declension:

**angiōma, ātis n** — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels

**nephroōma, ātis n** — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance

**osteōma, ātis n** — osteoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix **-oma**:

**polypus, i m** polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

**verrūca, ae f** — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

**polypus laryngis** — a polypus of larynx

**verrūca plana** — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — **cancer, cri m**. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

**cancer cutis** — cancer of the skin

**cancer gastris** — cancer of the stomach

**cancer osteolyticus** — osteolytic cancer, a cancer which destroys the bone that it has invaded.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — **carcinōma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

**carcinōma bronchogenicum** — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus

**carcinōma cutaneum** — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

**adenocarcinōma, ātis n** — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

**chondrocarcinōma, ātis n** — a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

#### § 204. Names of concrements

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

**concrementum nasāle** — nasal calculus

**calcūlus dentālis** — dental calculus

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root **-lithus** (Greek *lithos* stone) added to initial roots: rhinolīthus, i m = concrementum nasāle

odontolīthus, i m = calcūlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculosis — **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

**broncholithiāsis, is f** — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

**cholecystolithiāsis, is f** — a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis

**nephrolithiāsis, is f** — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

**urolithiāsis, is f** — a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis

#### § 205. Names of abnormal hardening and softening of tissues

Abnormal hardening (induration) of a tissue is expressed by the initial root **scler-** (Greek **skleros** hard) or the final element **-sclerosis**:

**sclerodesmia, ae f** — abnormal induration of ligaments, sclerodesmia

**osteosclerōsis, is f** — hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis

Abnormal softening of a tissue is expressed by the final root **-malacia** (Greek **malakia** softness):

**chondromalacia, ae f** — a pathological softening of a cartilage, chondromalacia

### § 206. Table of initial roots

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
<b>carcin-</b>	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-
<b>hist-</b>	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
<b>lith-</b>	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-
<b>mening-</b>	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater — the membranes which form the covering or sheaths of the spinal cord and brain	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater	mening-
<b>morph-</b>	forma, ae f	form	morph-
<b>necr-</b>	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-
<b>ne(o)-</b>	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
<b>onc-</b>	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
<b>onych-</b>	unguis, is m	nail	onych-
<b>pachy-</b>	crassus, a, um	thick	pachy-
<b>pyel-</b>	pelvis renālis	pelvis of the kidney	pyel-
<b>sarc-</b>	caro, carnis f	flesh	sarc-
<b>scler-</b>	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-
<b>splanchn-</b>	viscus, ěris n; viscĕra, um n	a viscus; the viscera	splanchn-
<b>spondyl-</b>	vertĕbra, ae f	vertebra	spondyl-
<b>sten-</b>	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	sten-
<b>typhl-</b>	caecum, i n	caecum	typhl-
<b>uran-</b>	palātum, i n	palate	palat-, uran-

**Attention!** Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used:

palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) = uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia)

palatoschĭsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschĭsis, is f (uranoschisis).

### § 207. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
<b>-carcinōma</b>	a malignant epithelial tumor
<b>-cĕle</b>	hernia
<b>-lithiāsis</b>	the formation of concretions
<b>-lĭthus</b>	a concretion
<b>-malacia</b>	pathological softening of an organ or tissue

<b>-morphōsis</b>	any state of the body form
<b>-necrōsis</b>	death of a portion of a tissue
<b>-onychia</b>	any abnormal condition of the nail
<b>-porōsis</b>	abnormal rarefaction of a bone by thinning of its trabeculae
<b>-schīsis</b>	congenial fissure of a tissue
<b>-sclerōsis</b>	hardening of a tissue
<b>-stenōsis</b>	the constriction or narrowing of an orifice or the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ

## § 208. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

carcin-, hist-, lith-, mening-, morph-, necr-, ne(o)-, onc-, onych-, pachy-, scler-, typhl-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

caecum, calcūlus, cancer, crassus, durus, mortuus, palātum, pelvis renālis, strictus, textus, viscēra.

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cystoschīsis; dacry- ostenōsis; gastrocēle; histolŷsis; meningiōma; metamorphōsis; micronychia; myocele; necropneumonia; nephrolithiāsis; neoplasma; odontolīthus; oncolōgus; onychomycōsis; osteonecrosis; osteoporōsis; pachydactylia; palatoplegia; pyelītis; sarcōma; sclerōma; splanchnosclerōsis; spondylītis; stenothōrax; typhlectasia; uranoschīsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements; any diseased condition of the viscera; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or arches; congenial fissure of the urinary bladder; hardening of bony spaces; herniation of the uterus; inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder; inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord; paralysis affecting the soft palate; pathological softening of a cartilage; separation of a tissue as a result of its death; spasm of the caecum; the formation of concretions; the origin, formation and development of body tissue; the production and evolution of a form; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

adiponecrosis; angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (= carcinogenic); carcinoma; cholecystolithiasis; chondroporosis; enterolithiasis; gnathoschisis; macronychia; meningoencephalitis; necraemia; neoarthrosis; oesophagostenosis; oncologist; oncotherapy; onychodystrophy; osteomalacia; pachycheilia; polyposis; rhinolith; sarcomatosis; sclerodermatitis; sialolith; spondylopathy; symblepharon; synphalangism; typhlocele

**Dictionaries to lesson 38**  
**Latin–English vocabulary**

adenocarcinōma, ātis n	– a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
broncholithiāsis, is f	– a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
carcinomatōsis, is f	– a condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis
cystoschĭsis, is f	– a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis
dacryostenōsis, is f	– a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
gastrocēle, es f	– a hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele
histolŷsis, is f	– a spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis
meningiōma, ātis n	– a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma
metamorphōsis, is f	– a change of a form or structure, metamorphosis
micronychia, ae f	– a small nail or small nails, micronychia
myocēle, es f	– hernia of a muscle, myocele
necropneumonia, ae f	— gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia
nephrolithiāsis, is f	– a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or renal calculi, nephrolithiasis
neoplasma, ātis n	– any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm
odonthlĭthus, i m	– a calculus on the teeth, odontolith
oncolōgus, i m	– a specialist treating tumors, oncologist
onychomycōsis, is f	– an infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis
osteonecrōsis, is f	– death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis
osteoporōsis, is f	– a rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
pachydactylia, ae f	– abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly
palatoplegia, ae f	– paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
pyelĭtis, itĭdis f	– an inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis
sarcōma, ātis n	– a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma
sclerōma, ātis n	– an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma
splanchnosclerōsis, is f	– hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis
spondylĭtis, itĭdis f	– an inflammation of the spine, spondilitis
stenothōrax, ācis m	– a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax
typhlectasia, ae f	– a dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia
uranoschĭsis, is f	– cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis

**English–Latin glossary**

an abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly	– pachydactylia, ae f
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or lymphatic vessels	– angiōma, ātis, n

calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body	– calculōsis, is f
a calculus on the teeth, odontolith	– odontolīthus, i m
cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma	– cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor	– carcinōma, ātis n
a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma	– chondrōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma	– adenocarcinōma, ātis n
cholecystolithiasis, a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct	– cholecystolithiāsis, is f
chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of the cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses	– chondroporōsis, is f
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous	– oncogēnus, a, um
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis	– nephrolithiāsis, is f
a congenital cleft of a vertebral arch, spondyloschisis	– spondyloschīsis, is f
a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis	– cystoschīsis, is f
any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy	– splanchnopathia, ae f
enterolithiasis, formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine	– entherolithiāsis, is f
the formation of concretions, lithiasis	– lithiasis, is f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla	– gnathoschīsis, is f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis	– osteosclerōsis, is f
a hernia involving the caecum, typhlocele	– typhlocēle, es f
herniation of the uterus, metrocele	– metrocēle, es f
inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis	– pyelocystītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis	– meningītis, itīdis f
macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails	– macronychia, ae f
a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma	– sarcōma, ātis n
a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma	– meningioma, ātis n
meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges	– meningoencephalītis, itīdis f
necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality	– necraemia, ae f
nearthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation	– nearthrōsis, is f
oesophagostenosis, a narrowing of the esophagus	– oesophagostenōsis, is f
oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases	– oncolōgus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours	– <u>oncotherapia</u> , ae f
onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails due to impaired nutrition	– onychodystrophia, ae f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis	– histogenēsis, is f

osteomalacia, softening of the bones	– osteomalacia, ae f
pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips	– pachycheilia, ae f
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia	– palatoplegia, ae f
pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia	– chondromalacia, ae f
polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane	– polypōsis, is f
the production and evolution of a form, morphogenesis	– morphogenēsis, is f
production of urinary calculi and a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis	– urolithiāsīs, is f
rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose	– rhinolīthus, i m
sarcomatosis, a condition in which a number of sarcomata develop here and there on the body surface	– sarcomatōsis, is f
sclerodermatitis, an inflammation and induration of the skin	– sclerodermatītis, itīdis f
a separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis	– necrolŷsis, is f
sialolith, a salivary calculus	– sialolīthus, i m
spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm	– typhlospasmus, i m
spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae	– spondylopathia, ae f
symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball	– symblephāron, i n
synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused	– <u>synphalangismus</u> , i m
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum	– typhlocēle, es f

## LESSON 39

# NAMES OF TISSUE DEFORMATIONS CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

### § 209. General names of tissue deformations caused by different exogenous factors

The most known general names of tissue deformations are the following one-word terms:

**deformatio, ōnis f** — a destruction of the form, deformation

**laesio, ōnis f** — an injury, damage suffered by the body

**trauma, ātis n** — a trauma, injury

**vulnus, ěris n** — a wound, any interruption by violence or by surgery, in the continuity of the external surface of the body or of the surface of any internal organ.

More definite names are the following one-word terms:

**avulsio, ōnis f** — avulsion, a forcible removal of a portion from a hollow structure

**combustio, ōnis f** — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

**congelatio, ōnis f** — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing

**commotio, ōnis f** — a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure

**compressio, ōnis f** — compression, the process of decreasing the volume and increasing the density of the body by means of force applied externally

**dislocatio, ōnis f** — a dislocation, an abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint

**ectopia, ae f** — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part

**fractūra, ae f** — a fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone

**luxatio, ōnis f** — a luxation, a dislocation of a bone

**ruptūra, ae f** — a rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or another anatomical structure. With the same meaning, but only in one-word terms, the final root – **rrhexis** (Greek *rrhexis* a break) is used:

**metrorrhexis, is f** — metrorrhexis, rupture of the uterus

**ophthalmorrhexis, is f** — ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball

**prolapsus, us m** — prolapse, a sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part. With the same meaning the final root **-ptōsis** is used:

**gastroptōsis, is f** — gasroptosis, a downward displacement of the stomach

**splenoptōsis, is f** — splenoptosis, a prolapse of the spleen.

## § 210. Names of surgical operations

The most common names of surgical operations are the following:

**operatio, ōnis f** — an operation, surgical intervention upon a part of the body

**amputatio, ōnis f** — an amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage

**extirpatio, ōnis f** — an extirpation, a removal of the entire pathological structure, organ or part

**extractio, ōnis f** — an extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body

**implantatio, ōnis f** — an implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body

**punctūra, ae f (punctio, ōnis f)** — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it. In one-word terms, the final root **-centēsis** corresponds to the two-word terms which include the noun **puncture** and the second noun signifying the site of this operation, e. g.:

punctūra thorācis = thoracocentēsis; punctūra pulmōnis = pneumocentēsis

**replantatio, ōnis f** — replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place

**transplantatio, ōnis f** — a transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function

**resectio, ōnis f** — a resection, a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.

**sectio, ōnis f** — a section, the act of cutting

#### § 211. Prefixes widely used in surgical names

Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent and its meaning
<b>a-, ab-</b>	away, from	avulsio, ōnis f aberratio, ōnis f	avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure aberration, a deviation from the normal
<b>de(s)-</b>	away, from	decapsulatio, ōnis f descensus, us m	decapsulation, surgical removal of a capsule or sheath descent, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part
<b>dis-</b>	apart, separation	disarticulatio, ōnis f	disarticulation, separation or amputation in a joint without cutting through bone
<b>im-, in-</b>	in, into	implantātum, i n invasio, ōnis f	implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft invasion, the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host
<b>e-, ex-</b>	from, out of	extractio, ōnis f evisceratio, ōnis f	extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body evisceration, removal of the contents of an organ or its part
<b>re-</b>	again	replantatio, ōnis f	replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place
<b>trans-</b>	through, across	transplantatio, ōnis f	transplantation, the operation of transfer of tissue from one site to another

#### § 212. Table of initial roots

Greek roots	Latin equivalents	English meaning	English word
-------------	-------------------	-----------------	--------------

and their variants	in dictionary form		building elements
blephar-	palpēbra, ae f	eyelid	blephar-
chir-	manus, us f	hand	chir-
colp-	vagīna, ae f	vagina	colp-
cry-	gelu, us n	cold	cry-
crypt-	latens, ntis	hidden	crypt-
desm-	ligamentum, i n	ligament	desm-
embryo-	1) embryo, ōnis m 2) fetus, us m	1) embryo, a living organism from the fertilized ovum to the first 8 weeks of intrauterine life 2) fetus, a living organism after first 8 weeks of intrauterine life	embryo-
kerat-	cornea, ae f	1) cornea 2) the horny layer of the skin	kerat-
lapar-	abdōmen, ĩnis n	abdomen	lapar-
pneum-, pneumon-	pulmo, ōnis m	lung	pneum-, pneumon-
salping-	1) tuba uterīna 2) tuba auditīva (= tuba auditoria)	1) the uterine tube 2) the pharyngotympanic tube (=auditory tube)	salping-
ten-	tendo, ĩnis m	tendon	ten-
top-	locus, i m	place	top-

### § 213. Table of final roots

Final roots elements	English meaning
<b>-chirurgia</b>	surgical operation
<b>-centēsis</b>	tapping or puncture of a cavity, -centesis
<b>-dēsis</b>	operative fixation of a structure, -desis
<b>-ectomia</b>	amputation or excision of an organ or its part, -ectomy
<b>-implantatio</b>	the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, -implantation
<b>-lŷsis</b>	surgical freeing of a tissue from adhesions
<b>-pexia</b>	surgical fixation by means of sutures, -pexis, -pexy
<b>-plastīca</b>	an operation dependent upon the transposition of skin or other tissue, -plasty
<b>-rrhaphia</b>	the suturing together of the cut or torn edges of a wound, -rrhaphy
<b>-rrhexis</b>	rupture or bursting of an organ or vessel, -rrhexis
<b>-stōma</b>	an artificial opening created by surgical operation
<b>-stomia</b>	creation of an artificial opening, -stomy
<b>-tomia</b>	operative cutting, incision or section, -tomy
<b>-transplantatio</b>	the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function, -transplantation

### § 214. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

blephar-, chir-, colp-, cry-, crypt-, desm-, embryo-, kerat-, lapar-,

pneum-, salping-, ten-, top-

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

abdōmen, cornea, embryo, gelu, latens, locus, manus, palpēbra, pulmo, tendo, tuba uterīna.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English the full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

avulsio; blepharītis; blepharoplastīca; colpōtōmia; combustio; cryochirurgia; cryotherapia; cryptophthalmia; decapsulatio; descensus; desmorrhēxis; desmurgia; disarticulatio; embryologia; embryotomia; evisceratio; gastrostōma; hyperkeratōsis; implantatio; implantātum; keratotomia; laparoscopia; laparogastrotomia; pneumocentēsis; prolapsus; pneumoēmpyēma; replantatio; resection; salpingectomia; salpingolýsis; spondylodēsis; tenorrhaphia; tenotomia; thoracocentēsis; toponeurōsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure; adenoma of the eyelid; a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system; a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum; any disease affecting ligaments; any morbid condition affecting the lungs; any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder; any plastic surgical operation on the vagina; a tumor consisting of connective-tissue element; incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus; inflammation of abdominal muscles; inflammation of the cornea; polypus of the vagina; puncture of the cornea; removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part; retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital-canal stenosis; surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope; the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body; the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host; the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the size of the latter; the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision; the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing a function; the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder; total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue; use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure

5. Give the full definition of each term and its Latin dictionary form:

arthrocentesis; autoplasty; blepharotomy; colpocystotomy; colpomyomectomy; colpohysteropexy; congelation; cryosurgery; cryptolith; cryptopsoriasis; desmalgia; desmotomy; dislocation; ectopia; embryectomy; embryopathology; implant; implantation; keratomycosis; keratoplasty; esophagostoma; pneumorrhaphy; pneumotomy; puncture; salpingogram; salpingopexy; tenodesis; tenolysis; tonsillotomy; topography; topophobia

### Dictionaries to lesson 39 Latin–English vocabulary

avulsio, ōnis f	– a forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion
blepharītis, itīdis f	– an inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis

blepharoplastīca, ae f	– a plastic operation for restoration of an eyelid or any part of it, blepharoplasty
colpotomia, ae f	– any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy
combustio, ōnis f	– an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, burn
cryochirurgia, ae f	– surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery
cryotherapia, ae f	– the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy
cryptophthalmia, ae f	– a congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen, cryptophthalmia
decapsulatio, ōnis f	– a surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation
descensus, us m	– the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent
desmorrhēxis, is f	– rupture of a ligament, desmorrhēxis
desmurgia, ae f	– the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy
disarticulatio, ōnis f	– a separation or amputation at a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation
embryologia, ae f	– a branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extra-uterine life, embryology
embryotomia, ae f	– a dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy
evisceratio, ōnis f	– a removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration
gastrostōma, ātis n	– a natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma
hyperkeratōsis, is f	– a hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin, hyperkeratosis
implantatio, ōnis f	– the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation
implantātum, i, n	implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft
keratotomia, ae f	– making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy
laparoscopia, ae f	– the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope, laparoscopy
laparogastrostomia, ae f	– the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach, laparogastrostomy
pneumocentēsis, is f	– a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis
pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n	– the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoëmpyema
prolapsus, us m	– the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse
replantatio, ōnis f	– the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place, a replantation
resectio, ōnis f	– a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, etc., a resection
salpingectomia, ae f	– an excision of an uterine tube, salpingectomy
salpingolýsis, is f	– breaking-down of adhesions in an uterine tube, salpingolysis
spondylodēsis, is f	– the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis
tenorrhaphia, ae f	– an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy
tenotomia, ae f	– the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy

thoracentēsis, is f	– a puncture of the wall of the thorax to remove fluid, thoracentesis
toponeurōsis, is f	– localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis

### English–Latin glossary

the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction	– extractio, ōnis f
adenoma of the eyelid, blepharadenoma	– blepharadenōma, ātis n
arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint	– arthrocentēsis, is f
autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by the material taken from another part of the body	– autoplastīca, ae f
blepharotomy, an incision of an eyelid	– blepharotomia, ae f
colpocystotomy, a surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina	– colpocystotomia, ae f
colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina	– colpohysteropexia, ae f
colpomyomectomy, a removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route	colpomyomectomia, ae f
a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure	– commotio, ōnis f
congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing	– congelatio, ōnis f
cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing	– cryochirurgia, ae f
cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt	– cryptolīthus, i m
cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis	– cryptopsoriāsis, is f
desmalgia, pain in a ligament	– desmalgia, ae f
desmotomy, incision of the ligament	– desmotomia, ae f
any disease affecting the ligaments, desmopathia	– desmopathia, ae f
dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint	– dislocatio, ōnis f
ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part	– ectopia, ae f
embryectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo	– embryectomia, ae f
embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo	– embryopathologia, ae f
the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion	– invasio, ōnis f
implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft	– implantātum, i n
implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving t function of any part of the body	– implantatio, ōnis f
incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysterectomy	– laparohysteroēctomia, ae f
inflammation of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis	– laparomyosītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the cornea, keratitis	– keratītis, itīdis f
the introduction of one tissue or structure into another	

with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body	– implantatio, ōnis f
keratomycosis, a disease of cornea caused by a fungus	– keratomycōsis, is
keratoplasty, plastic surgery on the cornea	– keratoplastīca, ae f
a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, a neurosurgeon	– neurochirurgus, i m
any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy	– pneumopathia, ae f
a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, an embryoneoplasm	– embryoneoplasma, ātis n
esophagostoma, any opening into the esophagus apart from the normal entrance and exit	– oesophagostōma, ātis n
the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter, herniotomia	– herniotomia, ae f
the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy	– adenotomia, ae f
the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing of a function, transplantation	– transplantatio, ōnis f
ophthalmorrhaxis, rupture of the eyeball	– ophthalmorrhaxis, is f

a plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder, cystoplasty	– cystoplastīca, ae f
a plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty	– colpoplastīca, ae f
pneumocentesis, a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity	– pneumocentēsis, is f
pneumoëmpyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space	– pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n
pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung	– pneumorrhaphia, ae f
pneumotomy, making an incision into the lung	– pneumotomia, ae f
a polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus	– colpopolŷpus, i m
a prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part	– prolapsus, us m
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it	– punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f
a puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis	– keratocentēsis, is f
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation	– amputatio, ōnis f
removal of an entire pathological structure, an organ or part, extirpation	– extirpatio, ōnis f
retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea	– cryptomenorrhoea, ae f
salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes	– salpingogramma, ātis n
salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube	– salpingopexia, ae f

the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy	– cystostomia, ae f
a surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery	– microchirurgia, ae f
tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon	– tenodēsis, is f
tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions	– tenolýsis, is f
tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil	– tonsillotomia, ae f
topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body	– topographia, ae f
topophobia, unreasoned fear of certain places	– topophobia, ae f
total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy	– pneumonectomia, ae f
a tumor consisting of connective tissue elements, desmoneoplasm	– desmoneoplasma, ātis n
use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy	– cryotherapia, ae f

# LESSON 40

## MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS.

### (PART 1)

#### § 215. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms

Multiword terms are widely used in medical diagnoses and other kinds of the professional medicinal information. Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

**infarctus cerēbri** — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm

**tachycardia ventricūli sinistri** — tachycardia of the left ventricle, abnormally rapid rate of the left ventricle

**anaemia haemorrhagica** — hemorrhagic anemia, anemia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause

**myocarditis bacterialis acūta** — acute bacterial myocarditis, acute inflammation of the myocardium due to invasion of bacteria

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

**cirrhōsis biliāris infantium** — biliary cirrhosis of children, cirrhosis of young children due to congenital anomalies of the bile ducts

**luxatio coxae congenita** — congenital dislocation of the hip.

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

#### § 216. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

abdōmen acūtum; *diabētes* mellitus; *diagnōsis* aetiologiča; febris continua; foetor ex ore sive *halitōsis*; *herpes* labiālis; *indigestio* gastris; *infarctus* thromboticus; insufficiētia renālis chronica; morbus maculōsus neonatorum; *palpatio* et *percussio* hepātis; *polyuria* diabetica; *prophylaxis*

morbōrum allergicōrum; **syndrōmum** unguium flavōrum; **toxicōses** gravidārum; vitium cordis congenitum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acute suppurative **bronchitis**; allergic **stomatitis**; cardinal **symptoms**; cerebrospinal hereditary **paralysis**; chronic superficial **dermatitis**; **collapse** of the lung; **endogenous eczema**; **exogenous** tuberculosis; hypoglycemic **coma**; intermittent hepatic fever; plasma **transfusion**; primary atypical **pneumonia**; simple **urethritis**; spongiform subacute **encephalopathy**; **syndrome** of the cerebral peduncle; tissue **emphysema**; ultrasonic **tomography**

**Dictionaries to lesson 38**  
**Latin — English vocabulary**

abdōmen, ĩnis n	– abdomen
acūtus, a, um	– acute
aetiologĭcus, a, um	– etiologic, based on the etiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin of any phenomenon
allergĭcus, a, um	– allergic
chronĭcus, a, um	– chronic, long continued
congenĭtus, a, um	– congenital
continuus, a, um	– continued
cor, cordis n	– heart
diabētes, ae m	– diabetes, a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism
diabetĭcus, a, um	– diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes
diagnōsis, is f	– diagnosis, medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers
febris, is f	– fever
foetor, ōris m	– fetor, a foul odor or stench
gaster, tris f	– stomach
gravĭda, ae f	– gravida, a woman who is pregnant
halitōsis, is f	– halitosis, fetid or offensive breath
hepar, ātis n	– liver
herpes, ētis m	– herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles
indigestio, ōnis f	– indigestion, any disturbance of the normal process of digestion
infarctus, us m	– infarct (infarction), a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without hemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery
insufficiētia, ae f	– insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function
labiālis, e	– labial
mellĭtus, a, um (diabētes)	– mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high — fasting blood sugar
maculōsus, a, um	– maculate, marked by maculae
morbus, i m	– a disease
neonātus, i m	– a newly born child
palpatio, ōnis f	– palpation, the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs
sive	– or
syndrōmum, i n	syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of a disease
percussio, ōnis f	– percussion, the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed
polyuria, ae f	polyuria, increase in the amount of the urine excreted
prophylaxis, is f	– prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease
renālis, e	– renal
thrombotĭcus, a, um	– thrombotic, characterized or caused by thrombosis

toxicōsis, is f	– toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison
vitium, i n	– a defect, a vice

### English — Latin glossary

acute	– acūtus, a, um
alimentary	– alimentarius, a, um
atypical	– atypicus, a, um
bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi	– bronchītis, itīdis f
cardinal	– cardinālis, e
cerebral	– cerebrālis, e
cerebrospinal	– cerebrospinālis, e
chronic	– chronicus, a, um
collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression	– collapsus, us m
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus	– coma, ātis n
dermatitis, inflammation of the skin	– dermatītis, itīdis f
eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning	– eczēma, ātis n
emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated	– emphysēma, ātis n
encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain	– encephalopathia, ae f
endogenous, having origin within the organism	– endogēnus, a, um
exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism	– exogēnus, a, um
fever	– febris, is f
hepatic	– hepaticus, a, um
hereditary	– hereditarius, a, um
hypoglycemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycemia, a low blood sugar concentration	– hypoglykaemīcus, a, um
intermittent, coming and going at intervals	– intermittens, ntis
lung	– pulmo, ōnis m
paralysis, loss of motor power due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanisms	– paralýsis, is f
plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended	– plasma, ātis n
pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung	– pneumonia, ae f
peduncle	– pedunculū, i m
primary	– primarius, a, um
simple	– simplex, ĩcis
spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge	– spongiformis, e
stomatitis, inflammation of the oral cavity	– stomatītis, itīdis f
subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate	– subacūtus, a, um
superficial	– superficiālis, e
suppurative, pus-forming	– suppuratīvus, a, um
a symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function	– symptōma, ātis n
a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease	– syndrōmum, i n
a tissue	– textus, us m

tomography, body-section radiography
--------------------------------------

– tomographia, ae f
---------------------

a transfusion, the introduction into the blood vessels of the circulatory system of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions	– transfusio, ōnis f
tuberculosis, the disease caused by infection with the Mycobacterium tuberculosis	– tuberculōsis, is f
ultrasonic, ultrasound	– ultrasonarius, a, um
urethritis, inflammation of the urethra	– urethrītis, itīdis f

## LESSON 41

### MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. (PART 2)

#### § 217. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

*alopecia* occipitālis neonatōrum; *gastrorrhoea* continua chronica; *granulōma* benignum glandūlae thyroideae; *infectio* latens; infammatiō bacteriālis; insufficientia arteriārum mesentericārum; *lymphangiōma* simplex; *melanōsis* irīdis; *myasthenia* laryngis; *myelītis* traumatiā; *neuralgia* faciālis vera; *neurītis* puerperālis; *osteītis* deformans; *osteōma* spongiōsum; *prolapsus* recti; *psychōsis* senīlis; situs viscerum inversus; *spasmus* intestīni

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acquired immune deficiency *syndrome* (AIDS); benign lymphocytic *meningitis*; cerebral *edema*; chronic *glossitis* with *anemia*; diffuse *goiter*; direct *metastasis*; *dropsy* of the gall bladder; fetal gigantism; geminated composite *odontome*; intravenous *narcosis*; infective *hepatitis*; monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*; odontogenic *fibroma*; pelvic *hematoma*; postoperative *thrombosis*; *psychogenic* headache; secondary *glaucoma*; senile *osteoporosis*; viral *enteritis*

#### Dictionaries to lesson 41

##### Latin — English vocabulary

alopecia, ae f	– alopecia, loss of hair
bacteriālis, e	– bacterial, belonging to, originating or derived from bacteria
benignus, a, um	– benign
continuus, a, um	– continued
deformans, ntis	– deforming
gastrorrhoea, ae f	– gastrorrhea, the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus
glandūla, ae f	– gland

granulōma, ātis n	– a granulome, a tumor composed of granulation tissue
infectio, ōnis f	– an infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication
inflammatio, ōnis f	– an inflammation
insufficiētia, ae f	– insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function
inversus, a, um	– inverse
latens, ntis	– hidden
lymphangiōma, ātis n	– lymphangioma, a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue
melanōsis, is f	– melanosis, an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues
mesenterīcus, a, um	– mesenteric
myasthenia, ae f	– myasthenia, weakness of muscles from whatever cause
myelītis, itīdis f	– myelitis, an inflammation of the bone marrow
neuralgia, ae f	– neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves due to functional disturbances or to neuritis
neurītis, itīdis f	– neuritis, an inflammation of a nerve
occipitālis, e	– occipital
osteītis, itīdis f	– osteitis, an inflammation of a bone due to infection or injury
osteōma, ātis n	– osteoma, an innocent tumor of a bone
prolapsus, us m	– prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a part of a viscus or its part
psychōsis, is f	– psychosis, any kind of mental disorder
puerperālis, e	– puerperal
senīlis, e	– senile
situs, us m	– a position, a site
spasmus, i m	– a spasm, a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of a muscle
spongiōsus, a, um	– spongy (spongious), full of small holes, similar to a sponge
thyroideus, a, um	– thyroid
traumatīcus, a, um	– traumatic
verus, a, um	– true
viscus, ěris n	– a viscus or viscera, the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities–pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

### English-Latin glossary

acquired	– acquisītus, a, um
anemia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood	– anaemia, ae f
benign	– benignus, a, um
bladder	– vesīca, ae f
cerebral	– cerebrālis, e

chronic	– chronīcus, a, um
composite	– composītus, a, um
deficiency	– deficientia, ae f
diffuse	– diffūsus, a, um
direct	– directus, a, um
dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space	– hydrops, ōpis m
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue	– dysplasia, ae f
enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines	– enterītis, itīdis f
edema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body	– oedēma, ātis n
fetal	– fetalis, e
fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue	– fibrōma, ātis n
fibrous	– fibrōsus, a, um
gall	– biliāris, e; felleus, a, um
gall bladder	– vesīca biliāris (fellea)
geminated	– geminātus, a, um
gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness	– gigantismus, i m
glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences	– glaucōma, ātis n
glossitis, an inflammation of the tongue	– glossītis, itīdis f
goiter, an enlargement of the thyroid gland	– struma, ae f
hematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood	– haematōma, ātis n
headache	– dolor (ōris m) capitis (caput, itīs n)
hepatitis, inflammation of the liver	– hepatītis, itīdis f
immune	– immūnus, a, um
immunodeficiency	– immunodeficientia, ae f
infective	– infectīvus, a, um
intravenous	– intravenōsus, a, um
lymphocytic	– lymphocytīcus, a, um
meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain of spinal cord	– meningītis, itīs f
metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatic or direct contiguity	– metastāsis, is f
monostotic, pertaining to a single bone	– monostotīcus, a, um
narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis	– narcōsis, is f
odontome, a solid or cystic tumor occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells concerned in tooth development	– odontōma, ātis n
odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth	– odontogēnus, a, um

osteoporosis, a rarefaction of bone	– osteoporōsis, is f
pelvic	– pelvīcus, a, um
postoperative	– postoperatīvus, a, um
psychogenic, developing or originating because of mental causes	– psychogēnus, a, um
secondary	– secundarius, a, um
senile	– senīlis, e
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life, producing a thrombus	– thrombōsis, is f
viral	– virālis, e
with (+Abl.)	– cum

## LESSON 42

# MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS.

## PART 3

### § 218. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

*abscessus* gingivālis; *avulsio* nervi phrenīci; calcūlus venōsus; *carcinōma* in situ; *combustio* thermālis faciēi; *commotio* cerēbri; *congelatio* digitōrum pedis dextri; *ectopia* oculus; *erosio* cervicis utēri; *extractio* corpōris aliēni; *insultus* haemorrhagīcus (ischaemicus); *polŷpi* laryngis; *punctio* lumbālis; ruptūra ligamentōrum hepātis; *sectio* cadavēris; *transplantātum* corneae; ulcus perfōrans duodēni; *verrūcae* planae

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

breast *amputation*; chemical burn of the esophagus; closed fracture of the right femur; *concussion* of the retina; *evisceration* of the eye; functional aortic *stenosis*; internal injury; lung calculi; open operation; partial *ophthalmoplegy*; rib *resection* and resection of a joint; splenic *puncture*; subcutaneous wound; *replantation* of the left hand; tendon *transplantation*; traumatic *erythema*; *ulceration* of the stomach

### Dictionaries to lesson 42

#### Latin-English vocabulary

abscessus, us m	– abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration
aliēnus, a, um	– foreign
avulsio, ōnis f	– avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a follow structure
cadāver, ēris n	cadaver, dead body, a corps
combustio, ōnis f	– burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

commotio, ōnis f	– concussion, a violent shaking of a structure
congelatio, ōnis f	– congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
ectopia, ae f	– ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part
erosio, ōnis f	– erosion, any superficial destructive process
extractio, ōnis f	– extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body
gingivālis, e	– gingival
haemorrhagicus, a, um	– hemorrhagic, belonging to hemorrhage, escape of blood from any part of the vascular system
insultus, us m	– stroke, a sudden seizure as a result of an acute vascular cerebral disturbance
ischaemicus, a, um	– ischemic, relating to ischemia, insufficient blood supply to a part of the body
lumbālis, e	– lumbar
partiālis, e	– partial
perforans, ntis	– perforating
phrenicus, a, um	– phrenic
planus, a, um	– plane
polypus, i m	– a polyp, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface
punctio, ōnis f (punctūra, ae f)	– a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it
ruptūra, ae f	– rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of a bone or another structure
sectio, ōnis f	– a section, the act of cutting
sectio cadaveris	– a post - mortem examination of dead body, an autopsy
thermalis, e	– thermal
transplantātum, i n	– a transplant, a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another
ulcus, ěris n	– ulcer, a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface
verrūca, ae f	– a wart, a small circumscribed cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface

### English-Latin glossary

amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or portion of a limb or of any other appendage	– amputatio, ōnis f
aortic	– aorticus, a, um
breast	– mamma, ae f
burn	– combustio, ōnis f
calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body	– calcūlus, i m
chemical	– chemicus, a, um
closed	– clausus, a, um
concussion, a violent shaking of a soft structure	– commotio, ōnis f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperemia	– erythēma, ātis n
evisceration, a removal of the contents of an organ or part of the body	– evisceratio, ōnis f

fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone	– fractūra, ae f
functional	– functionālis, e
injury	– laesio, ōnis f
open	– apertus, a, um
operation	– operatio, ōnis f
ophthalmoplegy, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles	– ophthalmoplegia, ae f
partial	– partiālis, e
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it	– punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f
resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.	– resectio, ōnis f
splenic	– splenīcus, a, um
stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ	– stenōsis, is f
stomach	– gaster, tris f
subcutaneous	– subcutaneus, a, um
tendon	– tendo, ĩnis m
transplantation, the operation of transfer of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function	– transplantatio, ōnis f
traumatic	– traumātīcus, a, um
ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer	– ulceratio, ōnis f
wound	– vulnus, ěris n

### § 219. Model (Sample) of the final test in clinical terminology

1. Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meaning:

1) ear 2) child 3) head 4) voice 5) quick 6) short 7) many 8) lachrymal sac

2. Compose one-word terms with the dictionary form with the following meaning:

1) specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution 2) results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood 3) any kind of pain affecting a joint 4) any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair 5) the origin and development of bone marrow 6) a person with an unusually small size of head 7) acute inflammation of the gray mater of the brain 8) calculus on the teeth

3. Write down the Latin dictionary form and give the full definition of the following terms in English:

1) iatrogenic 2) psychiatrist 3) apnoea 4) phlebography 5) erythema 6) megaduodenum 7) galactostasis 8) typhlocele

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and the full definition of italicized words; translate into Latin the multiword terms:

1) acquired immune deficiency *syndrome* 2) secondary *glaucoma* 3) *replantation* of the left hand 4) partial *ophthalmoplegy* 5) chemical burn of the esophagus 6) *dropsy* of the gall bladder 7) monostotic fibrous *dysplasia* 8) benign lymphocytic *meningitis*

## LITERATURE

1. *Алексеева, Г. З.* Пособие по латинскому языку для студентов 1 курса медицинского университета, обучающихся на английском языке / Г. З. Алексеева / под ред. Р. В. Кадушко : Витебск, ВГМУ, 2010. 128с.
2. *Англо-русский медицинский словарь* : более 90 000 терминов / Сост. И. Ю. Марковина и др. М. : Медицинское информационное агенство, 2008. 896 с.
3. *Болотина, А. Ю.* Словарь лекарственных растений (латинский, английский, немецкий, русский). Ок. 12 000 терминов. М. : РУССО, 1999. 384 с.
4. *Волмянская, О. А.* Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская. Минск : Асар, 2000. 304 с.
5. *Международная анатомическая номенклатура* (с официальным списком русских эквивалентов) / под ред. Л. Л. Колесникова. М. : Медицина, 2003. 424 с.
6. *Общая рецептура = General prescription* : учеб.-метод. пособие / А. В. Волчек [и др.]. Минск : БГМУ, 2015. 32 с.
7. *Русско-англо-латинский словарь крылатых слов и выражений* / сост. А. С. Альбов. М. : АСТ ; СПб. : Сова, 2006. 606 с.
8. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб. пособие / А. З. Цисык : пер. на англ. яз. А. З. Цисык. Минск : БГМУ, 2010. 212 с.
9. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык : учеб. для студентов учреждений, обеспечивающих получение высш. мед. образования / А. З. Цисык. Минск : ТетраСистемс, 2006. 448 с.
10. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык для студентов фармацевтического факультета: учеб.-метод. пособие в 2-х частях / А. З. Цисык, Н. А. Круглик, С. К. Ромашкевичус. 2-е изд. Ч. 1. Минск : БГМУ, 2013. 244 с. ; Ч. 2. Минск : БГМУ, 2013. 108 с.
11. *Цисык, А. З.* Краткий этимологический словарь фармацевтических терминов, обозначающих классы, группы и подгруппы лекарственных средств / А. З. Цисык. Минск : БГМУ, 2015. 84 с.
12. *Arnaudov, G.* Terminologia medica polyglotta. Медицинская терминология на пяти языках. София : Медицина и физкультура, 1979. 943 с.
13. *Butterworths Medical Dictionary.* 2nd ed. London – Boston – Sydney – Wellington – Durban – Toronto : Butterworth, 1979. 1942 p.
14. *Kondratiev, D.* Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology for Medical Students / Д. К. Кондратьев, О. Е. Вылегжанина, Ю. В. Князева Гродно : Гр. ГМУ, 2005. 250 с.
15. *Stadman's Medical Dictionary.* 25th ed. Baltimore – Hong Kong – London – Sydney : Williams and Wilkins, 1989. 1751 p.



## LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**abdōmen, ĩnis n**  
abdomen

**abscessus, us m** abscess,  
an accumulation of pus  
circumscribed in a cavity  
produced by tissue  
disintegration

**achlorhydria, ae f**  
achlorhydria,

complete lack of free  
hydrochloric acid in

the gastric juice

**acūtus, a, um** acute

**adenalgia, ae f** adenalgia,  
a painful condition of a  
gland

**adenasthenia, ae f**  
adenasthenia,

functional deficiency in a  
gland

**adenocarcinōma, ātis n**  
adenocarcinoma,

a carcinomatous tumor of  
glandular

epithelium and  
connective tissue

**aērobion, i n** aerob,  
aerobion, a  
microorganism which  
utilizes and assimilates  
atmospheric oxygen  
during growth

**aetiologicus, a, um**  
aetiologic, based on the

aetiology – the  
science of the  
investigation of the  
cause or origin of  
any phenomenon

**aliēnus, a, um**  
foreign

**allergĭcus, a, um**  
allergic

**alopecia, ae f**  
alopecia, loss of hair

**amenorrhoea, ae f**  
amenorrhoea,

the pathological  
absence or stoppage  
of the menstrual  
discharge from the  
uterus

**amnesia, ae f**  
amnesia,

loss of memory of  
varying degree  
**anaērobion, i n**  
anaerobe, a  
microorganism  
which is able to exist  
and multiply being  
deprived of either  
free oxygen or air

**anaesthesiolōgus, i  
m** a specialist in the  
administration of  
anaesthetics,  
anaesthesiologist

**angiopathia, ae f**  
angiopathy,

any disease of blood  
vessels

**anthropogēnus, a,  
um** antropogenic,  
caused by human  
activities

**anthropologia, ae f**  
anthropology, science  
studying the man in  
the process of his  
evolution

**anthropolōgus, i m**  
anthropologist,  
specialist studying  
the man in the  
process of his  
evolution

**apodia, ae f** apodia,  
congenital absence  
of feet

**arteria, ae f** artery

**arthromalacia, ae f**  
arthromalacia,

softening of the  
joints

**asthenia, ae f** loss  
of vital forces,  
asthenia

**autohaemotherapia  
, ae f**  
autohaemotherapy,  
a method of  
treatment in which  
the patient's own  
blood is  
administered to him

**autopepsia, ae f**  
autopepsia,

the process of  
spontaneous  
disintegration of  
cells and tissues  
resulting from  
the action of  
intracellular  
enzymes

**avulsio, ōnis f**  
avulsion,

the forcible  
removing a  
portion from a  
hollow  
structure

## B

**bacteriālis, e**  
bacterial,  
originating,  
derived from,  
belonging to or  
consisting of  
bacteria

**benignus, a, um**  
benign

**biologia, ae f**  
biology, science  
studying forms  
of life and living  
organisms

**blepharĭtis, itĭdis  
f** blepharitis,

inflammation of  
the eyelids

**blepharoplastĭc  
a, ae f** a plastic

operation to restore an eyelid

**brachycephālus, i m**  
brachycephalic,

an individual with disproportionately short head

**brachydactylia, ae f**  
brachydactylia, a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes

**bradyphagia, ae f**  
bradyphagia slowing of swallowing

**bradypnoë, ës f**  
bradypnoea,

an abnormally slow rate of breathing

**broncholithiāsis, is f**  
broncholithiasis, the condition in which calculi occur in the lumen of bronchial tubes

## C

**cadāver, ëris n** a corpse; dead body

**calcūlus, i m** calculus, a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body

**carcinōma, ätis n** a carcinoma

malignant epithelial tumor

**carcinomatōsis, is f**  
carcinomatosis, the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body

**cardiogēnus, a, um**  
cardiogenic, arising because of the heart

**cardiolōgus, i m** a cardiologist,

specialist treating heart diseases

**cerēbrum, i n**  
cerebrum, brain

**cervix, icis f** cervix

**cholecystītis, itīdis f**  
cholecystitis,

inflammation of the gallbladder

**chondropathia, ae f**  
chondropathy,

any disease affecting a cartilage

**chronīcus, a, um**  
chronic, long continued

**chylothōrax, ācis m**  
chylothorax, the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity

**colpotomia, ae f**  
colpotomy,

any cutting operation on the vagina

**combustio, ōnis f**  
burn, an injury

caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

**commotio, ōnis f** a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure

**congelatio, ōnis f**  
congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing

**congenītus, a, um**  
congenital

**continuus, a, um**  
continued

**cor, cordis n** heart

**cornea, ae f** cornea

**corpus, ōris n** body

**craniometria, ae f**  
craniometry, measurement of the skull,

**cryochirurgia, ae f**  
cryosurgery surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing

**cryotherapie, ae f**  
cryotherapy,

the science of the use of cold as a

therapeutic measure

**cryptophthalmia, ae f**  
cryptophthalmia, congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen

**cystorrhagia, ae f**  
cystorrhagia

hemorrhage from the urinary bladder

**cystoschīsis, is f**  
cystoschisis, a congenital fissure of urinary bladder

## D

**dacryostenōsis, is f**  
dacryostenosis,

narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland

**dactylospasmus, ae f**  
dactylospasm,

spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe

**decapsulatio, ōnis f**  
decapsulation,

surgical removal of a capsule or sheath

**deformans, ntis**  
deforming

**dermatomycōsis, is f**  
dermatomycosis, a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi

**dermatōsis, is f**  
dermatosis, any disease of the skin

**descensus, us m**  
descent, the sinking down or

protrusion of a viscus or its part

**desmorrhaxis, is f**  
desmorrhaxis,

rupture of a ligament

**desmurgia, ae f**  
desmurgy, the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part

**dexter, tra, trum** right

**diabētes, ae m** diabetes, anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism

**diabeticus, a, um** diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes

**diagnōsis, is f** diagnosis, medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers

**digitus, i m** finger, toe

**disarticulatio, ōnis f**  
disarticulation,

separation or amputation in a joint, without cutting through bone

**dolichocephalia, ae f**  
dolichocephalia,

the state of having a relatively long skull

**duodēnum, i n**  
duodenum

**dysgeusia, ae f**  
dysgeusia, impairment or

perversion of the sense of taste

**dysthyreōsis, is f**  
imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

## E

**ectopia, ae f**  
ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part

**embryologia, ae f**  
the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology

**embryotomia, ae f**  
dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy

**empyēma, ātis n** a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema

**encephalogramma, ātis n** any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space

of the brain, encephalogram

**enterocolitis, itidis f**  
an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

**erosio, ōnis f** any superficial destructive process, erosion

**erythropenia, ae f** a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

**evisceratio, ōnis f**  
removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration

**extractio, ōnis f** the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction

## F

**faciālis, e** facial

**facies, ēi f** face

**febris, is f** fever

**foetor, ōris m** a foul odour or stench, fetor

**flavus, a, um** yellow

## G

**galactorrhoea, ae f** an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea

**gaster, tris f**  
stomach

**gastrocēle, es f**  
hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele

**gastrorrhoea, ae f** gastrorrhoea, the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus

**gastrospasmus, i m**  
gastrospasm, an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle,

**gastrostōma, ātis n**  
gastrostoma, natural or artificial gastric fistula

**geriāter, tri m**  
geriatrician, a specialist

treating diseases of the aged

**glandūla, ae f** gland

**gingivālis, e** gingival

**glossoplegia, ae f**  
glossoplegia,

paralysis of the tongue

**glycaemia, ae f**  
glycaemia, a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar

above normal amounts

**granulōma, ātis n**  
granuloma, a tumour composed of granulation tissue

**gravīda, ae f** gravid, a woman who is pregnant

**gynaecolōgus, i m**  
gynecologist,

a specialist for treatment genital diseases in women

## H

**haemarthrōsis, sis f**  
haemarthrosis, extravasation of blood into a joint **haematologia, ae f**, hematology,

branch medicine studying blood and its diseases

**haemorrhagicus, a, um**  
haemorrhagic, belonging

to haemorrhage, escape of blood from any part of the vascular system

**halitōsis, is f**  
halitosis, fetid or offensive breath

**hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f)**  
hemianopsia (hemianopia), loss of half the vision in each eye

**hemicrania, ae f**  
hemicrania,

a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches

**hemiplegia, ae f**  
hemiplegia,

paralysis of one half of the body

**hepar, ātis n** liver

**herpes, ētis m**  
herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles

**hidradenītis, itīdis f**  
hidradenitis,

inflammation of the sweat glands,

**histolýsis, is f**  
histolysis,

spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue

**hydromētra, ae f**  
hydrometra,

an accumulation of watery fluid in

the cavity of the uterus

**hyperaemia, ae f**  
hyperaemia, an excess of blood in any part of the body

**hyperkeratōsis, is f**  
hyperkeratosis, hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin,

**hyperthermia, ae f**  
hyperthermia,

very high body temperature

**hypochylia, ae f**  
hypochylia

a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened

**hyposalivatio, ōnis f**  
hyposalivation,

a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva

**hypotonia, ae f**  
hypotonia,

lessened tension in any body structure

## I

**iatrogēnus, a, um** iatrogenic,

happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks

**implantatio, ōnis f**  
implantation,

the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body

**implantātum, i n** implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft

**indigestio, ōnis f**  
indigestion,

any disturbance of the normal process of digestion

**infarctus, us m** infarct, infarction,

a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery

**infectio, ōnis f** infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication

**inflammatio, ōnis f** an inflammation

**insufficiētia, ae f** insufficiency,

the state of being inadequate to perform normal function

**insultus, us m** a stroke, a sudden seizure as a result of an acute cerebral vascular disturbance

**intestīnum, i n** intestine

**inversus, a, um** inverse

**iris, ĩdis f** iris

**ischaemĭcus, a, um** ischemic, relating to ischemia, insufficient blood supply to a part of the body

## K

**keratotomia, ae f** keratotomy, making an incision into the cornea

## L

**labiālis, e** labial

**laparogastrostomia, ae f** laparogastrostomy, the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach

**laparoscopia, ae f** laparoscopy,

the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope

**larynx, yngis m** larynx

**latens, ntis** hidden

**leucocytōsis, is f** leucocytōsis, an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood

**ligamentum, i n** ligament

**lipuria, ae f** lipuria, the presence of

an oily emulsion or fat in the urine

**lumbālis, e** lumbar

**lymphangiōma, ātis n** lymphangioma, a

tumor formed of lymphatic tissue

**lymphostāsis, is f** lymphostasis,

cessation of the flow of lymph

**maculōsus, a, um** maculate, marked by maculae

**mastogramma, ātis n** result of breast X-ray examination, mastogram

**megacōlon, i n** megacolon, a condition in which there is great dilatation of the large intestine

**melanoderma, ātis n** melanoderma, a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin

**melanōsis, is f** melanosis,

an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues

**mellĭtus, a, um** mellitus (diabetes)

characterized by a high -

fasting blood sugar

**menalgia, ae f** menalgia, painful menstruation

**meningiōma, ātis n** meningioma, a

meningeal tumor, thought to arise

from the arachnoidal villi

**mesenterĭcus, a, um** mesenteric

**metamorphōsis, is f** metamorphosis,

change of form or structure

**microgenia, ae f** microgenia, a

condition in which the chin is

of unusually small size

**micromyelia, ae f** micromyelia,

general reduction in size of the

spinal cord

**micronychia, ae f**  
micronychia,  
small nail or nails

**monodactylismus, i m**  
monodactylism, a congenital condition in which one finger or toe only is present on the hand or the foot

**morbus, i m** a disease

**myasthenia, ae f**  
myasthenia, weakness of muscles from whatever cause

**myelītis, itīdis f** myelitis,  
inflammation of bone marrow **myocēle, es f** hernia of a muscle,  
myocele

**myoplegia, ae f**  
myoplegia, paralysis of muscle or a condition in which is decreased muscular force

**N**

**necropneumonia, ae f**  
necropneumonia, gangrene of the lung

**neonātus, i m a** newly born child

**neoplasma, ātis n**  
neoplasm,  
any new and morbid formation of tissue

**nephrolithiāsis, is f**  
nephrolithiasis,  
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi

**nervus, i m** nerve

**neuralgia, ae f**  
neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis

**neurītis, itīdis f**  
neuritis, an inflammation of a nerve

**neuropatholōgus, i m** neuropathologist, a specialist treating diseases of nervous system

**occipitālis, e**  
occipital

**ocūlus, i m** eye

**odontolīthus, i m**  
odontolith, calculus on the teeth

**odontogenēsis, is f**  
odontogenesis,  
the origin and formative development of teeth

**O**

**oligocytaemia, ae f**  
oligocythaemia  
a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency

**oligophrenia, ae f**  
oligophrenia,  
congenital lack of the mentality

**oncolōgus, i m**  
oncologist,  
a specialist treating tumors

**onychomycōsis, is f**  
onychomycosis,  
infection of nail caused by a fungus

**ophthalmoscopia, ae f**  
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye

**os, oris n** mouth

**osteītis, itīdis f**  
osteitis,  
inflammation of bone due to infection or injury

**osteōma, ātis n**  
osteoma, an innocent tumor of bone

**osteomalacia, ae f**  
osteomalacia,  
softening of the bones

**osteonecrōsis, is f** osteonecrosis,  
death of bony tissue

**osteopathia, ae f** osteopathia,  
disease of bones

**osteoporōsis, is f** osteoporosis,  
rarefaction of bone

**otorhinolaryngologia, ae f**  
otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx

**P**

**pachydactylia, ae f**  
pachydactyly,  
abnormal thickening of a finger or toe

**palatoplegia, ae f** palatoplegia,

paralysis affecting the soft palate

**palpatio, ōnis f**

palpation, the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs

**pantalgia, ae f** pantalgia, pain

affecting all parts of the body

**partialis, e** partiāl

**percussio, ōnis f**

percussion,

the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed

**perfōrans, ntis**

perforating

**pes, pedis m** leg

**phlebocarcinōma, ātis n**

phlebocarcinōma,

a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein

**photophobia, ae f**

photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light

**phrenicus, a, um**

phrenic

**phthisiāter, tri m**

phthisiotherapist, a specialist treating tuberculosis

**physiologia, ae f**

physiology,

science studying normal vital processes in human body

**phytotherapia, ae f**

phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical plants

**planus, a, um** plane

**pneumocentēsis, is f**

pneumocentesis, lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity

**pneumoēmpyēma, ātis n**

pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within pleural space

**poliomyelitis, itidis f**

poliomyelitis,

an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses

**polymastia, ae f**

polymastia, the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands

**polypus, i m** a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface, a polyp (plur. polypi)

**polyuria, ae f**

polyuria, increase in the amount of the excreted urine

**proctolōgus, i m**

proctologist,

a specialist treating diseases of rectum

**prognathia, ae f**

prognathism,

a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws

**prolapsus, us m**

prolapse,

the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part

**prophylaxis, is f**

prophylaxis, the art

of preventing disease

**pseudoarthrōsis, is f**

pseudarthrosis,

a false joint formed between the

fragments of a fractured bone

which have failed to unit

**psychiatria, ae f**

psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases

**psychōsis, is f**

psychosis, any kind of mental disorder

**puerperalis, e**

puerperal

**punctio, ōnis f**

a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling

either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it

**pyelītis, itīdis f** pyelitis,

inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney

**pyogēnus, a, um**  
pyogenic, forming or producing pus

**pyopneumothōrax, ācis m** pyopneumothorax, an inflammatory condition characterized by the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity

**pyosalpinx, ngis f**  
pyosalpinx,

an inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed to pus formation

## R

**rectum, i n** rectum

**renālis, e** renal

**replantatio, ōnis f**  
replantation, the plantation of a removed part of the whole again

**resectio, ōnis f** resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.

**rhinogramma, ātis n**  
rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose

**ruptūra, ae f** a rupture, the braking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure

## S

**salpingectomia, ae f**  
salpingectomy,

excision of a uterine tube

**salpingolysis, is f**  
salpingolysis,

breaking-down of adhesions in a

uterine tube

**sarcōma, ātis n**  
sarcoma, a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives

**sclerōma, ātis n**  
scleroma, an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx

**sectio, ōnis f** a section, the act of cutting

**sectio cadavēris** a post - mortem examination of dead body

**senīlis, e** senile

**simplex, ĩcis** simple

**situs, us m** a position, a site

**sive** or

**somatologia, ae f**  
somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body

**spasmophilia, ae f**  
spasmophilia,

a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm

**spasmus, i m** a spasm,

a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle

**sphygmogramma, ātis n** sphygmogram, a record of the arterial pulse waves

**splanchnosclerōsis, is f**

splanchnosclerosis, hardening of any viscus

**splenomegalia, ae f**  
splenomegalia, enlargement of the spleen

**spondylitis, itīdis f**  
spondylitis,

inflammation of the spine

**spondylodēsis, is f**  
spondylodesis,

the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft

**spongiōsus, a, um** spongy (spongi-ous), full of small holes, like a sponge

**stenothōrax, ācis m**  
stenothorax,

a short, narrow thorax or chest

**stomatomycōsis, is f**  
stomatomycosis, any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopial fungus

**stomatoscopia, ae f**  
stomatoscopy,

visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity

**syndrōmum, i n a**  
syndrome,

a distinct group of signs  
which form a  
characteristic clinical  
picture of the disease

## T

**tachycardia, ae f**  
tachycardia,

rapid action of the heart

**tenorrhaphia, ae f**  
tenorrhaphy,

an operation for the  
suturing of the divided  
ends of a tendon

**tenotomia, ae f**  
tenotomy, the cutting  
of a tendon

**thermālis, e** thermal

**thermotherapia, ae f**  
thermotherapy,

the use of heat in the  
treatment of disease,

**thoracocentēsis, is f**  
thoracocentesis, a  
puncture of the wall of  
the thorax with the aim of  
any diagnostic

**thrombocytopoēsis, is f**  
thrombocytopoiesis,

the formation of blood  
platelets **thromboticus, a,**  
**um** thrombotic,

characterized or  
caused by  
thrombosis,

**thyroideus, a, um**  
thyroid

**thyr(e)otoxicōsis, is f**  
thyrotoxicosis,

any toxic condition  
attributable to

hyperactivity of the  
thyroid gland

**toponeurōsis, is f**  
toponeurosis,

localized neurosis, a  
functional

derangement in any  
part of the body

**toxicomania, ae f**  
toxicomania,

an insane desire for  
poison

**toxicōsis, is f**  
toxicosis, the

pathological  
condition caused by

the absorption  
of poison

**transplantātum, i n**  
transplant, a piece of  
tissue to transfer  
from one site to  
another

**traumatīcus, a, um**  
traumatic

**typhlectasia, ae f**  
typhlectasia,

dilatation of the  
caecum

## U

**ulcus, ěris n** ulcer, a  
localized necrotic  
lesion of the skin or  
a mucocoe tissue

**unguis, is m** nail

**uraemia, ae f**  
uraemia

the condition which  
is associated with  
the retention of  
metabolic products  
in the blood and  
disturbance of acid-  
base ratio of the  
latter

**uranoschīsis, is f**  
uranoschisis, cleft  
palate, a congenital  
fissure in the midline  
of the hard palate

**utērus, i m** uterus

## V

**venōsus, a, um**  
venous

**verrūca, ae f** wart, a  
circumscribed  
cutaneous  
excrescence

**verus, a, um** true

**viscus, ěris n** the  
internal organs of

the body which  
are closely  
related to the  
great serous  
cavities : pleural,  
pericardial or  
peritoneal

**vitium, i n a**  
defect or a vice

## X

**xanthopsia, ae f**  
xanthopsia, a  
disturbance of  
color vision,  
when everything  
appears yellow

**xanthōsis, is f**  
xanthosis,  
yellowish  
discolor-ration,  
especially of the  
skin

**xerophthalmia,**  
**ae f**  
xerophthalmia  
(=xeroma), a  
morbid  
condition of  
eyes  
characterized by  
a shrunken  
appearance of  
the conjunctiva

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

### A

- an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon** dolichocōlon, i n
- abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea** tachypnoë, ës f
- abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis** angiostenōsis, is f
- abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy** stenostomia, ae f
- abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia** tachyphagia, ae f
- abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia** hypopepsia, ae f
- abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia** bradykinesia, ae f
- abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly** pachydactyilia, ae f
- an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium** pyopericardium, i n
- achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice** achylia, ae f
- acquired** acquisitus, a, um
- the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction** extractio, ōnis f
- acute** acūtus, a, um
- acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis** polioencephalītis, itīdis f
- adenoma of the eyelid, blepharo-adenoma** blepharoadenōma, ātis n
- adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body** adiponecrōsis, is f
- aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmo-spheric oxygen** aërobion, i n
- aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live** aërobīcus, a, um
- aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue** aglossia, ae f
- alimentary** alimentarius, a, um
- allergic** allergīcus, a, um
- amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage** amputatio, ōnis f
- anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist although deprived of free oxygen or air** anaërobion, i n
- anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen** anaërobīcus, a, um
- anemia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood** anaemia, ae f
- angiology, the science of the blood vessels** angiologia, ae f
- angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels** angiōma, ātis n
- anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution** anthropolōgus, i m
- any disease affecting ligaments, desmopathy** desmopathia, ae f
- any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate** transsudātum, i n
- aortic** aortīcus, a, um

**apnoea, the cessation in breathing** apnoë, ës f

**arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint** arthrocentēsis, is f

**arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint** arthralgia, ae f

**atrichia, not having hair** atrichia, ae f

**atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause** atrophia, ae f

**atypical** atypicus, a, um

**autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one's own larynx with a laryngoscope** autolaryngoscopia, ae f

**autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by material taken from another part of the body** autoplastica, ae f

**autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of death** autopsia, ae f

**B**

**benign** benignus, a, um

**biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances** biopharmaceutica, ae f

**biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of tissue cut from the living body** biopsia, ae f

**bladder** vesica, ae f

**blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid** blepharotomia, ae f

**brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus** brachyoesophagus, i m

**bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate** bradycardia, ae f

**branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics** paediatrica, ae f

**branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology** proctologia, ae f

**breast** mamma, ae f

**bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi** bronchitis, itidis f

**burn, an injury caused by heat, by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat** combustio, ònis f

## C

**calculosis, the condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body** calculosis, is f

**calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter formed in any part of body** calculus, i m

**calculus on the teeth, odontolith** odontolithus, i m

**cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma** cancerogēnus, a, um

**carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor** carcinōma, ātis n

**a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma** chondrōma, ātis n

**a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma** adenocarcinōma, ātis n

**cardinal** cardinālis, e

**cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart work** cardiogramma, ātis n

**cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart activity** cardiographia, ae f

**causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous**

oncogĕnus, a, um

**cephalalgia, pain in the head** cephalalgia,ae f

**cerebral** cerebrālis, e

**cerebrospinal** cerebrospinālis,e

**changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood, anemia**

anaemia, ae f

**chemical** chemīcus, a, um

**cholecystolithiasis, the condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct**

cholecystolithiāsīs, is f

**chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses**

chondroporōsis, is f

**chronic** chronīcus, a, um

**a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis**

psoriāsīs, is f

**chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph**

chyluria, ae f

**closed** clausus, a, um

**collapse, a state of extreme weakness with**

**physical and mental depression** collapsus, us m

**colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon**

colonorrhagia, ae f

**colpocystotomy, surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina**

colpocystotomia, ae f

**colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the**

**uterus through the vagina** colpohysteropexia, ae f

**colpomyomectomy, removal of a my-oma from the uterus by the vaginal route**

colpomyomec-tomia, ae f

**coma, the state of complete loss of**

**consciousness from which the pa-tient**

**cannot be roused by any ordinary external**

**stimulus** coma, ātis n

**composite** compositus, a, um

**a concussion, a violent shaking of a soft structure**

commotio, ōnis f

**a condition characterized by the presence of**

**gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis**

nephrolithiāsīs, is f

**a condition in which the ability to swal-low is**

**lacking, aphagia** aphagia, ae f

**a condition in which the amount of gastric juice**

**is lessened, hypochylia** hypochylia, ae f

**a condition in which there are abnormally short**

**fingers or toes, brachydactylia**

brachydactylia, ae f

**a condition of enlargement of the liver,**

**hepatomegalia** hepatomegalia, ae f

**congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition**

**caused by freezing** congelatio, ōnis f

**congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or several**

**arches, spondyloschisis** spondyloschīsis, is f

**congenital fissure of the urinary bladder,**

**cystoschisis** cystoschīsis,

is f

**cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue**

**is destroyed by freezing** cryochirurgia, ae f

**cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt**

cryptolithus, i m

**cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis**

cryptopsoriāsīs, is f

**cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder**

cystītis, itīdis f

**cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells**

cytologia, ae f

## D

**dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears**

dacryorrhoea, ae f

**deficiency**

deficientia, ae f

**dermatitis, inflammation of the skin**

dermatītis, itīdis f

**desmalgia, pain in a ligament**

desmalgia, ae f

**desmotomy, incision of the ligament**

desmotomia, ae f

**diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics**

iridodiagnostīca,

ae f

**didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot**

didactylismus, i m

**diffuse**

diffūsus, a, um

**dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia**

gastrectasia, ae f

**direct**

directus, a, um

**a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea –**

pyorrhoea, ae f

**a disease**

morbus, i m

**any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy**

arthropathia, ae f

**the disease caused by infection with the mycobacterium tuberculosis**

tuberculōsis, is f

**any diseased condition of the viscera,**

splanchnopathy splanchnopathia, ae f

**any disease of skin, dermatosis**

dermatosis, is f

**a disturbance of color vision when everything**

appears yellow, xanthopsia xanthopsia, ae f

**dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone**

upon another in a joint dislocatio, ōnis f

**dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of**

normal diameter dolichocōlon, i n

**dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in**

tissue or cavity space hydrops, ōpis m

**dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and**

lower abdomen at or about the time of the

menses dysmenorrhoea, ae f

**dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue**

dysplasia, ae f

**dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity**

dystonia, ae f

**dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and**

functions of an organ or tissue due to

perverted nutrition dystrophia, ae f

## E

**ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or**

traumatic displacement of an organ or part

ectopia, ae f

**eczema, a non contagious inflammatory disease**

of the skin with much itching and burning

eczēma, ātis n

**embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are**

present in the blood embolaemia, ae f

**embryectomy, the surgical removal of the**

embryo embryectomia, ae f

**embryopathology, the branch of pathology**

concerned with defective or abnormal

development of embryo embryopathologia,

ae f

**emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of**

the lungs are dilated emphysēma, ātis n

**encephalomalacia, softening of the brain**  
encephalomalacia, ae f

**encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain** encephalopathia, ae f

**endogenous, having origin within the organism**  
endogēnus, a, um

**endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus**  
endometrītis, itīdis f

**enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit** enophthalmus, i m

**enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines** enterītis, itīdis f

**enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach** enterogastrītis, itīdis f

**enterolithiasis, the formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine** enterolithiāsīs, is f

**enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine** enteromegalia, ae f

**the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion** invasio, ōnis f

**erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia** erythēma, ātis n

**evisceration, a removal of the contents of an organ or part** evisceratio, ōnis f

**an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea**  
galactorrhoea, ae f

**excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia** hyperaesthesia, ae f

**exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism** exogēnus, a, um

**eye** oculus, i m

## F

**fetal** fetālis, e

**femur** femur, ōris n

**fever** febris, is f

**fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue** fibrōma, ātis n

**fibrous** fibrōsus, a, um

**any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate** transsudātum, i n

**the formation of concretions, lithiasis** lithiāsīs, is f

**fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone**  
fractūra, ae f

**functional** functionālis, e

## G

**galactostasis, arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk** galactostāsīs, is f

**gall** biliāris, e; felleus, a, um

**gall bladder** vesīca fellea (biliāris)

**geminated** geminātus, a, um

**gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged** gerontologia, ae f

**gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness**  
gigantismus, i m

**glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences** glaucōma, ātis n

**glossitis, inflammation of the tongue** glossītis, itīdis f

**gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws** gnathalgia, ae f

**gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla**  
gnathoschīsis, is f

**goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland**  
struma, ae f

## H

**haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases** haematologia, ae f

**haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood** haematōma, ātis n

**haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord** haematomyelia, ae f

**haematosalpinx, collection and retention of blood in a uterine tube** haematosalpinx, ngis f

**haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood**  
haemogramma, ātis n

**haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females**  
haemophilia, ae f

**hand** manus, us f

**hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis**  
osteosclerōsis, is f

**headache** dolor (ōris m) capītis (caput, ītis n)

**hemiatrophy, atrophy only affecting one half of the body, or one half of an organ**  
hemiatrophia, ae f

**hepatic** hepaticus, a, um

**hepatitis, inflammation of the liver** hepatītis, itīdis f

**hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver** hepatomegalia, ae f

**hereditary** hereditarius, a, um

**herniation of the uterus, metrocele** metrocēle, es f

**hidrosis 1) the process of secreting sweat 2) abnormally profuse sweating** hidrōsis, is f

**hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint** hydrarthrōsis, is f

**hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus** hydromētra, ae f

**hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body** hyperaesthesia, ae f

**hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood** hyperglycaemia, ae f

**hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva**  
hypersalivatio, ōnis f

**hypertension, high arterial blood pressure**  
hypertensio, ōnis f

**hypogalactia, the secretion of too small quantity of milk** hypogalactia, ae f

**hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about**

**hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration** hypoglycaemīcus, a, um

**hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory** hypomnesia, ae f

**hypophrenia, feebleness of mind** hypophrenia, ae f

**hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part** hypoplasia, ae f

**hypothermia, deficiency of body heat**  
hypothermia, ae f

## I

**iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or**

**injudicious remarks, iatrogenic**

**immune** immūnus, a, um

**immunodeficiency**  
immunodeficientia, ae f

**impairment of the voice, dysphonia** dysphonia, ae f

**implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft**  
implantātum, i n

**implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body** implantatio, ōnis f

**incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysterectomy**  
laparohysterectomy, ae f

**an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis** leucocytōsis, is f

**infective** infectīvus, a, um

**inflammation of the cornea, keratitis** keratītis, itīdis f

~ **affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis** pyelocystītis, itīdis f

~ **in the nail fold, panaris** panaritium, i n

~ **of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis**  
laparomyosītis, itīdis f

~ **of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis** endometrītis, itīdis f

~ **of the liver, hepatitis** hepatītis, itīdis f

~ **of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis** meningitis, itīdis f

**injury** laesio, ōnis f

**intermittent, coming and going at intervals**  
intermittens, ntis

**internal** internus, a, um

**intravenous** intravenōsus, a, um

**iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris**  
iridodiagnostīca, ae f

## J

**joint** articulatio, ōnis f

## K

**keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus** keratomycōsis, is f

**keratoplasty, plastic surgery of the cornea**  
keratoplastīca, ae f

**any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia**  
arthralgia, ae f

## L

**left** sinister, tra, trum

**lung** pulmo, ōnis m

**lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels**  
lymphangiītis, itīdis f

**lymphocytic** lymphocytīcus, a, um

**lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes** lymphocytōsis, is f

## M

**any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy** pneumopathia, ae f

**any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy**  
rhinopathia, ae f

**any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy** trichopathia, ae f

**macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal** macrocȳtus, i m

**macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails**  
macronychia, ae f

**mammogram (= mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination,** mammogramma, ātis n

**a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma** sarcōma, ātis n

**mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland** mastopathia, ae f

**measurement the size of pelvis in women, pelvimetry** pelvimetria, ae f

**a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, neurosurgeon** neurochirurgus, i m

**medical specialist treating**

~ **blood diseases, hematologist** haematolōgus, i m

~ **children's diseases, pediatrician** paediatēr, tri m

~ **ear and larynx diseases, otolaryngologist,** otolaryngolōgus, i m

~ **inner organs, therapist** therapeutista, ae m

~ **mental diseases, psychiatrist** psychiāter, tri m

~ **tumorous diseases, oncologist** oncolōgus, i m

~ **tuberculosis, phthisiologist** phthisiāter, tri m

**megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size** megaloduodēnum, i n

**megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on** megalomania, ae f

**melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor**  
melanocarcinōma, ātis n

**a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma** meningiōma, ātis n

**menalgia, painful menstruation** menalgia, ae f

**meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord** meningītis, itīdis f

**meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges**  
meningoencephalītis, itīdis f

**metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity**  
metastāsis, is f

**micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands** micromastia, ae f

**microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse**  
microsphygmia, ae f

**monocytopoiesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow** monocytopoēsis, is f

**monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease**  
monopathophobia, ae f

**monostotic, pertaining to a single bone**  
monostotīcus, a, um

**myelocyaemia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood** myelocyaemia, ae f

**myopia, short sight** myopia, ae f

## N

**narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis** – narcōsis, is f

**narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis** dacryostenōsis, is f

**necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality** – necraemia, ae f

**nearthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation** neoarthrōsis, is f

**a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, embryoneoplasm**  
embryoneoplasma, ātis n

**nephrogenic, produced by or originating in a kidney** nephrogēnus, a, um

**nephropathy, disease of the kidney**  
nephropathia, ae f

**neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system** neurogēnus, a, um

## O

**odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth** odontogēnus, a, um

**odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells conserved in tooth development** odontōma, ātis n

**oedema (edema), the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body** oedēma, ātis n

**oesophagostenosis (esophagostenosis), narrowing of the oesophagus**  
oesophagostenōsis, is f

**oesophagostoma (esophagostoma), any opening into the oesophagus apart from the normal entrance and exit** oesophagostōma, ātis n

**oesophagus (esophagus)** oesophāgus, i m

**oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers, or toes** oligodactylia, ae f

**oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases** oncolōgus, i m

**oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours**  
oncotherapia, ae f

**onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails due to impaired nutrition**  
onychodystrophia, ae f

**open** apertus, a, um

**operation** operatio, ōnis f

**the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter, herniotomia**  
herniotomia, ae f

**the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy** adenotomia, ae f

**the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing a function, transplantation** transplantatio, ōnis f

**ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles** ophthalmoplegia, ae f

**ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball**  
ophthalmorrhexis, is f

**ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye** ophthalmoscopia, ae f

**the origin and development of bone marrow, myelogenesis** myelogenēsis, is f

**the origin and development of morbid condition, pathogenesis** pathogenēsis, is f

**the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis**  
histogenēsis, is f

**osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues** osteochondrōsis, is f

**osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition**  
osteodystrophia, ae f

**osteomalacia, softening of the bones**

osteomalacia, ae f

**osteoporosis, rarefaction of bone** osteoporōsis,

is f

**otogenic, happening because of the ear**

otogēnus, a, um

**otolaryngologist, a specialist treating ear and**

**larynx diseases** otolaryngolōgus, i m

## P

**pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of**

**the lips** pachycheilia, ae f

**panaris, inflammation in the nail fold**

panaritium, i n

**paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia**

palatoplegia, ae f

**paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a**

**functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanism** paralýsis, is f

**paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the**

**body, diplegia** diplegia, ae f

**paranephritis, an inflammatory condition**

**involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney** paranephritis, itidis f

**partial** partiālis, e

**a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body**

**is only affected, monoplegia** monoplegia, ae f

**a pathological condition involving many joints,**

**polyarthropathy** polyarthropathia, ae f

**pathological softening of cartilage,**

**chondromalacia** chondromalacia, ae f

**pediatrician, a specialist treating children's**

**diseases** paediāter, tri m

**peduncle** peduncūlus, i m

**pelvic** pelvīcus, a, um

**pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected**

pericystitis, itidis f

**a person with an unusually small size of head,**

**microcephalus** microcephālus, i m

**pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or**

**medicines** pharmacophobia, ae f

**pharmacotherapy, science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy**

pharmacotherapy, ae f

**phlebography 1) radiographic visualization of**

**veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph** phlebographia, ae f

**phoniatics (= phoniatory), the treatment of**

**disorders of speech** phoniatria, ae f

**phonocardiogram, the record produced by an**

**instrument for recording heart sounds** phonocardiogramma, ātis n

**photophobia, abnormal intolerance of light**

photophobia, ae f

**phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis**

phthisiāter, tri m

**phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of**

**medical plants** phytotherapia, ae f

**plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which**

**the blood corpuscles are suspended** plasma, ātis n

**any plastic operation for repair or reconstruction of the urinary bladder, cystoplasty** cystoplastica,

ae f

**any plastic surgical operation on the vagina,**

**colpoplasty** colpoplastica, ae f

**pneumocentesis, lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity**  
pneumocentēsis, is f

**pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space**

pneumoempyēma, ātis n

**pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas, air and blood in the cavity of the thorax**  
pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m

**pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung** pneumonia, ae f

**pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung** pneumorrhaphia, ae f

**pneumotomy, the making of an incision into the lung** pneumotomia, ae f

**podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid** podāgra, ae f

**podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot** podalgia, ae f

**polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain**  
polioencephalopathia, ae f

**polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins**  
polyavitaminōsis, is f

**polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane** polypōsis, is f

**polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus**  
colpopolŷpus, i m

**postoperative** postoperatīvus, a, um

**primary** primarius, a, um

**proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum** proctodiagnostīca, ae f

**proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum** proctoscopia, ae f

**proctospasm, spasmodic contraction of the rectum** proctospasmus, i m

**profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea** rhinorrhoea, ae f

**prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part** prolapsus, us m

**psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases**  
psychiāter, tri m

**psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes** psychogēnus, a, um

**psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality** psychologus, i m

**puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it** punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f

**puncture of the cornea, kerato- centesis**  
keratocentēsis, is f

**pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine** pyuria, ae f

## R

**a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte** macrocŷtus, i m

**removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation** amputatio, ōnis f

**removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, extirpation** extirpatio, ōnis f

**replantation, the plantation of a**

**removed part of the whole to its site again**  
replantatio, ōnis f

**resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.** resectio, ōnis f

**results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram** haemogramma, ātis n

**retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea** cryptomenorrhoea, ae f

**retina** retiņa, ae f

**rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose** rhinolīthus, i m

**rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose** rhinopathia, ae f

**rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose** rhinoscopia, ae f

**rib** costa, ae f

**right** dexter, tra, trum

## S

**salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes** salpingogramma, ātis n

**salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube** salpingopexia, ae f

**sarcomatosis, the condition in which a number of sarcomata develops here and there on the body** sarcomatōsis, is f

**science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy** pharmacotherapia, ae f

**scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism** physiologus, i m

**sclerodermatitis, inflammation and induration of the skin** sclerodermatītis, itīdis f

**secondary** secundarius, a, um

**senile** senīlis, e

**separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis** necrolýsis, is f

**sialolith, a salivary calculus** sialolīthus, i m

**simple** simplex, ĭcis

**somatology, branch of anthropology studying structure of human body** somatologia, ae f

**spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm** typhlospasmus, i m

**specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist** biolōgus, i m

**specialist studying the man in process of his evolution, anthropologist** anthropolōgus, i m

**splenic** splenīcus, a, um

**splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen** splenohepatomegalia ae f

**spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae** spondylopathia, ae f

**spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge** spongiformis, e

**a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia** oligodontia, ae f

**a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia** erythropenia, ae f

**stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ** stenōsis, is f

**stomach** gaster, tris f

**stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity** stomatologia, ae f

**stomatitis, inflammation of the oral cavity,** stomatītis, itīdis f

**subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate** subacūtus, a, um

**subcutaneous** subcutaneus a, um

**a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism** thromboëmbolismus, i m

**superficial** superficiālis, e

**suppurative, pus-forming** suppuratīvus, a, um

**surgical operation on the small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery** microchirurgia, ae f

**symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball** symblephāron, i n

**symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function** symptōma, ātis n

**syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease** syndrōmum, i n

**synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused** synphalangismus, i m

## T

**tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia** tachyphagia, ae f

**tendon** tendo, ĩnis m

**tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon** tenodēsis, is f

**the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax** pneumothōrax, ācis m

**the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum** haemotympānum, i n

**the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria** haematuria, ae f

**the production and evolution of form, morphogenesis** morphogenēsis, is f

**the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis** urolithiāsĭs, is f

**the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema** – enanthēma, ātis n

**the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy** cystostomia, se f

**therapist, specialist for treating diseases of inner organs** therapeutista, ae m

**thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax** thoracometria, ae f

**thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli** thromboëmbolismus, i m

**tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions** tenolĭsis, is f

**thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus** thrombōsis, is f

**tissue** textus, us m

**tomography, body-section radiography** tomographia, ae f

**tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil** tonsillĭtis, itĭdis f

**tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil** tonsillotomia, ae f

**topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body** topographia, ae f

**topophobia, unreasoning fear**

**of certain places** topophobia, ae f

**total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy** pneumonectomia, ae f

**toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons** toxicōsis, is f

**transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system** transfusio, ōnis f

**transplantation, the operation of transfer of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function** transplantatio, ōnis f

**traumatic** traumaticus, a, um

**treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy** phytotherapia, ae f

**treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy** physiotherapia, ae f

**tuberculosis, the disease caused by infection with the Mycobacterium tuberculosis** tuberculōsis, is f

**a tumor consisting of connective tissue elements, desmoneoplasm** desmoneoplasma, ātis n

**typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum** typhlocēle, es f

## U

**ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer** ulceratio, ōnis f

**ultrasonic, ultrasound** ultrasonarius, a, um

**urethritis, inflammation of the urethra** urethrītis, itīdis f

**use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy** cryotherapia, ae f

## V

**viral** virālis, e

## X

**xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland** xerostomia, ae f

**the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology** angiocardio-graphia, ae f

**the X-ray examination of breast, mammography** mammographia, ae f

## W

**a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis**

hydrarthrōsis, is f

**wound** vulnus, ěris n

## THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM "GAUDEAMUS"

<b>Gaudeāmus igītur,</b>	Let us rejoice therefore
<b>Juvēnes dum sumus!</b>	While we are young!
<b>Post jucundam juventūtem,</b>	After a pleasant youth,
<b>Post molestam senectūtem</b>	After a troubling old age
<b>Nos habēbit humus. (bis)</b>	The earth will have us.
Ubi sunt qui ante nos	Where are they who before us
In mundo fuēre?	Were in the world?
Transeas ad supēros,	You may go up to the gods,
Transeas ad infēros,	You may cross into the underworld,
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)	If you wish to see them.
Vita nostra brevis est,	Our life is brief,
Brevi finiētur:	It will shortly end:
Venit mors velocīter,	Death comes quickly,
Rapit nos atrocīter,	Snatches us cruelly,
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)	It spares no one.
<b>Vivat Academia!</b>	Long live the academy!
<b>Vivant professōres!</b>	Long live the teachers!
<b>Vivat membrum quodlibet,</b>	Long live each student!
<b>Vivant membra quaelibet,</b>	Long live all students!
<b>Semper sint in flore! (bis)</b>	May they always flourish!
<b>Vivant omnes virgīnes,</b>	Long live all girls,
<b>Gracīles, formōsae!</b>	Slender and beautiful!
<b>Vivant et muliēres,</b>	Long live wives as well,

Tenēre, amabīles,  
Bonaē, laboriōsae. (bis)

Tender, loveable,  
Good and productive.

Vivat et Respublīca

Long live the state as well

Et qui illam regunt!

As they who rule it!

Vivat nostra civitas,

Long live our city

Maecenātum caritas,

[And] the charity of benefactors

Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)

Who protect us here!

Pereat tristitia,

Let sadness perish,

Pereant dolōres!

Let sorrows perish!

Pereat diabōlus,

Let the devil perish,

Quivis antiburschius

Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student

Atque irrisōres!

As well those who mock us!

***The most popular stanzas***

***nowadays are typed in black type***

## LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

1. Aes debitōrem leve, grave  
inimīcum facit  
*If you want to keep a friend,  
never borrow, never lend*
2. Amīcus certus in re incerta  
cernitur  
*A friend in need is a friend indeed*
3. Amor non est medicabilis herbis  
*No herb will cure love*
4. Amor tussisque non celantur  
*Love and cough cannot be hidden*
5. Aquīla muscas non captat  
*An eagle doesn't catch the flies*
6. Arte et humanitāte, labōre et  
scientia  
*By art and humanity, by labor and  
knowledge*
7. Audiātur et altēra pars  
*Let's hear the opposite side!*
8. Aurōra Musis amīca  
*He that will thrive, must rise at five*
9. Bis dat qui cito dat  
*He gives twice who gives in a trice*

10.	Bona valetūdo melior est quam maxīmae divitiae	<i>Good health is above wealth</i>
11.	Cogitatiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres	<i>Second thoughts are the best</i>
12.	Cogito ergo sum	<i>I think, therefore I am</i>
13.	Consuetūdo est altĕra natūra	<i>Custom is second nature</i>
14.	Copia non est inopia	<i>Store is no sore</i>
15.	Cum promisĕras, facias	<i>Promise is a debt</i>
16.	De gustībus non est disputandum	<i>Tastes are not to be argued</i>
17.	De mortuis aut bene aut nihil	<i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i>
18.	Diabŏlus non est tam ater, ac pingĭtur	<i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i>
19.	Dictum – factum	<i>Said and done</i>
20.	Dies levat lucrum	<i>Time heals most sorrows</i>
21.	Divĭde et impĕra	<i>Divide and rule</i>
22.	Domus propria domus optĭma	<i>My house is my castle.</i>  <i>(East or west, home is best)</i>
23.	Dum spiro spero	<i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i>
24.	Duos qui lepŏres sequĭtur, neutrum capit	<i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i>
25.	Dura lex sed lex	<i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i>
26.	Experientia est optĭma magistra (=Usus est optĭmus magister)	<i>Experience is the best teacher</i>
27.	Ebriĕtas est voluntaria insania	<i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i>
28.	E cantu dignoscĭtur avis	<i>A bird may be known by its song</i>
29.	Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi	<i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i>

30.	Errāre humānum est	<i>It's human to err</i>
31.	Est avis in dextra melior quam quattuor extra	<i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i>
32.	Facīle dictu, difficīle factu	<i>Easier said than done</i>
33.	Facta, non verba	<i>Better to do well than to say well</i>
34.	Festīna lente	<i>Make haste slowly</i>
35.	Finis corōnat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36.	Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37.	Fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>Fortune favors the brave</i>
38.	Homīnes amplius oculis credunt quam aurībus	<i>A picture is worth a thousand words</i>
39.	Homo a se ortus	<i>A self - made man</i>
40.	Homo doctus in se divitias habet	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth</i>
41.	Homo est aīmal sociāle	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42.	Homo homīni lupus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43.	Homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
44.	Homo sum, humāni nihil a me alienum esse puto	<i>I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me</i>
45.	Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse (= Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46.	In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47.	Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48.	Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49.	Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50.	Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51.	Mare verbōrum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52.	Medīcus curat, natūra sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature convalesces</i>

53.	Mens sana in corpore sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54.	Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55.	Ne differas in crastinum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today</i>
56.	Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57.	Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58.	Ne Juppiter quidem omnibus placet	<i>He who pleased everybody died before he was born</i>
59.	Nihil volenti difficile est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish hard enough</i>
60.	Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>
61.	Non est via in medicina sine lingua Latina	<i>There is no way in medicine without Latin</i>
62.	Non scholae, sed vitae discimus	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
63.	Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64.	Nulla regula sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65.	Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>
66.	Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small gain</i>
67.	Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>Everything flows and everything changes</i>
68.	Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>
69.	O tempora, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70.	Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>
71.	Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72.	Paulatim summa petuntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73.	Per aspera ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!</i>
74.	Pigritia est mater vitiorum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75.	Plenus venter non studet libenter	<i>A full stomach is deaf to learning</i>
76.	Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>

77.	Primum noli nocēre	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78.	Principium dimidium totius	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79.	Procul ex oculis – procul ex mente	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
80.	Quem Deus perdere vult, dementat prius	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason</i>
81.	Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by day</i>
82.	Quidquid Latīne dictum sit, altum vidētur	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds profound</i>
83.	Qui non est nobiscum adversus nos est	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
84.	Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85.	Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86.	Qui seminat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87.	Qui tacet consentire vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88.	Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89.	Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not</i>
90.	Quot capita, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91.	Radices litterarum amarae, fructus dulces	<i>Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn</i>
92.	Repetitio est mater studiorum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93.	Saltare ad tibiam alicujus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>
94.	Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>
95.	Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96.	Sero venientibus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-comers</i>
97.	Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98.	Sine labore non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99.	Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>

100.	Suae quisque fortūnae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own fortune</i>
101.	Sudōre et sanguīne, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102.	Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for everything</i>
103.	Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104.	Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105.	Tantum possūmus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106.	Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>
107.	Tempora mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis	<i>The times change and we are changing with them</i>
108.	Temporis filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109.	Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110.	Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the victory</i>
111.	Umbram suam timēre	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112.	Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113.	Ut salūtas, ita salubēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114.	Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are pulling</i>
115.	Verum amīcum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116.	Vincuntur molli pectōra dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat</i>
117.	Vox popūli – vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the God's voice</i>

## MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1.	Abactus venter	<i>Artificially induced abortion</i>
2.	Abalienatio mentis	<i>Insanity; mental derangement</i>
3.	Ad aurem (ad aur.)	<i>At the ear</i>
4.	Ad libitum (ad lib.)	<i>At pleasure, freely</i>
5.	Ad usum externum	<i>To be taken externally (internally); for external</i>
6.	(internum)	<i>(internal) use</i>
7.	Alienatio partis	<i>Gangrene</i>
8.	Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)	<i>Every other day</i>
9.	Alternis horis (a. h.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
10.	Ante meridiem (a. m.)	<i>Morning, before noon</i>
11.	Ante mortem	<i>Before death</i>
112.	Ante partum	<i>Before childbirth</i>
113.	Ante prandium (a. p.)	<i>Before dinner</i>
114.	Auris dextra (a. d.)	<i>Right ear</i>
115.	Auris laevis (sinistra)	<i>Left ear</i>
	(a. l., a. s.)	
16.	Aures utrae	<i>Both ears</i>
17.	Bipăra	<i>A woman who has had born two children at</i> <i>separate births</i>
18.	Bis in die (b. i. d.)	<i>Twice a day</i>
19.	Compos mentis	<i>Of sound mind</i>
20.	Dolōres vagi	<i>Wandering pains</i>
21.	Facies hippocratīca	<i>The appearance of a dying person</i> <i>described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid</i> <i>face with dull sunken eyes, pinched</i>

		<i>nose, hollow cheeks and temples, open mouth and dropped lower jaw</i>
22.	Habitus aegrōti	<i>The general physical appearance of a diseased person ; habit</i>
23.	Horrida cutis (=cutis anserīna)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
24.	Impotentia coëundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
25.	Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
26.	Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
27.	In articūlo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
28.	In extrēmīs	<i>At the point of death</i>
29.	In situ	<i>1. In the normal, natural or original position 2. In a given place</i>
30.	Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>
31.	In utēro	<i>Within the uterus</i>
32.	In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>
33.	In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test - tube method of investigation</i>
34.	In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
35.	Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
36.	Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
37.	Locus minōris resistentiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
38.	Lusus natūrae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
39.	Malum aegyptīcum	<i>Diphtheria (literally – Egyptian evil)</i>

- |     |  |   |
|-----|--|---|
| 40. | Malum arteriārum<br>senīle               | <i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally – senile evil<br/>of arteries)</i>  |
| 41. | Malum cadūcum                            | <i>Epilepsy (literally – falling evil)</i>  |
| 42. | Malum venereum                           | <i>Syphilis (literally – venereal evil)</i>   |
| 43. | Minīmum audibīle                         | <i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that<br/>can be heard</i>  |
| 44. | Minīmum cognoscibīle                     | <i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>  |
| 45. | Minīmum sensibīle                        | <i>The threshold of consciousness</i>   |
| 46. | Muscae volitantes                        | <i>The appearance in the fields of vision of<br/>variously shaped figures caused by defect<br/>of the vitreous humor (literally – flying<br/>flies)</i> |
| 47. | Noli - me - tangēre                      | <i>An old but colorful name for rodent<br/>ulcer (literally – do not touch me)</i>  |
| 48. | Non compos mentis                        | <i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of<br/>mind to manage his own affairs</i>   |
| 49. | Nostrum                                  | <i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of<br/>which are kept secret</i>  |
| 50. | Nullipāra                                | <i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>   |
| 51. | Ocūlus dexter<br>(OD, o. d.)             | <i>Right eye</i>  |
| 52. | Omnībus alternis horis<br>(o. alt. hor.) | <i>Every other hour</i>   |
| 53. | Omni mane (o. m.)                        | <i>Every morning</i>  |
| 54. | Omni nocte (o. n.)                       | <i>Every night</i>  |
| 55. | Per rectum (p. r.)                       | <i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>  |
| 56. | Post meridiem (p. m.)                    | <i>Evening or afternoon</i>   |
| 57. | Post mortem                              | <i>After death</i>  |

58.	Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
59.	Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
60.	Potentia coeundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>
61.	Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
62.	Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
63.	Primigravida	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
64.	Primipara	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>
65.	Prognosis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
66.	Prognosis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>
67.	Prognosis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
68.	Prognosis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
69.	Pro ratione aetatis (p. r. aet.)	<i>According to age</i>
70.	Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
71.	Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
72.	Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
73.	Quantum libet (=quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
74.	Quaqua hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
75.	Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
76.	Secundigravida	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
77.	Secundipara	<i>A woman who has had 2 children, in two different pregnancies</i>
78.	Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there is marked dyspnoea and finally exhaustion and collapse</i>
79.	Status convulsivus sive epilepticus	<i>Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without recovery of consciousness between attacks</i>
80.	Status praesens	<i>The present condition</i>
81.	Ter de die (t. d. d.)	<i>Thrice a day</i>
82.	Unipara	<i>A woman who has given birth once only</i>

83. Vix conservātrix *The innate strength of an organism enabling it to withstand disease*
84. Vix medicātrix natūrae *The natural ability of the organism to prevail over disease without external assistance*
85. Vis vitae (vitālis) *The life force*

## Contents

Preface.....	3
Introduction to the subject.....	3
Part I. Phonetic rules of pronunciation.....	6
Lesson 1. The latin alphabet. Pronunciation of vowels, consonants and letter combinations	6
§ 1. The latin alphabet.....	6
§ 2. Division of latin sounds.....	7
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels.....	7
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowels combination.....	7
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants.....	8
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations.....	9
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations.....	9
§ 8. Exercises.....	9
Lesson 2. Accent rules.....	10
§ 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables.....	10
§ 10. Accent in polysyllabic words according length and brevity of the second end syllable.....	11
§ 11. Long suffixes.....	11
§ 12. Short suffixes.....	12
§ 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix.....	12
§ 14. Some rules of syllable length determination.....	12
§ 15.the rules of syllable brevity.....	12
§ 16. Exercises.....	13
Part II. Grammar fundamentals of making terms.....	14
Lesson 3. Noun and grammar categories of noun. 1-st declension and pharmaceutical terms with nouns of the 1-st declension.....	14
§ 17. Grammar categories of noun.....	14
§ 18. Dictionary form of nouns.....	14
§ 19. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it.....	15
§ 20. Description of declensions.....	15
§ 21. Nouns of greek origin not belonging to five types of latin declensions.....	16
§ 22. Capital and small letters of nouns in the pharmaceutical terms.....	17
§ 23. Preliminary information on drug forms names.....	18
§ 24. 1st declension of nouns.....	18
§ 25. Exercises.....	19
Lesson 4. The 2nd declension of the nouns. The nouns of the 2nd declension as trivial names of drugs. Prefixes, suffixes, greek and latin morphological elements carrying information on pharmaceutical characteristics of drugs.....	20
§ 26. Nouns of the masculine gender of the 2nd declension.....	20
§ 27. Nouns of the neutral gender of the 2nd declension.....	20

§ 28. Gender exceptions in the 2nd declension.....	21
§ 29. Preliminary information on prepositions.....	21
§ 30. Formation of the drug names — neutral gender nouns of the 2nd declension.....	21
§ 31. Word building elements (part 1).....	22
§ 32. Prefixes in pharmaceutical names.....	23
§ 33. Personal names in pharmaceutical and clinical terms.....	23
§ 34. Exercises.....	24
Lesson 5. Adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions, their grammar description and dictionary form. Adjectives and nouns grammar agreement. Some features of adjectives' use in pharmaceutical terms.....	25
§ 35. Grammar characteristics and dictionary form of adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declensions.....	25
§ 36. Table of case endings of adjectives of the 1st group.....	26
§ 37. Grammar agreement of adjectives with nouns.....	27
§ 38. Some peculiarities of adjectives use in pharmaceutical terminology.....	28
§ 39. Word building elements (part 2).....	28
§ 40. Exercises.....	29
Lesson 6. Verb and its dictionary form. Stem of verb in the present tense system. Praesens indicativi activi et passivi (3-rd person of singular et plural). Verb «esse» in the praesens indicativi activi. The stem of the supine and the participle in the past tense system. Word order in a simple sentence.....	30
§ 41. Grammar characteristics of verb.....	30
§ 42. Dictionary form of verb.....	31
§ 43. Stem of present tense.....	31
§ 44. Indicative mood forms in present indicative tense of active voice (praesens indicatīvi actīvi).....	32
§ 45. Indicative mood forms in present indicative tense of passive voice (praesens indicatīvi passivi).....	32
§ 46. Present tense participle ( <i>participium praesentis activi</i> ).....	33
§ 47. The stem of supine and participles of the past completed tense.....	33
§ 48. The verb <i>esse</i> in the present tense forms.....	34
§ 49. Word order in simple narrative latin sentences.....	34
§ 50. Word building elements (part 3).....	36
§ 51. Exercises.....	36
Lesson 7. Imperative mood (imperativus). Conjunctive mood (praesens conjunctivi activi et passivi, 3-rd person of singular et plural). Verb <i>fieri</i> in pharmaceutical formulæ.....	37
§ 52. Formation and usage of the imperative (imperatīvus).....	37
§ 53. Formation and usage of conjunctive mood (conjunctivus praesentis actīvi et passīvi).....	38
§ 54. Verb <i>fio, fieri</i> in the indicative and conjunctive forms.....	39
§ 55. Word building elements (part 4).....	40
§ 56. Exercises.....	40

Lesson 8. 3-rd declension of the nouns and their consonant type. Systematization of the endings of masculine gender nouns.....	41
§ 57. General description of nouns of the 3rd declension.....	41
§ 58. Masculine gender endings and their systematization.....	42
§ 59. Grammar types of the 3rd declension. The consonant type.....	43
§ 60. Meaning and usage of suffixes -or, -sor, -tor, -xor in pharmaceutical terminology.....	43
§ 61. Word building elements (part 5).....	44
§ 62. Exercises.....	44
Lesson 9. Systematization of the endings of the feminine gender nouns in the 3-rd declension. The mixed type of the 3-rd declension.....	45
§ 63. Systematization of the feminine gender nouns of the 3rd declension.....	45
§ 64. The mixed type of the 3rd declension.....	46
§ 65. Declining peculiarities of the nouns with ending -sis and the nouns febris, tussis, pertussis.....	46
§ 66. The declining peculiarities of the noun <i>vas, vasis n vessel</i> .....	47
§ 67. Word building elements (part 6).....	47
§ 68. Exercises.....	48
Lesson 10. Systematization of the endings of the neutral gender nouns in the 3-rd declension. The vowel type of the 3-rd declension.....	49
§ 69. Systematization of the neutral gender nouns of the 3rd declension.....	49
§ 70. The vowel type of the 3rd declension.....	50
§ 71. Word building elements (part 7).....	50
§ 72. Exercises.....	51
Lesson 11. The adjectives of the 3-rd declension and variants of their dictionary form. Peculiarities in declension of adjectives and present tense participles.....	52
§ 73. Adjectives of the 3rd declension.....	52
§ 74. Special features of case endings of the 3rd declension adjectives.....	53
§ 75. Grammar agreement of the 3rd declension adjectives with the nouns.....	54
§ 76. Specific features in declension of present tense participles.....	55
§ 77. Lexical variety of adjectives in some botanical names.....	55
§ 78. Word building elements (part 8).....	55
§ 79. Exercises.....	55
Lesson 12. Comparative and superlative grades of comparison and special features of their formation, declension and usage.....	57
§ 80. Formation and declension of adjectives in the comparative grade.....	57
§ 81. Formation and declension of adjectives in the superlative grade.....	57
§ 82. Special forms of making the comparative and superlative grades.....	58
§ 83. Word building elements (part 9).....	59
§ 84. Exercises.....	59
Lesson 13. The 4-th and 5 -th noun declensions. Nouns <i>usus</i> and <i>species</i> in professional pharmaceutical expressions.....	60
§ 85. The 4th declension and its case endings.....	60
§ 86. The name <i>usus</i> in expressing the drug route administration.....	60

§ 87. The 5th declension and its case endings.....	61
§ 88. Word building elements (part 10).....	61
§ 89. Exercises.....	62
Lesson 14. Systematized information on prepositions and their use in the pharmaceutical terminology.....	63
§ 90. Some general remarks on prepositions.....	63
§ 91. Prepositions used with accusative case.....	64
§ 92. Prepositions used with ablative case.....	64
§ 93. Prepositions used with two cases (accusative and ablative as well).....	64
§ 94. Prepositions used with genitive.....	65
§ 95. Word building elements (part 11).....	65
§ 96. Exercises.....	65
Lesson 15. Numerals in pharmaceutical terminology.....	67
§ 97. Latin cardinal numerals.....	67
§ 98. Declension of cardinal numerals.....	68
§ 99. Grammar agreement of numerals with nouns.....	69
§ 100. The ordinal numerals.....	70
§ 101. Expression of percentage correlation.....	70
§ 102. Designation of matter amount in latin pharmaceutical terms.....	71
§ 103. Latin numerals as prefixes in pharmaceutical terms.....	72
§ 104. Greek numerals as prefixes in pharmaceutical terms.....	73
§ 105. Word building elements (part 12).....	73
§ 106. Exercises.....	73
Lesson 16. Pronouns. Adverbs. Conjunctions.....	75
§ 107. Pronouns in pharmaceutical terminology.....	75
§ 108. Adverbs.....	76
§ 109. Conjunctions.....	77
§ 110. Word building elements (part 13).....	77
§ 111. Exercises.....	78
Lesson 17. Latin chemical terminology. Names of chemical elements, acids and oxides.....	79
§ 112. Names of chemical elements.....	79
§ 113. Latin names of acids.....	80
§ 114. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.....	81
§ 115. Word building elements reflecting chemical information (part 14).....	82
§ 116. Exercises.....	83
Lesson 18. Latin chemical terminology. Salt names (part 1).....	84
§ 117. Names of anions including oxygen and those without oxygen.....	84
§ 118. Latin names of salts, whose anions don't contain oxygen.....	85
§ 119. Word building elements (part 15).....	85
§ 120. Exercises.....	85
Lesson 19. Latin salt names (part 2).....	87
§ 121. Latin anion names in basic and acid salts.....	87
§ 122. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts.....	87

§ 123. Latin names of compound ethers.....	87
§ 124. Exercises.....	88
Lesson 20. Names of vitamins. Names of hormone and ferment preparations.	
Designation of duration and intensity of drug action.....	89
§ 125. Names of vitamins.....	89
§ 126. Names of hormone preparations.....	90
§ 127. Names of ferment preparations.....	91
§ 128. Designation of the drug effect duration and intensity.....	91
§ 129. Word building elements (part 16).....	92
§ 130. Exercises.....	94
Lesson 21. Latin botanical terminology. Genus and species names in botanic.	
Botanical names in pharmaceutical terms. Latin names of medical plant parts.....	95
§ 131. Common information on the latin botanical terminology.....	95
§ 132. Botanical genus and species names of plants.....	95
§ 133. Character features of botanic names usage in the pharmaceutical terms...	96
§ 134. Alkaloid and glycoside names.....	97
§ 135. Systematization of plant part names.....	97
§ 136. Word building elements (part 17).....	97
§ 137. Exercises.....	98
§ 138. List of botanical names and their pharmaceutical equivalent used in this lesson.....	99
Lesson 22. Medical prescription and the rules of writing out the latin part of prescription.....	100
§ 139. Common information on prescriptions.....	100
§ 140. The latin part of prescription.....	100
§ 141. Methodical advices for prescription translating.....	104
§ 142. Exercises.....	105
Lesson 23. The use of the accusative in some pharmaceutical forms in the first line of a medical prescription.....	107
§ 143. General information on the use of the accusative in the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription.....	107
§ 144. The prescription of balsams, gels, creams, liniments, ointments and aerosols in the accusative.....	108
§ 145. The prescription of tablets in the accusative singular and plural form...	109
§ 146. The prescription of drops in the accusative form.....	109
§ 147. The prescription of ophthalmic films and medical sponges.....	110
§ 148. The prescription of suppositories in the accusative case.....	111
§ 149. Exercises.....	111
Lesson 24. Systematisazion of the solid drug form names and their prescription (part 1).....	113
§ 150. Drug form which are divided after their substance state and their rout of administration.....	113
§ 151. Pharmaceutical proprieties of solid drug forms.....	113
§ 152. Exercises.....	115

Lesson 25. Systematisazion of the solid drug form names and their prescription (part 2).....	117
§ 154. Exercises.....	117
Lesson 26. Systematization of liquid drug form names and their prescription (part 1)....	119
§ 155. Common information on the liquid drug forms.....	119
§ 156. Pharmaceutical description of the liquid drug forms.....	119
§ 157. Exercises.....	120
Lesson 27. Systematization of liquid drug form names and their prescription (part 2)...	122
§ 158. Pharmaceutical information on the liquid drug forms.....	122
§ 159. Exercises.....	123
Lesson 28. Systematization of the soft drug form names and their prescription.....	125
§ 160. Pharmaceutical information on the soft drug forms.....	125
§ 161. Exercises.....	126
Lesson 29. Systematization of non standaro drug forms and their prescription.....	128
§ 162. The drug forms which differ from traditional solid, liquid and soft ones.....	128
§ 163. Exercises.....	128
Lesson 30. Shortened latin designations in prescriptions.....	129
§ 164. Rules of shortening designation.....	129
§ 165. Table of the shortened latin designations.....	130
§ 166. Exercises.....	131
Lesson 31. Systematization of the word building elements and their orthography (part 1).....	135
§ 167. The alphabet list of learnt word building elements, part 1.....	135
§ 168. Exercises.....	138
Lesson 32. Systematization of the word building elements and their orthography (part 2).....	139
§ 169. The alphabet list of learnt word building elements, part 2.....	139
§ 170. Exercises.....	141
Lesson 33. Systematization of special spelling cases in the pharmaceutical nouns.....	142
§ 171. Peculiarities of using letters «s», «z», «k».....	142
§ 172. Vowel and consonant combinations which are not considered to belong to the word building elements.....	142
§ 173. Exercises.....	143
Latin – English vocabulary.....	145
English-Latin vocabulary.....	153
Clinical terminology.....	165
Lesson 34. Introduction into the Latin clinical terminology. One-word terms and their morphological structure. Initial and final morphological elements used for word building. Names of medical branches and specialists. Names of medical examinations.....	165
§ 174. General remarks on latin clinical terminology.....	165

§ 175. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms.....	165
§ 176. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names.....	166
§ 177. Initial and final root elements.....	167
§ 178. Names of the main branches of clinical medicine.....	167
§ 179. Names of medical specialists.....	168
§ 180. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in latin and english.....	168
§ 181. Names of medical examinations and methods of treatment.....	169
§ 182. Table of initial root elements.....	169
§ 183. Table of final root elements.....	170
§ 184. Exercises.....	170
Lesson 35. One-word names of function disorders, pathological processes and abnormal conditions.....	173
§ 185. One-word names of functional disorders.....	173
§ 186. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions....	174
§ 187. Initial greek roots and their latin equivalentents.....	175
§ 188. Table of final root elements.....	175
§ 189. Exercises.....	176
Lesson 36. Names of qualitative and quantitative abnormalities in morphological structures and physiological processes.....	179
§ 190. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions.....	179
§ 191. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures.....	179
§ 192. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures .....	180
§ 193. Table of initial root elements.....	180
§ 194. Table of final roots.....	181
§ 195. Exercises.....	182
Lesson 37. Names of inflammatory processes which occur in organs and tissues. Names of abnormalities in the states of physiological fluids.....	185
§ 196. Names of inflammatory conditions.....	185
§ 197. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids.....	185
§ 198. Table of initial roots.....	187
§ 199. Table of final roots.....	188
§ 200. Exercises.....	188
Lesson 38. Names of endogenous pathological changes and malformations.....	191
§ 201. Names of abnormal adhesions and fissures.....	191
§ 202. Names of pathological cavities.....	192
§ 203. Names of tumors.....	192
§ 204. Names of concrements.....	193
§ 205. Names of abnormal hardening and softening of tissues.....	193
§ 206. Table of initial roots.....	194
§ 207. Table of final roots.....	194
§ 208. Exercises.....	195

Lesson 39. Names of tissue deformations caused by exogenous factors.	
Names of surgical operations.....	198
§ 209. General names of tissue deformations caused by different exogenous factors	198
§ 210. Names of surgical operations.....	199
§ 211. Prefixes widely used in surgical names.....	200
§ 212. Table of initial roots.....	200
§ 213. Table of final roots.....	201
§ 214. Exercises.....	201
Lesson 40. Multiword clinical terms. (part 1).....	206
§ 215. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms.....	206
§ 216. Exercises.....	206
Lesson 41. Multiword clinical terms. (part 2).....	209
§ 217. Exercises.....	209
Lesson 42. Multiword clinical terms. Part 3.....	212
§ 218. Exercises.....	212
§ 219. Model (sample) of the final test in clinical terminology.....	214
Literature.....	215
Latin – English vocabulary.....	216
English-Latin vocabulary.....	224
The international students’ anthem «Gaudeamus».....	236
Latin proverbs and quotations.....	237
Medical professional expressions.....	241

Учебное издание

**Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич**

# **ФАРМАЦЕВТИЧЕСКАЯ ЛАТЫНЬ**

# **THE PHARMACEUTICAL LATIN**

Учебно-методическое пособие

На английском языке

Ответственная за выпуск Н. А. Круглик

Компьютерный набор О. М. Новиковой

Компьютерная верстка А. В. Янушкевич

